



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Educ T 919.13.780



Harvard College Library
THE GIFT OF
GINN AND COMPANY



3 2044 097 074 249

ELEMENTS OF LATIN

BY

BARRY C. SMITH, A.B. (YALE)

BROWNING SCHOOL, NEW YORK

D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS

BOSTON

NEW YORK

CHICAGO

Edic T 919.13.780
✓

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
GIFT OF
GINN & COMPANY
MARCH 17, 1927

COPYRIGHT, 1913,
BY D. C. HEATH & Co.

1 C 3

PREFACE

IN the course of twelve years' experience in teaching Latin to beginners, the writer has become convinced of two facts: The first is that a textbook for secondary schools should be written from the standpoint of the secondary school, and therefore by a person who is familiar, from actual experience, with the conditions of the classroom. Most of our textbooks for pupils beginning Latin, however admirable in other respects, are written in such a way as to require for intelligent comprehension considerably more maturity of judgment and understanding than the average beginner in Latin can be expected to possess. The second of these facts is that a book to be of the greatest help to the teacher, and thus secure the best results, should be so arranged as to enable the teacher to concentrate energy upon one thing at a time.

With these two ideas as a fundamental consideration, the writer has prepared this book. In reference to the first, every effort has been made to use simple language and make all explanations, rules, etc., directly intelligible to the young student. Where explanations should be given, they are made, it is hoped, clearly and simply; in cases where experience has shown that no book can supply the place of oral explanation, or where explanation has seemed unnecessary, the facts have been simply stated, and the rest left to the instructor. As to the second fact, the writer firmly believes that, in the main, it is wisest to concentrate on forms first. Therefore the first thirty-six lessons of this book are devoted to acquiring a thorough knowledge of the forms and their practical use. By that time the pupil has only irregular verbs left to learn; his form work for the first year is otherwise complete. Some syntax is of course given in these lessons, but only such principles as are necessary for the understanding of sentence structure, and for intelligent use of

the forms that are being learned (for example, in Lessons XVI-XX on Pronouns). Practically all the syntax of case and mood is postponed until Lesson XXXVII, where the systematic study of it begins with the lessons on the genitive.

In postponing the syntax, and concentrating on it in the last twenty-four lessons, two difficulties were encountered: the danger of confusing the pupil's mind by crowding too many more or less similar constructions together; and the necessity of thorough drill and review, without unduly lengthening the work. These difficulties have been overcome by limiting the syntax to those constructions which are of common occurrence in Caesar, and by introducing at intervals lessons on the irregular verbs, and employing these lessons to review thoroughly the syntactical principles of the lessons preceding. Heynacher's analysis of the syntax of Caesar has been employed in determining what syntactical principles should be included. With the exception of a few constructions, omitted because their difficulty renders postponement until the second year advisable, no construction has been omitted which occurs more than five times in the first four books of Caesar. It is believed, therefore, that this book contains all the syntax necessary to enable the pupil to make an intelligent start in Caesar, and that ample exercises and reviews have been provided for a clear understanding of it.

Beginning with Lesson XXV, each Lesson (except the review lessons) contains a short passage of continuous prose. Ten anecdotes are first given. These are easy and serve to show the pupil that Latin can be used to describe interesting events of everyday life. These are followed by short passages descriptive of early Roman history which gradually lead up to more difficult work. At the end, after the lessons are completed, will be found twenty-three reading lessons, giving an account of the Helvetian War, based on Caesar I, 1-29. The Latin of Caesar has been somewhat simplified, chiefly by the shortening of long sentences, and by the omission of the most difficult passages of indirect discourse. The style of Caesar has been preserved,

however, and the material thus provided will introduce the pupil rapidly and easily to the text of Caesar, and at the same time provide a thorough review of the syntax of the preceding lessons. The notes give ample help and refer constantly to the rules of syntax in the lessons. Attention is also called to the following features of this book:

1. The Vocabulary. This has been based on Professor Lodge's "Vocabulary of High School Latin." Exclusive of proper names, the Vocabulary contains 771 words, ninety-seven per cent of which occur in Professor Lodge's list of 2000 essential words; ninety per cent occur four or more times in Caesar I-V; and eighty-six per cent occur in the list of 1000 words to be learned before the end of the second year. Of the remainder, the greater part are necessary for purposes of grammatical completeness, as — *ego, tū, difficilis, rūs*, etc. A pupil who masters these vocabularies will therefore acquire a knowledge of more than a third of the vocabulary which Professor Lodge believes essential for a High School student.

2. The Word List for Drill. On page 271 will be found a list of the words in the vocabularies of the lessons, with the English on the reverse side of the page. The words are purposely not arranged in alphabetical order, and where a word has two or more entirely different meanings, each is given separately. This list will be found of great value in mastering the vocabularies. By its use frequent and rapid oral or written reviews are made possible. It has been found that a pupil with the English words before him can run through the list, giving the corresponding Latin with remarkable speed.

3. The fact that the words in each vocabulary are reviewed in the exercises of the lessons immediately following. This has been provided for with great care throughout.

4. The special vocabularies of the first ten reading lessons. These free the pupil from the necessity of searching the general vocabulary for meanings until he has become somewhat familiar with continuous prose.

5. The examples illustrating the rules of syntax. These contain only words in common use so that a clear understanding of the meaning and principle involved is assured.

6. The copious exercises. These illustrate every point of form and syntax and, with the reading lessons, afford abundant material for practice and sight translation. The English-Latin exercises are unusually numerous, the author believing that nothing else develops power so rapidly. All exercises, however, are so arranged that teachers who prefer them shorter may omit the latter sentences.

7. The clear, open page. By careful arrangement of material, and generous spacing, an effort has been made to secure the tremendous help of visualizing.

8. The treatment of the conjugations. By the development of the principles of formation on the stems, the pupil is taught to conjugate verbs other than the models, without difficulty.

9. The treatment of the third declension. The method of determining the different classes of stems is given in a simple way. In the vocabularies, all third declension nouns and adjectives are given with the genitive in full.

Grateful acknowledgment is here made to Allyn & Bacon for their courtesy in permitting the use of their texts of the "Gradatim" and the "Junior Latin Book" in the preparation of the reading lessons.

In conclusion the author desires to express his gratitude to Mr. J. A. Browning, of the Browning School, New York City, for his many valuable suggestions; to Mr. I. J. Uhrich and Mr. N. E. Crosby, of the same school, and to Mr. Rest Fenner Smith, Jr., formerly of the Newark Academy, all of whom have devoted much time to the reading of the proof sheets; and also to Professor Henry P. Wright, until recently Dean of Yale College, whose reading of the manuscript has been of great value, and whose kindly interest and encouragement have been a source of inspiration at all times.

BARRY C. SMITH.

NEW YORK CITY,
February 14, 1913.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

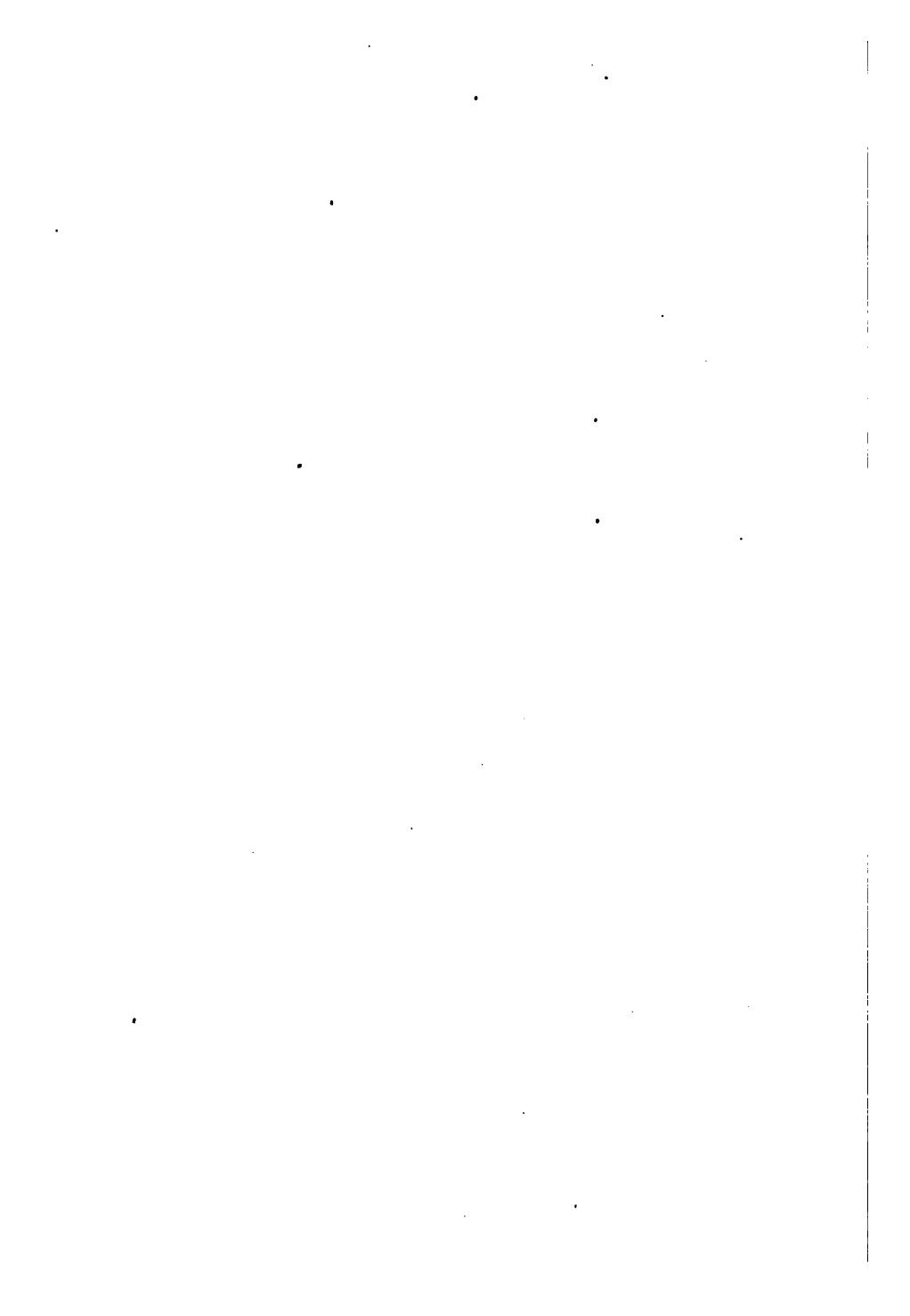
LESSON		PAGE
	INTRODUCTION	1
I.	FIRST DECLENSION. SUBJECT. ADJECTIVES: ATTRIBUTIVE AND PREDICATE	6
II.	PRESENT INDICATIVE OF Amō, Sum. DIRECT OBJECT. PREDICATE NOUN. AGREEMENT OF VERB AND SUBJECT	10
III.	SECOND DECLENSION. ADJECTIVES. APPOSITIVES . .	14
IV.	SECOND DECLENSION: NEUTERS. ADJECTIVES. QUESTIONS WITH -ne. WORD ORDER	18
V.	FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION: ADJECTIVES . .	22
VI.	IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES. QUESTIONS WITH nōne. . .	26
VII.	THIRD DECLENSION: CONSONANT STEMS. QUESTIONS WITH num	30
VIII.	THIRD DECLENSION: -I STEMS	36
IX.	THIRD DECLENSION: GENDER; PRACTICE IN DETERMINING STEMS	41
X.	THIRD DECLENSION: ADJECTIVES. INDIRECT OBJECT .	45
XI.	FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS. REVIEW OF GENDER	50
XII.	REVIEW OF NOUNS. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. THE INFINITIVE	55
XIII.	COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. USE OF COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE	59
XIV.	REVIEW OF ADJECTIVES. FORMATION OF ADVERBS .	63
XV.	REVIEW OF COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS	66
XVI.	PERSONAL PRONOUNS	70
XVII.	POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN . .	74
XVIII.	DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS	79
XIX.	THE RELATIVE PRONOUN. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN	84
XX.	INDEFINITE PRONOUNS	88

LESSON	PAGE
XXI. REVIEW OF PRONOUNS. NUMERALS. REVIEW CHARTS	93
XXII. VERBS: PRINCIPAL PARTS; STEMS; INDICATIVE OF Sum	99
XXIII. Sum COMPLETED. USE OF MOODS. VERB SYNOPSES.	103
XXIV. FIRST CONJUGATION: INDICATIVE ACTIVE. REVIEW OF FIRST CONJUGATION VERBS	107
XXV. FIRST CONJUGATION: ACTIVE COMPLETED. VERB SYNOPSIS. "The Naughty Boy," I	112
XXVI. FIRST CONJUGATION: INDICATIVE PASSIVE. ABLATIVE OF AGENT. "The Naughty Boy," II	117
XXVII. FIRST CONJUGATION: PASSIVE COMPLETED. "The Bad Apples"	121
XXVIII. SECOND CONJUGATION: ACTIVE. "The Little Slave"	126
XXIX. SECOND CONJUGATION: PASSIVE. "The Miser," I	131
XXX. THIRD CONJUGATION: ACTIVE. "The Miser," II	136
XXXI. THIRD CONJUGATION: PASSIVE. "The Broken Dike," I	141
XXXII. FOURTH CONJUGATION: ACTIVE. "The Broken Dike," II	146
XXXIII. FOURTH CONJUGATION: PASSIVE. "The Piper's Slave," I	151
XXXIV. REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS	156
XXXV. THIRD CONJUGATION: VERBS IN -iō. "The Piper's Slave," II	158
XXXVI. DEPONENT VERBS. ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENTS. "Early Italy"	163
XXXVII. SYNTAX: THE GENITIVE. "Aeneas; Ascanius"	168
XXXVIII. THE GENITIVE. "The Alban Kings"	171
XXXIX. REVIEW OF THE GENITIVE. Possum	174
XL. THE DATIVE. "The Crime of Amulius"	178
XLI. THE DATIVE. THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. "Rescue of Romulus and Remus"	181
XLII. THE ACCUSATIVE. "The Founding of Rome"	186
XLIII. REVIEW OF THE DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE. Fiō	189
XLIV. THE ABLATIVE. "The Romans Secure Wives"	192

Table of Contents

ix

LESSON	PAGE
XLV. THE ABLATIVE. "The Story of Tarpeia" . . .	195
XLVI. THE ABLATIVE. "The Sabine War" . . .	198
XLVII. PARTICIPLES. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. "Romulus Completes His Work"	201
XLVIII. REVIEW OF THE ABLATIVE. Eð	206
XLIX. EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE. Domus . "Numa Pompilius" . . .	210
L. INDEPENDENT USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE. "Tullus Hos- tilius"	213
LI. DEPENDENT USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE. INDIRECT QUESTIONS. SEQUENCE OF TENSES. PURPOSE CLAUSES. "Ancus Marcius"	216
LII. CLAUSES* OF RESULT. CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE. "Tarquinius Pris- cus," I	221
LIII. Cum CLAUSES. "Tarquinius Priscus," II	224
LIV. REVIEW OF XLIX-LIII. Volð, nðlð, málð . COM- MANDS. PROHIBITIONS	227
LV. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES. "Servius Tullius," I.	231
LVI. INDIRECT DISCOURSE. "Servius Tullius," II	235
LVII. THE INFINITIVE. "Servius Tullius," III	240
LVIII. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES. "Tarquinius Superbus," I . .	243
LIX. THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE. THE SUPINE. "Tar- quinius Superbus," II	247
LX. REVIEW OF LV-LIX. Ferð	251
"The Story of the Helvetian War"	255
WORD LIST FOR DRILL	271
SPECIAL VOCABULARIES OF READING LESSONS,—LES- SONS XXV-XXXV	299
GENERAL VOCABULARY: LATIN-ENGLISH	303
GENERAL VOCABULARY: ENGLISH-LATIN	334
INDEX	349



INTRODUCTION

I. THE ALPHABET

The Latin alphabet is the same as the English except that it has no *j* or *w*. The letter *i* is used both as a vowel and as the consonant *j*.

II. PRONUNCIATION

1. The vowels are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, and *y*. They are either long or short, and are pronounced as follows:

LONG	SHORT
<i>ā</i> as in <i>father</i> .	<i>a</i> as the first <i>a</i> in <i>ahd</i> .
<i>ē</i> as in <i>prey</i> .	<i>e</i> as in <i>pet</i> .
<i>ī</i> as in <i>machine</i> .	<i>i</i> as in <i>sit</i> .
<i>ō</i> as in <i>ode</i> .	<i>o</i> as in <i>obey</i> .
<i>ū</i> as in <i>rule</i> .	<i>u</i> as in <i>pull</i> .

y, used only in Greek words, is pronounced like French *u*, or German *ü*.

2. The diphthongs, or double sounds, are *ae*, *au*, *oe*, and rarely *ei*, *eu*, and *ui*. They are pronounced as follows:

ae like *ai* in *aisle*.
au like *ou* in *our*.
oe like *oi* in *oil*.
ei like *ei* in *eight*.
eu like *eh'-oo*, slurred.
ui like *oo'-ee*, slurred.

3. The consonants are pronounced as in English with the following exceptions :

c is always hard, as in *come*.

g is always hard, as in *gate*.

i, consonant, is like *y* in *yet*.

s is like *s* in *sip*; never like *s* in *his*.

v is like *w* in *wet*.

bs, **bt** are like *ps*, *pt*.

ch is like *ch* in *choir*; never as in *church*.

III. CLASSIFICATION OF CONSONANTS

Consonants are classified as :

MUTES : **p**, **b** ; **t**, **d** ; **k**, **c**, **g**, **q**.

LIQUIDS : **l**, **r**.

NASALS : **m**, **n**.

SPIRANT : **s**.

DOUBLE CONSONANTS : **x** = **cs** or **gs** ; **z** = **dz**.

IV. SYLLABLES

1. Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs. In dividing words into syllables observe that :

(a) A single consonant between two vowels is pronounced with the following vowel ; as, **lĕ-gā-tus**.

(b) A mute with **l** or **r** between two vowels is pronounced with the following vowel ; as, **pā-trēs**.

(c) Doubled consonants are pronounced separately and each distinctly ; as, **pū-el-la**.

(d) Compound words may be separated into their parts ; as, **in-it** (**in** = *in* ; **it** = *he goes* ; *he goes in, enters*).

2. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*, the next to the last, the *penult*, and the one preceding that, the *ante-penult*.

V. QUANTITY OF VOWELS

Vowels are either long or short. In this book long vowels are marked thus : **ā**. The quantity of vowels is learned only through careful pronunciation and constant observation. The following principles are of value.

(a) A vowel is long before **nf**, **ns** ; as, **amāns**, **inferō**.

(b) Diphthongs, and vowels resulting from contraction are long ; as, **tubāe**, **cōgō** (for **co-agō**).

(c) A vowel is short before **nd**, **nt**, and **h** ; also before another vowel or a diphthong ; as, **amāndus**, **prūdētēs**, **nihil**, **tūus**, **pecūniae**.

VI. QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

1. A syllable is long by nature if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong.

2. A syllable is said to be long by position if it contains a short vowel followed by two consonants (except a mute and a liquid), or by the double consonants **x** or **z**. Otherwise a syllable is short.

VII. ACCENT

1. Words of two syllables accent the penult ; as, **tu'ba**.

2. Words of more than two syllables accent the penult if it is long ; otherwise, the antepenult ; as, **virtū'tis**, **cōnfec'tus**, **tem'pōra**.

3. Certain words, such as **-que**, **-ne**, **-ve**, known as enclitics, are appended to the preceding word and pronounced as a part of it. This may cause words regularly accented on the antepenult to take another accent on the ultima ; as, **généra'que**.

VIII. EXERCISE

Divide the following words into syllables and pronounce them. Be careful to give the vowels the proper quantity, and to place the accent on the proper syllable.

1. Militēs. 2. Māiōrēs. 3. Lātitudō. 4. Tuba. 5. Cognōvit. 6. Inīquus. 7. Gladiīs. 8. Mōrēs temporaque. 9. Pugnavērunt. 10. Amāverint. 11. Hūius. 12. Moenia. 13. Cui. 14. Urbs. 15. Persuāsissēs. 16. Incolae. 17. Causam. 18. Moneātis. 19. Ēheu.¹ 20. Aliquandō.

IX.**PARTS OF SPEECH; INFLECTION**

1. Latin has the same parts of speech as English, except that it has no article.

2. Nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and verbs are inflected, — that is, they change their form to show their grammatical relation to the other words in the sentence. The inflection of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives is known as declension; that of verbs, as conjugation.

X.**DECLENSION**

1. **Case.** Nouns, pronouns, and adjectives have six² cases, as follows:

Nominative = Case of the subject.

Genitive = Objective with *of*, or possessive.

Dative = Objective with *to* or *for*.

Accusative = Case of the object.

Vocative = Case of address.

Ablative = Objective with *from*, *by*, *with*.

2. **Number.** Nouns, pronouns, and adjectives have two numbers, singular and plural.

3. **Gender.**

(a) Nouns: A noun has usually one gender only. The gender of nouns is said to be *natural* when it is based on sex; as, *agricola*, *farmer* (masculine); *māter*, *mother* (feminine). It is

¹ Or *ēheu*. ² A few instances of a seventh case, the *Locative*, occur. This case will be treated later.

said to be *grammatical* when it is based on the termination of the nominative singular. Grammatical gender will be further explained later. Meantime the following general principles should be learned.

1. **Masculine:** *Names of males; names of rivers, winds, and months.*
 2. **Feminine:** *Names of females; names of countries, towns, islands, and trees.*
 3. **Neuter:** *Indeclinable nouns; as, nihil, nothing.*
- (b) Adjectives and most pronouns have forms for each gender.

XI.

CONJUGATION

Latin verbs are conjugated to show *person, number, tense, mood, and voice*. These terms have, in general, the same signification as in English. The names, meanings, and uses of the various forms will be given later.



LECTOR ET LIBRI

LESSON I

FIRST DECLENSION

1. NOUNS IN -A

Nouns of the first declension end in **-a**, and are declined as follows :

Puella, girl; stem, puellā-

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	puella	<i>a girl</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	puellae	<i>of a girl</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	puellae	<i>to or for a girl</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	puellam	<i>a girl</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	puellā	<i>from, by, with a girl</i>

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	puellae	<i>girls</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	puellārum	<i>of girls</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	puellis	<i>to or for girls</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	puellās	<i>girls</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	puellis	<i>from, by, with girls</i>

2. NOTES ON DECLENSION

1. The terminations are printed in heavy type.
2. The base of a noun or adjective may be found by dropping the termination of the genitive singular; thus the base of **puella** is **puell-**.
3. The vocative case is like the nominative, and therefore for convenience is omitted in this paradigm and elsewhere; **puella, O girl!**
4. The gender of nouns of the first declension is feminine, except names of males; as, **agricola, m., farmer.**

5. *Dea*, goddess, and *filia*, daughter have the irregular ending -*abus* in the dative and ablative plural; as, *deabus*.

6. Latin has no article; hence, *puella* may mean *girl*, *a girl*, or *the girl*.

3. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES

Feminine adjectives of the first declension are declined like *puella*. Decline *bona*, good; *tuba magna*, a large trumpet.

4. PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX

1. RULE: *The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case;* as,

Puella est parva, the girl is small.

2. RULE: *An adjective agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun which it limits;* as,

tuba magna,¹ a large trumpet.

Tuba est magna, the trumpet is large.

NOTE: An adjective may be either attributive, or predicate. An attributive adjective limits its noun directly, as in the first example. A predicate adjective is separated in sense from the noun it limits by the verb *sum* (*to be*), or a verb of similar meaning, as in the second example.

5. VOCABULARY

agricola, ae, m., farmer.

bona, good (adj.).

dea, ae, f., goddess.

est, he, (she, it) is; (there) is;

sunt, they are; (there) are.

filia, ae, f., daughter.

incola, ae, m., inhabitant.

Italia, ae, f., Italy.

longa, long (adj.).

magna, great, large (adj.).

multa, much; pl., many (adj.).

nōn, not (adv.).

parva, small (adj.).

tuba, ae, f., trumpet.

via, ae, f., way, road.

¹ Adjectives often follow their nouns in Latin. When emphatic they usually precede. Adjectives denoting number and quantity regularly precede.

6.

EXERCISES

I

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Deae. | 11. Viā longā. |
| 2. Agricolīs. | 12. Filiae bonae. |
| 3. Incolae. | 13. Tubīs magnīs. |
| 4. Ītaliā. | 14. Tubam parvam. |
| 5. Incolā. | 15. Multārum tubārum. |
| 6. Filiābus. | 16. Deae bonae. |
| 7. Deābus. | 17. Filiābus parvis. |
| 8. Agricolārum. | 18. Multae filiae. |
| 9. Incolās. | 19. Via bona. |
| 10. Tubā. | 20. Viās longās. |

II

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Of the farmer. | 11. To the good daughter. |
| 2. To the inhabitant. | 12. Of good trumpets. |
| 3. For Italy. | 13. By long ways. |
| 4. Of the ways. | 14. Of small daughters. |
| 5. To the daughters. | 15. To large trumpets. |
| 6. By a road. | 16. Of the good goddess. |
| 7. By the roads. | 17. The daughter of a farmer. |
| 8. The daughters. | 18. The goddesses of Italy. |
| 9. To the farmers. | 19. To many trumpets. |
| 10. The farmers (acc.). | 20. Of a long road. |

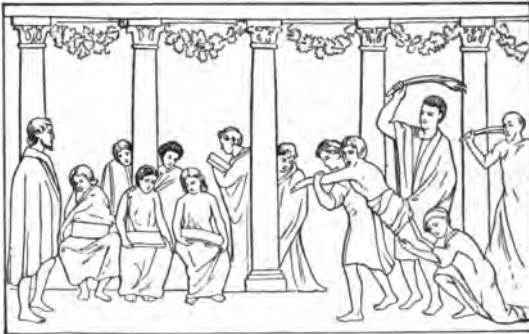
III

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Via est bona. | 2. Filia agricolae est parva. |
| 3. Viae sunt longae. | 4. Ītalia est magna. |
| 5. Via est nōn longa. | 6. Parva filia agricolae est bona. |
| 7. Viae Ītaliae sunt multae. | 8. Tubae sunt magnae. |
| 9. Multae viae sunt. ¹ | 10. Tuba incolae est longa. |

IV

1. The goddess is good. 2. The goddesses of Italy are good. 3. There¹ are many trumpets. 4. The way is long. 5. The daughters of the inhabitant are small. 6. Italy is large. 7. There¹ are many goddesses of Italy. 8. Italy is not small. 9. The trumpet is long. 10. The daughter of the farmer is good.

¹ See Vocab. under *est*.



SCHOLA ROMANA

LESSON II

VERBS: SUM; AMŌ

7. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB SUM

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>sum, I am</i>	<i>sumus, we are</i>
2. <i>es, you are (thou art)</i>	<i>estis, you are</i>
3. <i>est, he (she, it) is</i>	<i>sunt, they are</i>

8. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF AMŌ

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>amō, I love</i>	<i>amāmus, we love</i>
2. <i>amās, you love (thou lovest)</i>	<i>amātis, you love</i>
3. <i>amat, he loves, etc.</i>	<i>amant, they love</i>

9. PERSONAL ENDINGS

The person of a verb is shown in Latin by personal endings, and not so frequently by pronouns as in English; thus,

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>1st pers. -ō, -m, (I)</i>	<i>-mus, (we)</i>
<i>2d pers. -s, (you, thou)</i>	<i>-tis, (you)</i>
<i>3d pers. -t, (he, she, it)</i>	<i>-nt, (they)</i>

10. PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX

1. RULE: *The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative case; as,*

Rēgīna puellam amat, the queen loves the girl.

2. RULE: *A verb agrees in person and number with its subject;*
as,

Rēginae laudant, the queens praise.

Vōs (you) laudātis, you praise.

3. RULE: *A predicate noun¹ agrees with the subject in case;*
as,

Galba est agricola, Galba is a farmer.

11.

VOCABULARY

(Conjugate the verbs in -ō in this vocabulary like **amō**.)

amō, I love, am loving.

mēnsa, ae, f., table.

Britannia, ae, f., Britain.

**patria, ae, f., country, father-
land.**

**Galba, ae, m., Galba (a man's
name).**

puella, ae, f., girl.

pulchra, beautiful (adj.).

Gallia, ae, f., Gaul, a country.

rēgina, ae, f., queen.

**in, preposition governing abla-
tive; in, on.**

rosa, ae, f., rose.

sum, I am.

insula, ae, f., island.

vexō, I harass, annoy.

laudō, I praise, am praising.

vocō, I call, summon.

12.

EXERCISES

I

1. Amātis.

6. Estis.

2. Vexant.

7. Laudant.

3. Laudās.

8. Sumus.

4. Vocāmus.

9. Es.

5. Vexat.

10. Vexātis.

¹ A predicate noun is used to complete the predicate with the verb **sum**, or some verb of similar meaning, and limits the subject; as, "*Rover is a dog.*" (Compare with note under 4.)

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 11. <i>Īnsulae.</i> | 16. <i>Patriae.</i> |
| 12. <i>In¹ Britannīā.</i> | 17. <i>In¹ īnsulā.</i> |
| 13. <i>In¹ mēnsā.</i> | 18. <i>Mēnsa magna.</i> |
| 14. <i>Rosās pulchrās.</i> | 19. <i>Filiae pulchrae.</i> |
| 15. <i>Rēgīnae pulchrae.</i> | 20. <i>In¹ Ītaliā.</i> |

II

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| 1. You praise. | 9. In ¹ the island. |
| 2. We are praising. | 10. To many islands. |
| 3. He calls. | 11. Large roses. |
| 4. Thou art calling. | 12. On ¹ the small table. |
| 5. They harass. | 13. Of beautiful roses. |
| 6. We are. | 14. To a small island. |
| 7. He is. | 15. In ¹ beautiful Britain. |
| 8. You are. | 16. Good queens (obj.). |

III

1. *Filiae² rēgīnae sunt bonae et pulchrae.* 2. *Galba rēgīnam pulchram laudat.* 3. *In mēnsā sunt multae rosae.* 4. *Agricolās vexātis.* 5. *Galba agricolam vocat.* 6. *Incolās pulchrae Britanniae vexāmus.* 7. *Īnsulam magnam et pulchram laudātis.* 8. *Rēgīna est pulchra et puellae rēgīnam amant.* 9. *In Britannīā est rēgīna bona et pulchra.* 10. *Gallia est patria Galbae.* 11. *Puellās parvās vocō.* 12. *Pulchram filiam agricolae amās.* 13. *Incolās Galliae laudāmus.* 14. *Gallia insula nōn est.*

IV

1. On the farmer's³ table are many beautiful⁴ roses.
 2. You are summoning Galba. 3. Small islands are

¹ *In* or *on*, denoting place, are expressed by *in* and the ablative.

² Explain all nominatives and accusatives.

³ *On the table of the farmer.*

⁴ Cf. III, 9.

beautiful. 4. The little girls love the beautiful queen.
5. You are praising the daughter of the farmer. 6. Britain is a large island. 7. The inhabitants of Britain love the goddess. 8. The road is long and beautiful.
9. Galba is an inhabitant of Italy. 10. The girl is the daughter of the good queen.

**CENTURIO**

LESSON III

SECOND DECLENSION

13. NOUNS IN -US, -ER, -IR

Masculine nouns of the second declension end in -us, -er, -ir, and are declined as follows :

	Servus, slave ; stem, servo-	Puer, boy ; stem, puero-	Ager, field ; stem, agro-	Vir, man ; stem, viro-
	SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i>	servus	puer	ager	vir
<i>Gen.</i>	servi	pueri	agri	virī
<i>Dat.</i>	servō	puerō	agrō	virō
<i>Acc.</i>	servum	puerum	agrum	virum
<i>Abl.</i>	servō	puerō	agrō	virō
	PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	servi	pueri	agri	virī
<i>Gen.</i>	servōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	servīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs
<i>Acc.</i>	servōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs
<i>Abl.</i>	servīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs

14. NOTES ON DECLENSION

1. The vocative singular of nouns of the second declension in -us ends in -e; as, *serve, O slave*. The vocative of all other nouns of any declension is like the nominative.

2. Nouns in -ius form the genitive singular in -ī, instead of -ii; as, *fillus*, — genitive *filli* (for *fillī*). These genitives accent the penult, even when short. *Filius* also has the vocative, *filli*.

3. The irregular endings of *dea* and *filia* in the dative and ablative plural (2, 5) are to distinguish them from the same cases of *deus*, i, m., *god*, and *filius*, i, m., *son*.

4. Most nouns in *-er* are declined like *ager*. *Socer*, *gener*, the plural *liberī*, *children*, and a few uncommon words are like *puer*.

15. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES

Masculine adjectives of the second declension end in *-us* and *-er*, and are declined like the corresponding nouns; thus:

Like *servus*: *bonus*,¹ *longus*, *magnus*, *multus*, *parvus*; like *ager*: *pulcher*; like *puer*: *liber* (see 25).

16. EXERCISE

Review 4. Decline *bonus servus*, *the good slave*; *bonus agricola*, *the good farmer*; *ager magnus*, *a large field*.

17. APPOSITIVES

1. DEFINITION: A noun directly following another noun and denoting the same person or thing is called an appositive; as,

John, the porter.

2. RULE: *An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits*; as,

Mārcus, puer, Marcus, the boy.

3. An appositive has no case meaning of its own, and is translated as if nominative; as,

Mārcī, puerī, of Marcus, the boy.

¹ Adjectives have the same meanings in all genders.

18.

VOCABULARY

ad, prep. gov. acc., <i>to, toward,</i> <i>for, near.</i>	Mārcus, ī, m., <i>Marcus.</i> portō, <i>I carry, bring.</i>
ager, agri, m., <i>field.</i>	puer, eri, m., <i>boy.</i>
filius, fili, m., <i>son.</i>	pugnō, <i>I fight.</i>
Gallus, ī, m., <i>a Gaul; pl., the</i> <i>Gauls.</i>	servus, ī, m., <i>slave.</i>
gener, eri, m., <i>son-in-law.</i>	socer, eri, m., <i>father-in-law.</i>
liberī, ōrum, m. pl., <i>children.</i>	vir, viri, m., <i>man.</i>

19.

EXERCISES

I

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Servi bonī. | 11. Liberōrum. |
| 2. Servōs bonōs. | 12. Bonis puerīs. |
| 3. Socerōrum. | 13. Bonus agricola. |
| 4. Mārce. | 14. Multōrum virōrum. |
| 5. Mārcus, puer. | 15. Multīs virīs. |
| 6. Mārcō, puerō. | 16. Filiīs Mārcī. |
| 7. Fili. | 17. Filiābus Mārcī. |
| 8. Britannia, insula. | 18. Deābus. |
| 9. Portātis. | 19. Pugnās. |
| 10. Pugnat. | 20. Portant. |

II

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Of a large boy. | 8. O boy! |
| 2. The son of Marcus. | 9. We are fighting. |
| 3. O son of Marcus! | 10. You are carrying. |
| 4. To Marcus, the boy. | 11. Good farmers (<i>obj.</i>). |
| 5. Of Galba, son of Marcus. | 12. To many slaves. |
| 6. To Britain, an island. | 13. For many islands. |
| 7. The son-in-law (<i>obj.</i>). | 14. O children! |

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------|
| 15. Small boys. | 18. O slave! |
| 16. To a small girl. | 19. He fights. |
| 17. Many men of Gaul. | 20. They carry. |

III

1. Viri boni patriam amant. 2. Boni liberi rosās pulchrās ad¹ rēginam portant. 3. Vir est gener Mārci. 4. Mārcus, Gallus, est socer Galbae. 5. Agricola bonus liberōs amat. 6. Galli in Britannīā pugnant. 7. Mārcus, puer, filius agricolae est. 8. Servus ad¹ filiam agricolae multās rosās portat. 9. In Britannīā, magnā īnsulā, multi viri pugnant. 10. Generum Mārci laudō. 11. Viri incolās Galliae vexant. 12. Galba et Mārcus sunt filii rēginae. 13. Puella ad¹ mēsam rosās pulchrās portat.

IV

1. The daughters of the queen are in the field. 2. Galba is the son of Marcus, a good farmer. 3. Britain, a large island, is the country of Galba. 4. The Gauls are fighting in Britain. 5. We praise the little daughters of Galba, an inhabitant of Italy. 6. The Gauls harass many farmers of Italy. 7. Marcus, a good man, is a Gaul. 8. I summon Galba, son-in-law of Marcus. 9. Marcus, the slave of the queen, is carrying the roses. 10. The girls love the queen's daughter.

¹ To, denoting motion toward, is expressed by *ad* and the accusative.



PILUM

LESSON IV

SECOND DECLENSION; QUESTIONS

20. NOUNS IN -UM

Neuter nouns of the second declension end in **-um**, and are declined as follows :

Dōnum, *gift*; stem, **dōno-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	dōnum	dōna
<i>Gen.</i>	dōnī	dōnōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	dōnō	dōnīs
<i>Acc.</i>	dōnum	dōna
<i>Abl.</i>	dōnō	dōnīs

21. NOTES ON DECLENSION

1. The nominative and accusative of all neuter nouns are alike, and, in the plural, end in **-a**. This is true of neuter nouns of all declensions.

2. Nouns in **-um** form the genitive singular like nouns in **-ius**. (See 14, 2.)

cōnsilium, *plan*; genitive, **cōnsilī**.

22. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES

Neuter adjectives of the second declension are declined like **dōnum**. The following are the neuters of adjectives in the preceding vocabularies: **bonum**, **magnum**, **multum**, **parvum**, **longum**, **pulchrum**. Decline **bellum magnum**, *a great war*.

23.

QUESTIONS

A question may be introduced by the interrogative particle *-ne*, which is attached to the first word of the sentence; as,

Estne puer bonus, is the boy good?

-Ne simply denotes interrogation; it is not translated.

24.

WORD ORDER

1. The usual order of the Latin sentence is *subject, object, verb*; as,

Agricola puerum laudat, the farmer praises the boy.

2. The basis of Latin word order is emphasis. Therefore, the usual order is often varied. Frequently, the emphatic word is placed first; as,

Puerum agricola laudat, the farmer praises THE BOY.

3. Try to observe these principles in writing English-Latin sentences.

25.

VOCABULARY

auxilium, auxili, n., aid, help.

bellum, i, n., war.

comparō, I provide, get ready, prepare.

cōnsilium, cōnsili, n., plan, advice; wisdom.

cōpia, ae, f., supply, plenty; pl., troops.

dē, prep. gov. abl., about, concerning.

deus, i, m., god.

dōnum, i, n., gift, present.

frūmentum, i, n., grain.

liber, free (adj.); fem., libera; neut., liberum.

-ne, interrogative particle.

oppidum, i, n., town, walled town.

proelium, proeli, n., battle.

Rōmāni, ōrum, m., the Romans.

ubi, where? (adv.).

vāstō, I lay waste.

26.

EXERCISES

I

- | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Auxilī. | 11. Cōsiliis bonis. |
| 2. Cōsiliōrum bonōrum. | 12. Oppidō magnō. |
| 3. Oppidis magnis. | 13. Vāstant. |
| 4. Vāstātis. | 14. Comparāmus. |
| 5. Frūmentō. | 15. Multum frūmentum. |
| 6. Virōrum liberōrum. ¹ | 16. Proelium cōpiārum. |
| 7. Viri et liberi. ² | 17. Cōpiis magnis. |
| 8. Deis et deābus. | 18. Parva dōna. |
| 9. Bellum magnum. | 19. Dē cōsiliō. |
| 10. Dē bellō. | 20. Comparās. |

II

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Of a great war. | 11. Of the children. |
| 2. The battle of the troops. | 12. To a free man. |
| 3. We are preparing. | 13. With much grain. |
| 4. For a small gift. | 14. Of great troops. |
| 5. Concerning troops. | 15. By aid. |
| 6. To the walled-town. | 16. Good plans (subj.). |
| 7. With grain. | 17. Good plans (obj.). |
| 8. Near ³ the town. | 18. Of many battles. |
| 9. For great troops. | 19. Of a small battle. |
| 10. Of much grain. | 20. You lay waste. |

III

1. Filius et gener Mārci in Galliā pugnāt. 2. Magnum proelium ad⁴ oppidum est. 3. Cōpia Rōmānōrum frūmentum comparant. 4. Agrōs Gallōrum vāstāmus. 5. Cōsilia dē bellō comparātis. 6. Socer Galbae ad oppidum frūmentum portat. 7. Multi deī et multae deae

¹ Adjective.² Noun.³ Ad.⁴ Near.

sunt.¹ 8. Viri et pueri et servi auxilium Rōmānīs² comparant. 9. Libērī dōna amant. 10. Ubi est proelium? 11. Estne in oppidō Gallōrum? 12. Rōmānī sunt libērī; servī nōn libērī sunt. 13. Vexātisne incolās oppidi magni?

IV

1. The troops of the Romans harass the farmers of Italy. 2. Where are the troops of the Gauls? 3. You praise the good plan of Galba. 4. Is the town large? 5. Is the town free? 6. Are you free? 7. The inhabitants of the large town are fighting. 8. Are you carrying grain to the troops? 9. The supply of grain is large. 10. The troops lay waste Italy, the fatherland of the Romans.

¹ See 5 — est.

² Dative.



CORONA

LESSON V

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION: ADJECTIVES

27. Since the masculine of adjectives is declined like **servus**, **puer**, or **ager**, the feminine like **puella**, and the neuter like **dōnum**, the complete declension of adjectives of the first and second declensions is as follows :

Bonus, good (Masc. like **servus**)

SINGULAR			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō
PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonis	bonis	bonis

Pulcher, beautiful (Masc. like **ager**)

SINGULAR			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
-------------	---------	----------	---------

Etc., like **bonus**.

Liber, *free* (Masc. like **puer**)

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	liber	libera	liberum
<i>Gen.</i>	liberī	liberae	liberī
<i>Dat.</i>	liberō	liberae	liberō
<i>Acc.</i>	liberum	liberam	liberum
<i>Abl.</i>	liberō	liberā	liberō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	liberī	liberae	libera
-------------	--------	---------	--------

Etc., like **bonus**.

28. NOTES ON DECLENSION

1. Adjectives in **-us** are declined like **bonus**, **bona**, **bonum**. The vocative singular masculine ends in **-e** (like that of **servus**). All other adjectives of all declensions have the vocative like the nominative.

2. Most Adjectives in **-er** are like **pulcher**, **pulchra**, **pulchrum**. **Miser**, *wretched*, **tener**, *tender*, and **asper**, *rough*, are like **liber**, **libera**, **liberum**.

29. EXERCISE

Decline **hortus pulcher**, *the beautiful garden*; **magnum dōnum**, *a large gift*.

30.

VOCABULARY

altus, a, um, *high, deep*.
 arma, ōrum, n. pl., *arms*.
 asper, era, erum, *rough*.
 bonus, a, um, *good*.
 fossa, ae, f., *ditch, trench*.
 hortus, i, m., *garden*.
 lātus, a, um, *wide, broad*.
 liber, era, erum, *free*.
 longus, a, um, *long*.

magnus, a, um, *great, large*.
 miser, era, erum, *wretched*.
 mūrus, i, m., *wall*.
 multus, a, um, *much*; pl., *many*.
 parvus, a, um, *small, little*.
 pulcher, chra, chrum, *beautiful*.
 superō, *I conquer, overcome*.
 tener, era, erum, *tender*.

31.

EXERCISES

I

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Fossae altae. | 11. Fossis lātis. |
| 2. Armōrum magnōrum. | 12. Mūrō altō. |
| 3. Viae longae. | 13. Viis longīs. |
| 4. Multōrum puerōrum. | 14. Virī liberī. |
| 5. Viā asperā. | 15. Virī et liberī. |
| 6. Servīs miserīs. | 16. Multa dōna. |
| 7. Puellās parvās. | 17. Servō miserō. |
| 8. Rosae pulchrae. | 18. Puellae parvae. |
| 9. Hortis pulchris. | 19. Rosīs pulchris. |
| 10. Cōpiās superātis. | 20. Proeliō magnō. |

II

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. We overcome. | 6. To ² a large town. |
| 2. He overcomes. | 7. With much grain. |
| 3. Of many children. | 8. A wretched slave (obj.). |
| 4. Of free men. | 9. The little girl (subj.). |
| 5. In ¹ a beautiful garden. | 10. They prepare arms. |

¹ See 12, II, 9.² Ad.

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 11. For large roses. | 16. Of a high wall. |
| 12. By rough roads. | 17. Of many gifts. |
| 13. To a deep trench. | 18. You praise the girls. |
| 14. Deep trenches (obj.). | 19. In ¹ a deep trench. |
| 15. High walls. | 20. Of great battles. |

III

1. Rōmāni arma et frūmentum et cōpiās comparant.
 2. Mūrus oppidī altus et fossa lāta est. 3. Portāsne rosās ad agricolam? 4. Ad agricolam rosās nōn portō; in hortō agricolae multae² sunt. 5. Cōpiae Gallōrum multa arma portant. 6. Via est longa et aspera. 7. Auxiliō Gallōrum cōpiās superātis. 8. Gallōs cōnsiliō bonō proeliō superat. 9. Servi miserī nōn liberī sunt. 10. Auxiliō deōrum patriam Gallōrum vāstāmus. 11. Ubi est dōnum puerī parvī?

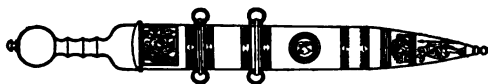
IV

1. The garden is large and beautiful. 2. In the small garden are many roses. 3. You overcome the troops in battle.³ 4. The children are little and tender. 5. The plan concerning the war is good. 6. Are the Gauls preparing great troops? 7. Where is the grain? 8. You are a free man. 9. Are you a free man? 10. There are many farmers on the island.

¹ See 12, II, 9.

² Many (roses).

³ Cf. III, 8.



GLADIUS

LESSON VI

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES; QUESTIONS

32. THE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

The following nine adjectives have **-ius**¹ in the genitive singular, and **-i** in the dative singular; the plural is regular.

a. **Alius** has **-ud** in the nominative and accusative singular neuter, instead of **-um**.

alius	-a	-ud,	<i>another, other.</i>
alter	-era	-erum,	<i>the other (of two).</i>
uter	-tra	-trum,	<i>which (of two)?</i>
neuter	-tra	-trum,	<i>neither (of two).</i>
ūllus	-a	-um,	<i>any.</i>
nūllus	-a	-um,	<i>none.</i>
ūnus	-a	-um,	<i>one, alone, only.</i>
tōtus	-a	-um,	<i>whole.</i>
sōlus	-a	-um,	<i>alone.</i>

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	alius	alia	aliud
<i>Gen.</i>	[alius]	[alius]	[alius] ²
<i>Dat.</i>	aliī	aliī	aliī
<i>Acc.</i>	aliū	aliā	aliud
<i>Abl.</i>	aliō	aliā	aliō

¹ Except **alter**, which usually has **-ius** in poetry.

² This genitive rarely occurs. Its place is supplied by **alterius**.

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	alter	altera	alterum
<i>Gen.</i>	alterius	alterius	alterius
<i>Dat.</i>	alterī	alterī	alterī
<i>Acc.</i>	alterum	alteram	alterum
<i>Abl.</i>	alterō	alterā	alterō

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	uter	utra	utrum
<i>Gen.</i>	utrius	utrius	utrius
<i>Dat.</i>	utrī	utrī	utrī
<i>Acc.</i>	utrum	utram	utrum
<i>Abl.</i>	utrō	utrā	utrō

33.

QUESTIONS

1. Sometimes we ask a question in such a way that it is clear we expect the answer "Yes"; as,

"Did you not lose your knife?" or "You lost your knife, didn't you?"

2. In Latin, this kind of question is expressed by placing *nōnne* at the beginning of the sentence; as,

Nōnne cōpiae agrōs vāstant, the troops are laying waste the fields, are they not?

Review 23.

34.

VOCABULARY

As a part of this vocabulary, learn the meanings of the nine irregular adjectives.

castra, ōrum, n., pl., camp.

numerus, i, m., number.

incitō, I urge on, arouse.

occupō, I seize, take possession of.

nōnne, interrogative particle (affirmative).

populus, i, m., people.

Rōmānus, a, um, Roman.

35.

EXERCISES

I

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. In castris alteris. | 11. In tōtis castris. |
| 2. Ad nūllum oppidum. | 12. Aliārum cōpiārum. |
| 3. Tōtī numerō. | 13. Rēginae sōlae. |
| 4. Puellās tenerās. | 14. Filiae alterius. |
| 5. Cōpiās incitās. | 15. Ūnō bellō. |
| 6. Aliud oppidum. | 16. Aliō populō. |
| 7. Viā utrā? | 17. Aliū populō. |
| 8. Neuter puer. | 18. Ūllius auxili. |
| 9. Nūllius servī. | 19. Gallōrum sōlōrum. |
| 10. Nūlli agrō. | 20. Incolae alterius. |

II

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Of the other war. | 11. You seize the town. |
| 2. To the whole camp. | 12. Of the other town. |
| 3. In the other island. | 13. Which daughter? (obj.). |
| 4. Of the Gauls alone. | 14. To which girl? |
| 5. To neither boy. | 15. Of which girl? |
| 6. No girls (subj.). | 16. By any plan. |
| 7. Of no girls. | 17. Another gift (obj.). |
| 8. Of any town. | 18. For any grain. |
| 9. For any slave. | 19. In one town. |
| 10. With any number. | 20. On the other wall. |

III

1. Nōne altera castra populī Rōmānī sunt magna?
 2. Occupātisne neutra castra Gallōrum? 3. In castris Rōmānōrum est magnus numerus servōrum. 4. Ad oppidum est fossa lāta et longa. 5. Galba cōpiās Gallōrum superat et tōtum oppidum occupat. 6. Gallī sōlī cōpiās incitant et castra occupant. 7. Mūrum altum et

lātam fossam alterōrum castrōrum laudat. 8. Rēgīna hortum pulchrum amat. 9. Suntne viae asperae et longae? 10. Nōnne Galba est vir liber? 11. Multa arma alia in castrīs sunt. 12. Nullōs agrōs Gallōrum vāstātis. 13. Servī incolae sunt miserī. 14. Nōnne ūlla oppida occupātis?

IV

1. The Roman people alone are preparing no arms. 2. The number of men is large. 3. The troops fight near the town and seize the other camp. 4. Which town do they seize? 5. Are there not many Gauls in the camp? 6. Is there plenty of grain in the other field? 7. Are there not many men in the town? 8. The Roman troops are seizing the wall, are they not? 9. There is no grain in the whole field.



SIGNA ROMANA

1. Aquila

2. Signum

3. Vexillum

LESSON VII

THIRD DECLENSION: CONSONANT STEMS; QUESTIONS

36. THIRD DECLENSION: CONSONANT STEMS

Nouns of the third declension are classified as consonant stems, -i stems, and mixed stems.

Nouns with consonant stems have the stem ending in a mute (b, p, d, t, c, g), a liquid (l, r), a nasal (n), or a spirant (s).

A. MUTE STEMS

Rēx, m., *king*;
stem, **rēg-**

Dux, m., *leader*;
stem, **duc-**

Princeps, m., *chief*;
stem, **princip-**

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	rēx	dux	princeps
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgis	ducis	principis
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgī	ducī	principī
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgem	ducem	principem
<i>Abl.</i>	rēge	duce	principe

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	rēgēs	ducēs	principēs
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgum	ducum	principum
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgibus	ducibus	principibus
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgēs	ducēs	principēs
<i>Abl.</i>	rēgibus	ducibus	principibus

Third Declension: Consonant Stems; Questions 31

Miles, m., soldier ;
stem, **milit-**

Lapis, m., stone ,
stem, **lapid-**

Caput, n., head ;
stem, **capit-**

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	miles	lapis	caput
<i>Gen.</i>	militis	lapidis	capitis
<i>Dat.</i>	militi	lapidi	capiti
<i>Acc.</i>	militem	lapidem	caput
<i>Abl.</i>	militē	lapide	capite

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	militēs	lapidēs	capita
<i>Gen.</i>	militum	lapidum	capitum
<i>Dat.</i>	militibus	lapidibus	capitibus
<i>Acc.</i>	militēs	lapidēs	capita
<i>Abl.</i>	militibus	lapidibus	capitibus

B. LIQUID STEMS

Cōsul, m., consul ;
stem, **cōsul-**

Victor, m., victor ;
stem, **victōr-**

Pater, m., father ;
stem, **patr-**

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	cōsul	victor	pater
<i>Gen.</i>	cōsulis	victōris	patrie
<i>Dat.</i>	cōsuli	victōri	patri
<i>Acc.</i>	cōsulem	victōrem	patrem
<i>Abl.</i>	cōsule	victōre	patre

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	cōsulēs	victōrēs	patrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	cōsulum	victōrum	patrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cōsulibus	victōribus	patribus
<i>Acc.</i>	cōsulēs	victōrēs	patrēs
<i>Abl.</i>	cōsulibus	victōribus	patribus

C. NASAL STEMS

Legiō, f., <i>legion</i> ; stem, legiōn-		Homō, m., <i>man</i> ; stem, homin-	Flūmen, n., <i>river</i> ; stem, flūmin-
SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i>	legiō	homō	flūmen
<i>Gen.</i>	legiōnis	hōminis	flūminis
<i>Dat.</i>	legiōni	hominī	flūmini
<i>Acc.</i>	legiōnem	hominem	flūmen
<i>Abl.</i>	legiōne	homine	flūmine
PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	legiōnēs	hominēs	flūmina
<i>Gen.</i>	legiōnum	hominum	flūminum
<i>Dat.</i>	legiōnibus	hominibus	flūminibus
<i>Acc.</i>	legiōnēs	hominēs	flūmina
<i>Abl.</i>	legiōnibus	hominibus	flūminibus

D. SPIRANT STEMS

Mōs, m., <i>custom</i> ; stem, mōs-		Tempus, n., <i>time</i> ; stem, tempos-	Genus, n., <i>kind</i> ; stem, genes-
SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i>	mōs	tempus	genus
<i>Gen.</i>	mōris	temporis	generis
<i>Dat.</i>	mōri	temporī	generī
<i>Acc.</i>	mōrem	tempus	genus
<i>Abl.</i>	mōre	tempore	genere
PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	mōrēs	tempora	genera
<i>Gen.</i>	mōrum	temporum	generum
<i>Dat.</i>	mōribus	temporibus	generibus
<i>Acc.</i>	mōrēs	tempora	genera
<i>Abl.</i>	mōribus	temporibus	generibus

37. NOTES ON DECLENSION

1. In spirant stems, the -s of the stem becomes -r, except in the nominative and vocative singular, and in some words even in those cases; as, **honor**, **honōris**, m., *honor*; stem, **honōs-**.

2. No simple rule can be given for the formation of the nominative singular of nouns of the third declension. The nominative, genitive, and gender of each noun should be learned as it occurs.

3. Neuters follow the regular rule for the nominative and accusative. (See 21, 1.)

38. EXERCISE

Learn the nominative, genitive, and gender of each noun in the vocabulary. Decline **cōnsul bonus**, *a good consul*; **virtūs magna**, *great valor*; **flūmen longum**, *a long river*.

39. QUESTIONS

1. Sometimes we ask a question in such a way that it is clear we expect the answer "No"; as,

"He didn't go, did he?"

2. In Latin, this form of question is expressed by putting **num** at the beginning of the sentence; as,

Num cōpiae agrōs vāstant, *the troops are not laying waste the fields, are they?*

3. Review 23, 33.

40. VOCABULARY

caput, **capitis**, n., *head*.

cōnsul, **cōsulis**, m., *consul* (a

Roman official).

dux, **ducis**, m., *leader*; *guide*.

expectō, *I await, wait for, ex-*

pect.

flūmen, **flūminis**, n., *river*.

habet, *he (she, it) has*.

habent, *they have.*

legiō, legiōnis, f., *legion.*

mīles, militis, m., *soldier.*

num, interrogative particle
(negative).

oppugnō, *I attack.*

periculum, i, n., *risk, danger.*

prīnceps, prīncipis, m., *chief.*

prōvincia, ae, f., *province.*

sine, prep. gov. abl., *without.*

tempus, temporis, n., *time; occasion.*

trāns, prep. gov. acc., *across.*

virtūs, virtūtis, f., *valor, bravery; virtue.*

41.

EXERCISES

I

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Ducibus. | 11. Cōsuli bonō. |
| 2. Tempora. | 12. Multi ducēs. |
| 3. Capitū. | 13. Temporum aliōrum. |
| 4. Prīncipēs. | 14. Militēs habent. |
| 5. Sine periculō. | 15. Trāns flūmen. |
| 6. Cōsulum. | 16. Prīnceps Gallōrum. |
| 7. In prōvinciā. | 17. Virtūte magnā. |
| 8. Flūmina. | 18. Virtūte sōlā. |
| 9. Legiōnem. | 19. Ducem bonum. |
| 10. Capita. | 20. Ducī aliī. |

II

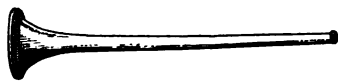
- | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Of the river. | 11. For another time. |
| 2. By valor. | 12. To the other leader. |
| 3. For a soldier. | 13. To valor alone. |
| 4. O leader! | 14. Many chiefs. |
| 5. To the chiefs. | 15. Across the rivers. |
| 6. Without a guide. | 16. Without legions. |
| 7. Of one legion. | 17. No soldiers. |
| 8. To the consul. | 18. For no soldiers. |
| 9. Of heads. | 19. Of the other consul. |
| 10. The leader (obj.). | 20. Of which consul? |

III

1. Ducem militum vocātis. 2. Una legiō sine ūllō periculō oppidum oppugnat. 3. Num incolae prōvinciae auxilium Rōmānōrum expectant? 4. Magnus numerus militum oppidum alterum oppugnat. 5. Nōne principēs cōpiās incitant? 6. Uter vir est dux legiōnis? 7. Num castra occupātis et aliās legiōnēs expectātis? 8. Suntne agrī et cōpia frūmentī trāns flūmen? 9. Nōne Rōmānī ducēs et cōpiās habent? 10. Neuter cōsul magnum numerum militum habet. 11. Puer caput magnum habet. 12. Num tempus est longum? 13. Virtūte sōlā militēs superāmus. 14. Gallī tōtam prōvinciam vexant et vāstant.

IV

1. There are many soldiers of one legion in the camp. 2. The inhabitants of Britain do not expect aid, do they? 3. Is not the valor of the chief great? 4. The legions do not attack the province, do they? 5. The Gauls have good leaders, have they not? 6. The leader of the Gauls does not lay waste the fields, does he? 7. We lay waste many fields without danger. 8. Is there a river near the town? 9. There are many chiefs in the province. 10. The leader has other troops.



TUBA

LESSON VIII

THIRD DECLENSION: -I STEMS; MIXED STEMS

42.

-I STEMS

Certain nouns of the third declension have the stem ending in -i. This stem vowel, when combined with the case endings, results in terminations which differ somewhat from those of consonant stems.

	Hostis, m., enemy ; stem, hosti-	Turris, f., tower ; stem, turri-	Vis, f., force ; stem, vi-; vīri-
		SINGULAR	
<i>Nom.</i>	hostis	turris	vis
<i>Gen.</i>	hostis	turris	vis
<i>Dat.</i>	hosti	turri	vi
<i>Acc.</i>	hostem	turrim, em	vim
<i>Abl.</i>	hoste	turri, e	vi
		PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	hostēs	turrēs	vīrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	hostium	turrium	vīrium
<i>Dat.</i>	hostibus	turribus	vīribus
<i>Acc.</i>	hostis, ēs	turris, ēs	vīris, ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	hostibus	turribus	vīribus
	Sedile, n., seat ; stem, sedili-	Animal, n., animal ; stem, animāli-	
		SINGULAR	
<i>Nom.</i>	sedile		animal
<i>Gen.</i>	sedilis		animālis
<i>Dat.</i>	sedili		animālī
<i>Acc.</i>	sedile		animal
<i>Abl.</i>	sedili		animālī

	PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	sedilia	animālia
<i>Gen.</i>	sedilium	animālium
<i>Dat.</i>	sedilibus	animālibus
<i>Acc.</i>	sedilia	animālia
<i>Abl.</i>	sedilibus	animālibus

43. NOTES ON DECLENSION

1. MASCULINES AND FEMININES.

a. The termination of the genitive plural is **-ium**; of the accusative plural, **-is** or **-ēs**.

b. Most nouns have **-e** in the ablative singular. A few have both **-ī** and **-e**. **Vis** has only **-ī**.

c. Most nouns have **-em** in the accusative singular. **Turris** has both **-im** and **-em**. **Vis** has only **-im**.

2. NEUTERS.

All these have **-ī** in the ablative singular, **-ium** in the genitive plural, and **-ia** in the nominative and accusative plural.

44. MIXED STEMS

Nouns with mixed stems are declined in the singular as consonant stems, and in the plural as **-i** stems.

Arx , <i>f., citadel</i> ; stem, arc(i)-	Caedēs , <i>f., slaughter</i> ; stem, caed(i)-	Cīvitās , <i>f., state</i> ; stem, cīvitāt(i)-
---	---	---

	SINGULAR		
<i>Nom.</i>	arx	caedēs	cīvitās
<i>Gen.</i>	arcis	caedis	cīvitātis
<i>Dat.</i>	arci	caedī	cīvitātī
<i>Acc.</i>	arcem	caedem	cīvitātem
<i>Abl.</i>	arce	caede	cīvitāte

	PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	arcēs	caedēs	cīvitātēs
<i>Gen.</i>	arcium	caedium	cīvitātium (-um) ¹
<i>Dat.</i>	arcibus	caedibus	cīvitātibus
<i>Acc.</i>	arcīs, ēs	caedīs, ēs	cīvitātīs, ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	arcibus	caedibus	cīvitātibus

45. CLASSIFICATION OF STEMS

1. To decline a noun of the third declension, it is necessary to determine whether it has a consonant stem, an -i stem, or a mixed stem.

2. The following have -i stems :

a. Nouns in -is having the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative.

b. Neuters in -e, -al, -ar.

3. The following have mixed stems :

a. Nouns in -ēs having the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative.

b. One syllable nouns in -s, -x, preceded by a consonant.

c. Nouns in -ns, -rs.

d. Nouns in -tās.

46. VOCABULARY

animal, animālis, n., <i>animal</i> .	hostis, hostis, m., <i>enemy</i> .
arx, arcis, f., <i>citadel</i> .	idōneus, a, um, <i>suitable</i> .
cohors, cohortis, f., <i>cohort</i> (one of the ten divisions of a legion).	mare, maris, n., <i>sea</i> .
collis, collis, m., <i>hill</i> .	nāvis, nāvis, f., <i>ship, boat</i> ;
confūrō, I <i>conspire, plot</i> .	nāvis longa, <i>warship</i> .
eques, equitis, m., <i>horseman</i> ;	nōmen, nōminis, n., <i>name</i> .
pl., <i>cavalry</i> .	silva, ae, f., <i>forest, woods</i> .
gēns, gentis, f., <i>tribe, race</i> .	turris, turris, f., <i>tower</i> .
	vis, vis, f., <i>strength, force</i> .

¹ Nouns in -tās, -tātis usually have -um in the genitive plural.

47.

EXERCISES

I

- | | |
|-------------|----------------------|
| 1. Capite. | 11. Caput parvum. |
| 2. Turrium. | 12. Turrēs altae. |
| 3. Cohorte. | 13. Turrīs altās. |
| 4. Vī. | 14. Virēs. |
| 5. Maria. | 15. Multōs hostīs. |
| 6. Maribus. | 16. Ducem solum. |
| 7. Nāve. | 17. Gentium aliārum. |
| 8. Hostī. | 18. Nāvi longā. |
| 9. Hostīs. | 19. Nāvi longae. |
| 10. Nāvis. | 20. Collis altōs. |

II

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Of a warship. | 11. By great force. |
| 2. Of warships. | 12. To the other cohorts. |
| 3. The enemies (obj.). | 13. Of the whole cohort. |
| 4. Of the enemy. | 14. On another hill. |
| 5. Of the tribes. | 15. To the good horsemen. |
| 6. To the sea. | 16. By a warship. |
| 7. By the sea. | 17. To the enemy. |
| 8. Seas (subj.). | 18. By the name. |
| 9. In the citadel. | 19. On a beautiful hill. |
| 10. Of animals. | 20. Of a suitable ship. |

III

1. In silvā sunt multa animālia. 2. Tempus proeliō¹ idōneum est. 3. Ūna cohors legiōnis in Galliā pugnat.
 4. Ad² mare est turris alta. 5. Nōmen principis Gallōrum est Galba. 6. Num cōpiās hostium exspectātis?
 7. Vīs flūminis est magna. 8. Arx oppidi in colle est.

¹ Dative; *for*.

² Cf. 26, II, 8.

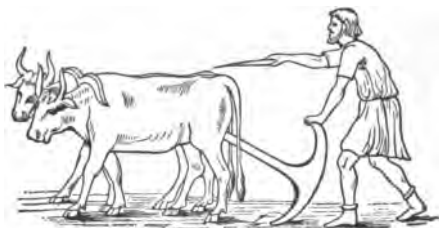
9. Ducēs multārum gentium coniūrant. 10. In mari nāvēs parvae in magnō periculō sunt. 11. Multi hostēs collem occupant et vī magnā arcem oppugnant. 12. Hostēs superātis et castra occupātis. 13. Mare pulchrum et collis altōs amāmus. 14. Ducēs Rōmānī militēs et equitēs comparant.

IV

1. The citadel is on a high hill. 2. There are many cohorts in one legion. 3. The Gauls have many tribes. 4. Is the hill suitable for a camp? ¹ 5. We summon the leader across the river. 6. You praise the horsemen and the other soldiers. 7. We attack many tribes in one province. 8. On the sea there is a large number of ships. 9. The enemy ² are not on the hill, are they? 10. The sea is broad and beautiful.

¹ Cf. III, 2.

² *Enemy* is usually plural in Latin.



AGRICOLA ARAT

LESSON IX

THIRD DECLENSION: GENDER; PRACTICE

48.

GENDER

The gender of nouns of the third declension is best learned for each noun as it occurs in the vocabularies. The following rules, however, are of help, although they have many exceptions:

1. MASCULINE: Nouns in **-ō, -or, -ōs, -er, -ēs.**
2. FEMININE: Nouns in **-ās, -ēs, -is, -ūs, -x, -s** (following a consonant), **-dō, -gō, -iō** (abstract or collective).
3. NEUTER: Nouns in **-c, -i, -t, -y, -l, -a, -n, -e, -ar, -ur, -ūs.**

49.

REVIEW AND PRACTICE

1. Review carefully the paradigms in Lessons VII, VIII, and the NOTES ON DECLENSION, **37, 43.**
2. Study Vocabulary **50**, and review **40, 46**, learning the nominative, genitive, and gender of each noun of the third declension.
3. Review the CLASSIFICATION OF STEMS, **45.**
4. Make a list of fifteen nouns chosen at random from those you have learned, and write them as in the examples below. Determine the stems by the rules given in **45.**¹

¹ Pupils should have repeated drill in this work until the class of stem is instantly recognized. The stem of each noun of the third declension should be determined when it occurs in the vocabulary.

EXAMPLES :

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Gender</i>	<i>Stem</i>
miles	militis	m.	consonant.
ignis	ignis	m.	-i.
gēns	gentis	f.	mixed.

5. Decline several nouns in the list you have made.

50.

VOCABULARY

ā, ab, prep. gov. abl., <i>by</i> , ¹ <i>from</i> . (The form ab is always used before <i>vowels</i> or <i>h</i> .)	finis, finis, m., <i>end, boundary</i> ; pl., <i>territory</i> . ignis, ignis, m., <i>fire</i> .
agmen, agminis, n., <i>column</i> , <i>army on the march</i> .	locus, i, m., <i>place</i> ; pl., loca, ōrum, n.
civis, civis, m. or f., <i>citizen</i> .	mōns, montis, m., <i>mountain</i> .
collocō, I put, place, station.	pars, partis, f., <i>part, side, direc-</i> <i>tion</i> ; finā ex parte, <i>on one</i> <i>side</i> .
corpus, corporis, n., <i>body</i> .	tēlum, i, n., <i>weapon</i> .
ē, ex, prep. gov. abl., <i>from, out</i> <i>of</i> . (The form ex is always used before <i>vowels</i> or <i>h</i> .)	

51.

EXERCISES

I

- | | |
|--------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Cīvium. | 8. Finium. |
| 2. Cīvīs. | 9. Ab equitibus. |
| 3. Cīvēs. | 10. Equitum. |
| 4. Ex parte. | 11. Corpora magna. |
| 5. Corpora. | 12. Vīs magnae. |
| 6. Finēs. | 13. Multa animālia. |
| 7. Agminum. | 14. Ā prīncipibus bonīs. |

¹ "By" a person is expressed by ā, ab, and the ablative; "by" a thing, by the ablative alone.

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 15. Arcis idōneae. | 18. Montium altōrum. |
| 16. Multārum gentium. | 19. Nāvium parvārum. |
| 17. In locis altis. | 20. Marī lātō. |

II

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. For the territory. | 11. By a great fire. |
| 2. To the mountain. | 12. Of a suitable place. |
| 3. Of bodies. | 13. Suitable places. |
| 4. Citizens (obj.). | 14. Of high hills. |
| 5. In the column. | 15. Of Roman names. |
| 6. Seas (subj.). | 16. The high tower. |
| 7. By the enemy. | 17. Of high towers. |
| 8. Of the cohorts. | 18. Of broad rivers. |
| 9. By a weapon. | 19. Broad rivers. |
| 10. By the cohorts. | 20. Great seas. |

III

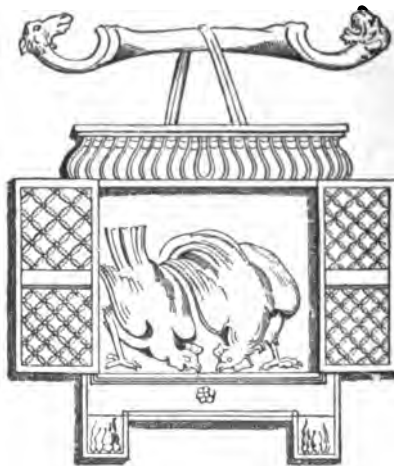
1. In castris hostium est magnus numerus tēlōrum.
 2. Ūnā ex parte montis est ignis magnus. 3. Dux in
 locō idōneō ūnam cohortem legiōnis collocat. 4. Cīvēs
 in mūrō et in turri altā pugnant. 5. Cōpiae ad ducem
 dōna portant. 6. Hostēs coniūrant et nāvēs longās com-
 parant. 7. Collis est proeliō idōneus locus. 8. Maria
 sunt lāta et flūmina sunt longa. 9. Multī milītēs ex¹
 agris frūmentum portant. 10. Ab¹ Italiā cōsulem
 vocāmus.

IV

1. The soldiers are carrying the weapons out of the
 camp. 2. The soldiers attack the citadel of the town
 with great force. 3. The leader summons the legions

¹ "Out of" a place is expressed by *ē*, *ex*, and the ablative; "from" a place, by *ā*, *ab*, and the ablative.

from the province. 4. The bodies of many soldiers are in the river. 5. The Romans seize and lay waste the territory of the Gauls. 6. The forest is a suitable place for many animals. 7. The enemy's weapons are not in the camp, are they? 8. The troops are preparing grain and weapons. 9. The Roman column is on one side of the hill. 10. In the town is a supply of weapons.



AUSPICIA

LESSON X

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION; INDIRECT OBJECT

52. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

Ācer, sharp;
stem, *ācri-*

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ācrīs, ēs</i>	<i>ācrīs, ēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

Facilis, easy;
stem, *facili-*

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>facilis</i>	<i>facile</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>facilis</i>	<i>facilis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>facilī</i>	<i>facilī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>facilem</i>	<i>facile</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>facilī</i>	<i>facilī</i>

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	PLURAL	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	facilēs		facilia
<i>Gen.</i>	facilium		facilium
<i>Dat.</i>	facilibus		facilibus
<i>Acc.</i>	facilis, ēs		facilia
<i>Abl.</i>	facilibus		facilibus

Ferāx, fertile ;
stem, ferāci-

Prūdēns, wise ;
stem, prūdentī-

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ferāx	ferāx	prūdēns	prūdēns
<i>Gen.</i>	ferācis	ferācis	prūdentis	prūdentis
<i>Dat.</i>	ferāci	ferāci	prūdentī	prūdentī
<i>Acc.</i>	ferācem	ferāx	prudentem	prūdēns
<i>Abl.</i>	ferāci, e	ferāci, e	prūdentī, e	prūdentī, e

		PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	ferācēs	ferācia	prūdentēs	prudentia
<i>Gen.</i>	ferācium	ferācium	prudentium	prudentium
<i>Dat.</i>	ferācibus	ferācibus	prudentibus	prudentibus
<i>Acc.</i>	ferācis, ēs	ferācia	prudentis, ēs	prudentia
<i>Abl.</i>	ferācibus	ferācibus	prudentibus	prudentibus

Vetus, old ;
stem, veter-

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
<i>Gen.</i>	veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
<i>Dat.</i>	veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
<i>Acc.</i>	veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
<i>Abl.</i>	vetere	vetere	veteribus	veteribus

53.

NOTES ON DECLENSION

1. Adjectives of the third declension in *-er* have three terminations in the nominative singular, like *acer*; those in *-is* have two, like *facilis*. These have *-i* stems, with *-ī* in the ablative singular.

2. Adjectives of one termination are like *ferax*, *prūdēns*, or *vetus*. They have *-i* stems (except *vetus* and a few others) and have *-ī* (rarely *-e*) in the ablative singular.

54.

EXERCISE

Decline *hortus ferax*, *the fertile garden*; *proellum acre*, *a sharp battle*; *navis celeris*,¹ *a swift ship*.

55.

INDIRECT OBJECT

1. DEFINITION: The indirect object of a verb denotes the person to whom something is given, said, or done; as,

I gave a ball to the *boy*. I gave the *boy* a ball.

2. RULE: *The indirect object is put in the dative case.*

Tubam puerō dat, *he gives a trumpet to the boy.*

56.

VOCABULARY

<i>acer</i> , <i>ācris</i> , <i>ācre</i> , <i>sharp</i> , <i>fierce</i> .	<i>cum</i> , prep. gov. abl., <i>with</i> .
<i>brevis</i> , <i>breve</i> , <i>brief</i> , <i>short</i> .	<i>dō</i> , ² <i>I give</i> .
<i>celer</i> , <i>celeris</i> , <i>celere</i> , <i>swift</i> , <i>quick</i> .	<i>ferax</i> , <i>ferāx</i> , gen. <i>ferācis</i> , <i>fertile</i> .
<i>commūnis</i> , <i>commūne</i> , <i>common</i> , <i>general</i> .	<i>gravis</i> , <i>grave</i> , <i>heavy</i> , <i>difficult</i> , <i>serious</i> .
<i>cōfirmō</i> , <i>I establish</i> , <i>strengthen</i> , <i>encourage</i> .	<i>incrēdibilia</i> , <i>incrēdibile</i> , <i>not to</i> <i>be believed</i> , <i>incredible</i> .

¹ *Celer* retains *e* before *r*, and has no genitive plural.

² The forms *damus*, *datis* have a short.

magnitūdō, magnitūdinis, f., size, greatness.

omnis, omne, all, every.

pāx, pācis, f., peace.

-que, and. (Conjunction denoting closer connection than

et. It is enclitic, *i.e.* appended to the last of the connected words.)

vetus, vetus, gen. veteris, old, ancient.

57.

EXERCISES

I

1. Agrōrum ferācium.
2. Proelia ācria.
3. Omnibus proeliis.
4. Agrīs ferācibus.
5. Omnium militum.
6. Temporis veteris.
7. Tempore brevī.
8. In omnibus oppidis.
9. Omni hostī.
10. Corpore gravī.

11. In finibus ferācibus.
12. Magnitūdō incredibilis.
13. Tēlō brevī.
14. In hortō ferācī.
15. Perīculum commūne.
16. Perīculō commūnī.
17. Omnium montium.
18. Omnibus ex partibus.
19. Ignis celeris.
20. In agrō ferācī.

II

1. All places.
2. Every battle.
3. Of a short time.
4. Of all legions.
5. By sharp battles.
6. Fertile territory.
7. In all places.
8. In every place.
9. For a heavy table.
10. On a heavy table.

11. Heavy weapons.
12. An incredible war.
13. Of a brief peace.
14. Of a swift river.
15. A swift column.
16. To a swift column.
17. All citizens.
18. For all citizens.
19. Of an ancient wall.
20. Broad seas.

III

1. Rōmānī cum omnibus gentibus pācem cōfirmant.
 2. Magnitūdō corporis Gallōrum est incrēdibilis. 3. In
 Ītaliā omnēs agricolae agrōs ferācēs et bonum frūmentum
 habent. 4. Via est brevis bonaque. 5. Ferācēs agrōs
 agricolārum vāstātis. 6. Dux omnibus militibus tēla dat.
 7. Puerī puellaeque ex hortō rosās portant. 8. Castra
 fossā mūrōque cōfirmāmus. 9. Omnēs militēs tēla
 gravia portant. 10. Proeliō acri cōpiae Gallōrum hostis
 superant. 11. Agricolae Ītaliae militibus Rōmānis frū-
 mentum dant. 12. Ūna legiō sine auxiliō, virtūte incrē-
 dibili, Gallōs superat. 13. Omnēs finēs Gallōrum in
 prōvinciā Rōmānā nōn sunt. 14. Incolis insulae aux-
 ilium damus.

IV

1. He gives a present to the slave. 2. The common
 danger arouses all the legions. 3. Italy is the ancient
 fatherland of the Romans. 4. You fight with¹ the
 Gauls. 5. The soldiers attack the wall with many
 weapons. 6. You establish peace with Britain. 7. The
 Romans give fertile fields to the Gauls. 8. All the Gauls
 are conspiring concerning a common war. 9. We sum-
 mon the soldiers from the wall by a trumpet. 10. We
 give much grain to the inhabitants.

¹ With should be expressed by *cum* unless it is equivalent in meaning to *by*.



IUMENTUM

LESSON XI

FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS; GENDER

58. FOURTH DECLENSION

Nouns of the fourth declension end in **-us**, masculine, and **-ū**, neuter, and are declined as follows :

	Fructus, m., fruit; stem, fructu-		Cornū, n., horn; stem, cornu-
	SINGULAR		
<i>Nom.</i>	frūctus		cornū
<i>Gen.</i>	frūctūs		cornūs
<i>Dat.</i>	frūctui		cornū
<i>Acc.</i>	frūctum		cornū
<i>Abl.</i>	frūctū		cornū
	PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	frūctūs		cornua
<i>Gen.</i>	frūctuum		cornuum
<i>Dat.</i>	frūctibus		cornibus
<i>Acc.</i>	frūctūs		cornua
<i>Abl.</i>	frūctibus		cornibus

59. NOTES ON DECLENSION

1. **Domus**, *house*, and **manus**, *hand*, are exceptions in gender, being feminine.

2. **Domus** has also second declension terminations in certain cases. These will be given later.

60. FIFTH DECLENSION

Nouns of the fifth declension end in *-ēs* and are declined as follows :

	<i>Diēs, day;</i> stem, <i>diē-</i>	<i>Rēs, thing;</i> stem, <i>rē-</i>
SINGULAR		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>diēī</i>	<i>rēī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>diēī</i>	<i>rēī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>diem</i>	<i>rem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>diē</i>	<i>rē</i>
PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>rērum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rēbus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rēbus</i>

61. NOTES ON DECLENSION

1. Gender, feminine. *Diēs* is an exception, being masculine, although in the singular it is sometimes feminine.
2. Most nouns of the fifth declension are not declined in the plural. Only *diēs* and *rēs* have all forms of the plural.
3. The genitive and dative singular have the termination *-ēī* after a vowel, *-ēī* after a consonant; as, *diēī*, *rēī*.

62. EXERCISE

Decline *portus magnus, a large harbor*; *ūnum cornū, one wing*; *diēs longus, a long day*; *diēs brevis, a short day*.

63.

REVIEW OF GENDER

1. Review the gender rules of the third declension, 48.
2. Learn the following review table :

DECLENSION	NOM. ENDING	GENDER
First	-a	fem. except males.
Second	-us, -er, -ir	masc.
	-um	neuter.
Fourth	-us	masc. exc. { domus.
	-ū	neuter. { manus.
Fifth	-ēs	fem. exc. diēs.

64.

VOCABULARY

aciēs, aciēī, f., line of battle.	Germānī, ōrum, m., the Ger-
commeātus, ūs, m., provisions,	mans.
supplēs.	in, prep. gov. acc., into, toward,
cornū, ūs, n., wing (of an army) ;	against; gov. abl., in, on.
horn.	manus, ūs, f., hand; band, force.
diēs, diēī, m. or f., day.	portus, ūs, m., port, harbor.
domus, ūs, f., house, home.	rēs, rei, f., thing, affair, matter.
exercitus, ūs, m., army.	speciēs, ēī, f., sight; appearance.
ferus, a, um, wild, savage.	terra, ae, f., land, country;
fructus, ūs, m., fruit, crop.	terrā, by land; terrā marique,
	by land and sea.

65.

EXERCISES

I

1. Terrā ferācī.
2. Germānōrum sōlōrum.
3. Germānīs sōlīs.
4. Gentium ferārum.
5. Rēbus magnīs.
6. Commeātūs frūmentī.
7. Manūs hostium.
8. Manibus hostium.

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 9. Ūnūs cornūs. | 15. Ad castra. |
| 10. Speciēs fera. | 16. In Ītaliā. |
| 11. Terrā marīque. | 17. Cum virtūte. |
| 12. In portū magnō. | 18. Ūnā ex parte. |
| 13. Ā Germānis. | 19. In portum magnum. |
| 14. Ā locō. | 20. In portū oppidi. |

II

- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Of a wild appearance. | 11. For large harbors. |
| 2. Wild animals. | 12. Of a short peace. |
| 3. The fruits of the fields. | 13. By a short peace. |
| 4. Concerning many things. | 14. Large houses. |
| 5. Of many things. | 15. Of good fruits. |
| 6. A long day (obj.). | 16. Chiefs of the Germans. |
| 7. Part of the army. | 17. To wild animals. |
| 8. By a sharp battle. | 18. Suitable things. |
| 9. A short war. | 19. Of heavy weapons. |
| 10. For a large harbor. | 20. To a wretched slave. |

III

1. Militēs Rōmānī terrā marīque Germānōs oppugnant.
 2. Dux exercitūi commeātūs frūmenti dat. 3. In Galliā sunt multae gentēs et ferae. 4. Incolae Britanniae dē multis rēbus coniūrant. 5. In Ītaliā frūctūs agrōrum ferācium sunt multi. 6. Ferī Germānī ūnum cornū exercitūs oppugnant. 7. Manūs hostium sunt magnae ācrēsque. 8. In portū oppidi sunt multae nāvēs longae. 9. Dux in colle aciem collocat. 10. Principēs Germānōrum virīs dōna frūmenti dant. 11. In castra omnēs militēs vocātis. 12. Diēs proeliō idōneus est. 13. In Britannīā est domus Mārci. 14. Incrēdibilis est magnitūdō Germānōrum et speciēs fera est. 15. Proeliō ācri brevisque hostīs commūnis superāmus.

IV

1. We fight with ¹ the enemy in ² a sharp battle. 2. We give grain to the troops. 3. The Roman troops are carrying supplies into the territory of the Germans. 4. We summon the slaves from the fields. 5. The serious danger arouses all the Germans. 6. The danger of the Roman people and of the other inhabitants is great. 7. We give the Germans gifts and establish peace. 8. Many things arouse the inhabitants. 9. Are there supplies in the camp? 10. Is the harbor suitable for warships?

¹ Cf. 57, IV, 4, footnote.² Cf. III, 15.

TEMPLUM

LESSON XII

REVIEW OF NOUNS; COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

66.

EXERCISE

Study the review chart of nouns, 123.

67.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

1. Adjectives have three degrees of comparison, — positive, comparative, and superlative; as,

long, longer, longest.

2. The comparative degree of an adjective is formed by adding -ior (neuter, -ius) to the base of the positive (2, 2).

Altus, high (base, alt-); *altior, higher.*

3. The superlative degree is regularly formed by adding -issimus (-a, -um) to the base of the positive.

Felix, happy (base, felic-); *felicissimus, happiest.*

a. EXCEPTION: Adjectives ending in -er form the superlative by adding -rimus (-a, -um) to the *nominative* of the positive.

Acē, sharp; *acerrimus, sharpest.*

4. The complete comparisons are therefore as follows:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus	altior	altissimus
fēlix	fēlicior	fēlicissimu
ācer	ācrior	ācerrimus
celer	celerior	celerrimus

68. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

1. Comparative adjectives are declined as follows :

		Altior, higher		
		SINGULAR		PLURAL
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
<i>Nom.</i>	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
<i>Gen.</i>	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	altiōri	altiōri	altiōribus	altiōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs, is	altiōra
<i>Abl.</i>	altiōre, i	altiōre, i	altiōribus	altiōribus

2. Note that the terminations are those of consonant stems except the -i of the ablative singular, and -is of the accusative plural.

3. Superlative adjectives are all declined like *bonus* ; as, *altissimus*, -a, -um.

69.**EXERCISE**

1. Compare the following adjectives : *brevis*, *pulcher*, *lātus*, *tener*, *miser*, *longus*, *ferāx*, *gravis*.

2. Decline *mōns altissimus*, *the highest mountain* ; *via longior*, *a longer way*.

70.**THE PRESENT INFINITIVE**

The present infinitive active of verbs conjugated like *amō* ends in -āre :

amāre, to love

laudāre, to praise

71.**VOCABULARY**

audāx, *audāx*, gen., *audācis*, *fidēs*, *fidei*, f., *faith*, *loyalty*, *pro-*
bold, *courageous*. *tection*.

fēlix, *fēlix*, gen., *fēlicis*, *happy*, *hiemō*, *I winter*, *pass the*
fortunate. *winter*.

imperium , i, n., <i>order, command, rule.</i>	properō , <i>I hasten.</i>
litus , litoris, n., <i>beach, shore.</i>	recūsō , <i>I refuse.</i>
pācō , <i>I make peace; pacify, subdue.</i>	spērō , <i>I hope, hope for.</i>
parō , <i>I prepare, provide.</i>	subsidiū , i, n., <i>assistance.</i>
pauci , ae, a, <i>few</i> (plur. adj.).	vāllum , i, n., <i>rampart, earth-works.</i>
	victōria , ae, f., <i>victory.</i>

72.

EXERCISES

I

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Flūmine lātissimō. | 11. Puellae teneriōrēs. |
| 2. Rosae pulchriōrēs. | 12. Servīs miserrimīs. |
| 3. Tēlum gravius. | 13. Flūminis lātiōris. |
| 4. Exercitūi audācissimō. | 14. Agrō ferāciōrī. |
| 5. Diēs longissimī. | 15. Agrō ferācissimō. |
| 6. Paucōrum diērum. | 16. Periculō graviōre. |
| 7. Virōs liberrimōs. | 17. Militem audāciōrem. |
| 8. In portum altissimum. | 18. Terrae ferācissimae. |
| 9. Spērāre. | 19. Vocāre. |
| 10. Recūsāre. | 20. Comparāre. |

II

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. To the highest mountain. | 11. Of the deepest trench. |
| 2. For a heavier weapon. | 12. Into the widest harbor. |
| 3. Of a bolder soldier. | 13. By the highest rampart. |
| 4. A most beautiful house. | 14. Most fortunate men. |
| 5. By a few days. | 15. Of the quickest ship. |
| 6. Of the widest river. | 16. To a bolder soldier. |
| 7. The most serious danger. | 17. By the longest rule. |
| 8. In a most fertile garden. | 18. The sharpest battle. |
| 9. To seize. | 19. To subdue. |
| 10. To overcome. | 20. To pass the winter. |

III

1. In ūnō cornū exercitūs militēs sunt audāciōrēs.
 2. Frūctūsne agrōrum ferācium sunt multī? 3. Manūs
 hostium aciem in monte collocāre properant. 4. Audā-
 cissimae cōpiae hostium agrōs ferācissimōs et omnia oppida
 occupant. 5. Cōpiae ducem exspectant et pugnāre re-
 cūsant. 6. Dux in colle altiōre militēs collocat. 7. Ger-
 māni ferī castra oppugnāre properant. 8. Num servi
 miserrimī frūmentum parāre recūsant? 9. Populus
 Rōmānus audācissimās gentēs Germānōrum pācare prope-
 rant. 10. Speciēs Germānōrum ācerrima est. 11. Fidem
 cōpiārum laudāmus. 12. Rēs fēliciōrēs exspectāmus.
 13. Paucis victōriis Gallōs superātis. 14. Domus Mārci
 altissima in oppidō est.

IV

1. By the sharpest battle we overcome the bolder troops.
 2. Do the soldiers refuse to await the command? 3. The
 common danger is most serious. 4. We strengthen the
 camp by a higher rampart and a wider trench. 5. The
 chief places the troops on the highest hill. 6. The legion
 is the boldest and most fortunate. 7. The army hastens
 to seize the shortest road into Gaul. 8. The son-in-law
 of the bold leader is wintering in Britain. 9. We subdue
 many fierce tribes. 10. Is the queen's daughter happy?



DENARIUS

LESSON XIII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued)

73. ADJECTIVES IN *-ILIS*

Six adjectives in *-ilis* form the superlative by adding *-limus* to the base of the positive. The comparative is regular.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>facilis, easy</i>	<i>facilior</i>	<i>facillimus</i>
<i>difficilis, difficult</i>	<i>difficilior</i>	<i>difficillimus</i>
<i>humilis, low</i>	<i>humilior</i>	<i>humillimus</i>
<i>similis, like</i>	<i>similior</i>	<i>simillimus</i>
<i>dissimilis, unlike</i>	<i>dissimilior</i>	<i>dissimillimus</i>
<i>gracilis, slender</i>	<i>gracilior</i>	<i>gracillimus</i>

74. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

Some adjectives are entirely irregular in their comparison. The following are important.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>bonus, good</i>	<i>melior</i>	<i>optimus</i>
<i>malus, bad</i>	<i>pēior</i>	<i>pessimus</i>
<i>magnus, great</i>	<i>māior</i>	<i>maximus</i>
<i>parvus, small</i>	<i>minor</i>	<i>minimus</i>
<i>multus, much</i>	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrimus</i>
<i>vetus, old</i>	<i>vetustior</i>	<i>veterrimus</i>
<i>superus, high</i>	<i>superior</i>	{ <i>suprēmus</i> ¹ <i>summus</i>
<i>inferus, low</i>	<i>inferior</i>	{ <i>infimus</i> <i>imus</i>
Lacking.	<i>prior, former</i>	<i>primus, first</i>
Lacking.	<i>propior, nearer</i>	<i>proximus, nearest</i>

¹ *Suprēmus* means *last*.

75. DECLENSION OF PLŪS

Plūs, comparative of **multus**, is irregular in declension.

SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i>	—	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i>	—	—	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Acc.</i>	—	plūs	plūrēs, is	plūra
<i>Abl.</i>	—	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

76. NOTE ON DECLENSION

The stem is **plūr-**; but note the **-i** stem terminations of the genitive plural, and accusative plural masculine.

77. COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE: SPECIAL USES

1. The comparative sometimes means *rather* or *too*, and the superlative, *very*.

Via longior est, *the way is rather long.*

Mōs veterrimus, *a very ancient custom.*

2. USE OF QUAM:

a. Quam, meaning *than*, is used when two things are compared. The second of the words compared agrees in case with the first; as,

Turris altior est quam mūrus, *the tower is higher than the wall.*

b. Quam, with the superlative, denotes the greatest possible degree. It is translated by *as . . . as possible*.

Quam maximus numerus, *as great a number as possible.*

78.

VOCABULARY

As a part of this vocabulary learn the meanings of all the new adjectives in 73, 74.

equitātus, ūs, m., *cavalry*.

pedes, peditis, m., *foot soldier*;

mōs, mōris, m., *custom*.

pl., *infantry*.

quam, than (conj.).

79.

EXERCISES

I

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Victōriā priōre. | 11. Plūribus. |
| 2. Armōrum meliōrum. | 12. Plūra proelia. |
| 3. Summus ¹ mōns. | 13. Plūrimī incolae. |
| 4. Diēi suprēmī. | 14. Locus superior. |
| 5. Viā facillimā. | 15. Ducis pessimī. |
| 6. Dōnum māius. | 16. Militem pēiōrem. |
| 7. Litoris propiōris. | 17. Proeliō facili. |
| 8. Servus humillimus. | 18. Mōre vetustiōre. |
| 9. Rērum similium. | 19. Pueris gracilibus. |
| 10. Rēbus dissimilibus. | 20. Locus veterrimus. |

II

- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. In a higher place. | 11. On the highest wall. |
| 2. A more difficult plan. | 12. Of better aid. |
| 3. Bolder infantry. | 13. For less aid. |
| 4. Happier children. | 14. More soldiers. |
| 5. Of the smaller camp. | 15. By more soldiers. |
| 6. Of greatest loyalty. | 16. To a worse leader. |
| 7. Of a larger gift. | 17. Of the nearest land. |
| 8. For the best ships. | 18. The smallest part. |
| 9. By a very ancient rule. | 19. The largest ships. |
| 10. By a rather long way. | 20. Very many ships. |

¹ Summus means the highest part of.

III

1. Populus Rōmānus equitēs bonōs et meliōrēs peditēs habet. 2. In castris māiōribus sunt paucae legiōnēs. 3. Puellae meliōrēs sunt quam pueri. 4. Dux quam plūrimās cōpiās in summō colle collocāre properat. 5. Mārcus, optimus dux, bellō brevissimō Germānōs pācāre spērat. 6. Equitātus in Britannīā hiemāre recūsāt. 7. Fossa lātiōr est quam vāllum. 8. Germānī quam maximōs commeātūs parant. 9. Rōmānī optimōs Galliae agrōs¹ vāstant. 10. Oppidum propius flūminī est quam colli. 11. Principēs maximam cōpiārum fidem laudant. 12. In propiōre flūminis litore ūnam cohortem collocāmus. 13. Gentēs fēlicissimae optimōs agrōs habent. 14. Peditēs equitātui subsidium dant.

IV

1. The plan is very difficult and the risk very great. 2. The cavalry are worse than the infantry. 3. The chief praises the former victory of the troops. 4. The oldest customs are not the best. 5. The town is rather small. 6. He places the largest possible number of troops in the nearer camp. 7. I establish peace with the nearest tribes. 8. The danger is very small. 9. He stations one legion in the lower place. 10. The wall is higher than the rampart.

¹Optimōs Galliae agrōs = optimōs agrōs Galliae; this order is very common.

LESSON XIV

REVIEW OF ADJECTIVES; FORMATION OF ADVERBS

80. EXERCISE

Study the review chart of adjectives, 129.

81. FORMATION OF ADVERBS

Adverbs are regularly formed from adjectives, as follows :

1. To form an adverb from an adjective of the first and second declension, add **-ē** to the base of the adjective.

ADJECTIVE	BASE	ADVERB
cārus , <i>dear</i>	cār-	cārē , <i>dearly</i>
pulcher , <i>beautiful</i>	pulchr-	pulchrē , <i>beautifully</i>

2. To form an adverb from an adjective of the third declension, add **-iter** to the base of the adjective.

ADJECTIVE	BASE	ADVERB
ācer , <i>sharp</i>	ācr-	ācriter , <i>sharply</i>
fortis , <i>strong</i>	fort-	fortiter , <i>strongly</i>

EXCEPTION : Adjectives in **-ns** add **-er** to the base to form the adverb ; as, **prūdentē**, from **prūdēns**, *wise*.

82. EXERCISE

1. Form adverbs from the following adjectives : **miser**, **lātus**, **altus**, **liber**, **brevis**, **celer**, **gravis**, **fēlix**.

2. Give the English meaning of the adverbs you have formed, and learn them.

83.

VOCABULARY

<i>cārus</i> , a, um, <i>dear</i> ; adv. <i>cārē</i> , <i>dearly</i> .	<i>iter</i> , <i>itineris</i> , n., <i>march, journey</i> ; <i>road</i> .
<i>carrus</i> , i, m., <i>cart, wagon</i> .	<i>longē</i> , adv. (from <i>longus</i>), <i>far, far off</i> .
<i>condiciō</i> , <i>condiciōnis</i> , f., <i>condition, terms</i> .	<i>nūntiō</i> , <i>I report, announce</i> .
<i>dēditiō</i> , <i>dēditiōnis</i> , f., <i>surrender</i> .	<i>prūdēns</i> , <i>prūdēns</i> ; gen. <i>prūdētis</i> , <i>wise, prudent</i> ; adv. <i>prūdenter</i> , <i>wisely</i> .
<i>fortis</i> , <i>forte</i> , <i>strong, brave</i> ; adv. <i>fortiter</i> , <i>strongly, bravely</i> .	<i>socius</i> , i, m., <i>ally, companion</i> .
<i>Helvētīi</i> , <i>ōrum</i> , m. pl., <i>the Helvetians</i> .	<i>vicus</i> , i, m., <i>village</i> .
<i>impetus</i> , <i>ūs</i> , m., <i>attack, assault</i> .	<i>vulnerō</i> , <i>I wound</i> .

84.

EXERCISES

I

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Miserē. | 11. Cārē. |
| 2. Longē. | 12. Fortiter. |
| 3. Celeriter. | 13. Liberē. |
| 4. Lātē. | 14. Fēliciter. |
| 5. Breviter. | 15. Ācriter. |
| 6. Impetus difficilis. | 16. Puellae gracili. |
| 7. Mōrēs priōrēs. | 17. Mōribus similibus. |
| 8. Itinera mala. | 18. Mōrum dissimilium. |
| 9. Socii propiōrēs. | 19. Peditēs equitēsque. |
| 10. Viā facili. | 20. Ad collem inferiōrem. |

II

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Beautifully. | 8. The lower line of battle. |
| 2. Wisely. | 9. Of smaller villages. |
| 3. Far. | 10. O! dear fatherland! |
| 4. Quickly. | 11. Fortunately. |
| 5. High (adv.). | 12. Sharply. |
| 6. Humble slaves. | 13. Wretchedly. |
| 7. In a high place. | 14. Briefly. |

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 15. Heavily. | 18. Of brave soldiers. |
| 16. For better conditions. | 19. A difficult road. |
| 17. A number of carts. | 20. Of a swift legion. |

III

1. *Helvētīi quam maximum numerum carrōrum celeriter comparant.* 2. *Germānī oppida vicōsque Rōmānōrum fortiter oppugnant.* 3. *Helvētīi sociis frūmentum et aliōs commeātūs liberē dant.* 4. *Galli finēs hostium lātē vās-tant.* 5. *Incolae auxilium cōpiārum Rōmānārum exspec-tant et ācrit̄er pugnant.* 6. *Dux virtūtem militum breviter laudat.* 7. *Socii Rōmānis impetum celeriter nūntiant.* 8. *Maxima oppida Britanniae ab Ītaliā longē sunt.* 9. *Galba ūnum militem graviter vulnerat.* 10. *Socii populō Rōmānō cārī sunt.* 11. *Nōnne hostēs meliōrēs dēditiōnis condiōnēs expectant?* 12. *Cōpiaē hostium nōn fortiōrēs quam Rōmānī sunt.* 13. *Fortēs Helvētiōrum gentēs socii Rōmānōrum sunt, et proximae sunt.* 14. *Vir prūdēns omni periculō¹ subsidium parat.*

IV

1. The soldiers fight bravely in a very difficult place. 2. The Romans fortunately overcome the enemy, and quickly seize the camp. 3. We wisely strengthen the larger camp with a wall and a trench. 4. The victory arouses the allies far and wide.² 5. They freely give assistance to all the inhabitants. 6. I report the matter briefly to the leader. 7. The slaves carry the grain far. 8. The enemy seize the shortest road into Gaul. 9. The villages of Britain are very small. 10. The inhabitants are preparing the largest possible ships.

¹ Dative.

² *longē lātēque.*

LESSON XV

REVIEW OF ADJECTIVES; COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

85.

EXERCISE

Review the comparison of adjectives in Lessons XII and XIII.

86.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

1. Adverbs, like adjectives, have three degrees of comparison.
2. To form the comparative of an adverb change **-or** of the comparative of the adjective to **-us**.

ADJECTIVE

ADVERB

fortior

fortius, *more bravely*

3. To form the superlative of an adverb add **-ē** to the base of the superlative of the adjective.

ADJECTIVE

ADVERB

celerrimus

celerrimē, *most quickly*

4. Thus the complete comparison of adverbs is as follows:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
fortiter , <i>bravely</i>	fortius	fortissimē
pulchrē , <i>beautifully</i>	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
celeriter , <i>quickly</i>	celerius	celerrimē

NOTE. Observe carefully that each degree of the adverb is formed from the *corresponding degree* of the adjective.

Review of Adjectives; Comparison of Adverbs 67

87.

EXERCISE

Compare the adverbs formed in 82.

88. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

1. Some adverbs are irregular in formation and comparison. The following are important :

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bene, <i>well</i>	melius	optimē
male, <i>ill</i>	pēius	pessimē
multum, <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimum
magnopere, <i>greatly</i>	magis ¹	maximē ¹
parum, <i>little</i>	minus	minimē
prope, <i>near</i>	propius	proximē ²
diū, <i>a long time</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
facile, <i>easily</i>	facilius	facillimē
audācter, <i>boldly</i>	audācius	audācissimē
saepe, <i>often</i>	saepius	saeppissimē

2. Give the English meanings of the comparative and superlative of the above adverbs.

89.

VOCABULARY

As a part of this vocabulary learn the meanings of the adverbs in 88.

armō, *I arm.*

cīvitās, cīvitātis, f., *state; citizenship.*

gladius, i, m., *sword.*

pāgus, i, m., *division, district, canton.*

per, prep. gov. acc., *through, over, by means of, on account of.*

pilum, i, n., *javelin.*

propter, prep. gov. acc., *on account of.*

quattuor, *four* (indeclinable).

¹ *Magis, more greatly, more; maximē, most greatly, most.* Some adjectives are compared only by using these adverbs: *idōneus, magis idōneus, maximē idōneus, suitable, more suitable, most suitable.*

² *Recently, last.*

90.

EXERCISES

I

- | | |
|--------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Pēius. | 11. Saepe. |
| 2. Plūrimum. | 12. Multum. |
| 3. Melius. | 13. Magnopere incitāre. |
| 4. Bene. | 14. Longius ā vicō. |
| 5. Optimē. | 15. Minus saepe. |
| 6. Plūs. | 16. Minimē saepe. |
| 7. Magis. | 17. Facile superāre. |
| 8. Maximē. | 18. Melius armāre. |
| 9. Proximē. | 19. Locus magis idōneus. |
| 10. Diūtius. | 20. Locus maximē idōneus. |

II

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. More easily. | 11. More greatly, more. |
| 2. Most quickly. | 12. Most greatly, most. |
| 3. Worst. | 13. Of a more suitable place. |
| 4. Best. | 14. In a most suitable place. |
| 5. For the longest time. | 15. Little. |
| 6. Nearer. | 16. Less. |
| 7. Much. | 17. Least. |
| 8. More. | 18. Less bravely. |
| 9. Most. | 19. Least quickly. |
| 10. Greatly. | 20. More sharply. |

III

1. Militēs fortēs magnum hostium oppidum audācter oppugnant. 2. Bene et fortiter pugnāre saepe est virtūs. 3. Propter periculum pilōrum, cōpiae castra hostium minus facile occupant. 4. Hostēs carrōs propius castra¹ collocāre properant. 5. Num Helvētīi meliōrēs pācis con-

¹ Acc., after *propius*, as a preposition; "*nearer the camp*."

diciōnēs diūtius exspectant? 6. Sine auxiliō equitum militēs nōn bene pugnant. 7. Socii Rōmānīs multa pericula nūntiant et ducēs magnopere incitant. 8. Tempus proeliō idōneum est et Germānī audācissimē pugnant. 9. Principēs Gallōrum gladiis pilisque omnēs gentēs armant. 10. Helvētīi liberōs, et¹ puerōs et¹ puellās, in carris celerrimē collocant. 11. Propter magnitudinem corporis Germānōrum, legiō Rōmāna minus fortiter pugnat. 12. Virō prūdenti virtūs saepe est cārissima.

IV

1. Galba wisely strengthens the camp with a rampart. 2. They await the attack of the enemy a long time. 3. The customs of the Gauls are less ancient than (those) of the Germans. 4. The army lays waste the fields of the farmers far and wide. 5. The nearest road into Gaul is through the mountains, and it is the least difficult. 6. The slaves very quickly carry the grain from the fields into the village. 7. Serious dangers greatly annoy the best allies of the state. 8. The soldier easily wounds the farmer with a javelin. 9. There are four divisions of the state of the Helvetians. 10. Infantry are often braver than cavalry.

¹ Et . . . et, both . . . and.



TEMPLUM JOVIS CAPITOLINI

LESSON XVI

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

91. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

The personal pronouns are *ego, I; tū, thou, you*; and *is*,¹ *ea*, *id, he, she, it*; pl., *they*. They are declined as follows:

		Ego, I		Tū, thou, you	
		SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>		ego	nōs	tū	vōs
<i>Gen.</i>		meī	{ nostrum nostrī	tuī	{ vestrum vestrī
<i>Dat.</i>		mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
<i>Acc.</i>		mē	nōs	tē	vōs
<i>Abl.</i>		mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

	Is, <i>he</i>			Ea, <i>she</i>		Id, <i>it</i>	
	SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea	
<i>Gen.</i>	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea	
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	

¹ *Is* is strictly a demonstrative pronoun (see 106). The personal pronoun of the third person is lacking in Latin. Its place is supplied by *is*, which is therefore given here for convenience.

92. NOTE ON DECLENSION

Pronouns, except *tū*, and the possessives (98), lack the vocative.

93. USE OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS

The personal pronouns, when subject of the sentence, are not expressed except for the purpose of emphasis or clearness; as,

Amat, he loves.

Ego eum laudō, I praise him. (It is I who praise him.)

94. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

1. A reflexive pronoun is one that refers to the subject of the sentence or clause in which it stands; as

He praises himself.

2. The *oblique*¹ cases of *ego* and *tū* are used as the reflexive pronouns of the first and second persons. The reflexive of the third person is *sui*. It is declined as follows:

Gen. *sui*,² *of himself, herself, itself; pl., of themselves.*

Dat. *sibi*

Acc. *sē, sēsē*

Abl. *sē, sēsē*

95. USE OF THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

The following examples illustrate the use of the reflexive pronouns:

Mē laudō, I praise myself.

Nōs laudāmus, we praise ourselves.

Tē laudās, you praise yourself.

Sē laudat, he praises himself.

Sē laudant, they praise themselves.

¹ The oblique cases are the *gen.*, *dat.*, *acc.*, and *abl.*

² Used for all genders and both numbers.

Great care should be used in rendering English personals of the third person into Latin. *Is* is never reflexive, *sui* always is.

Puer eum laudat, the boy praises him (another, not himself).

Puer sē laudat, the boy praises himself.

96.

VOCABULARY

appropinquō, I approach.

Caesar, Caesaris, m., Caesar.

ego, I.

expugnō, I capture, take by storm.

impedimentum, i, n., hindrance; pl., baggage.

inter, prep. gov. acc., between, among; inter sē, among themselves, i.e. to, with each other.

is, ea, id, he, she, it; pl., they.

negōtium, i, n., business, task, difficulty.

obses, obsidis, m., hostage.

Orgetorix, Orgetorigis, m., Orgetorix, a noble, leader of the Helvetians.

post, prep. gov. acc., after, behind.

praemium, i, n., reward.

sui, of himself, herself, itself; pl., of themselves.

tamen, nevertheless, however (conj.).

timor, timōris, m., fear.

tū, thou, you.

97.

EXERCISES

I

1. Nostrum.

2. Sibi.

3. Sē.

4. Meī.

5. Eīus.

6. Eōrum.

7. Tibi.

8. Iis.

9. Eis.

10. Eae.

11. Mē laudō.

12. Mē laudās.

13. Tē laudat.

14. Tē laudās.

15. Eum laudant.

16. Sē laudat.

17. Eōs laudāmus.

18. Sē laudant.

19. Eōs armātis.

20. Vōs armātis.

II

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. To them. | 11. You call me. |
| 2. To themselves. | 12. I arm myself. |
| 3. Of me. | 13. I arouse you. |
| 4. I. | 14. You arouse yourself. |
| 5. Of myself. | 15. You praise us. |
| 6. By you. | 16. We praise ourselves. |
| 7. Yourselves. | 17. I call him. |
| 8. Of you. | 18. He calls them. |
| 9. Of them. | 19. He arms himself. |
| 10. Him. | 20. They arm themselves. |

III

1. Cīvēs ūnūs pāgī gladiis pilisque sē armant. 2. Vōs nōbīs rem nūntiātis et ego eam Caesari nūntiō. 3. Caesar mihi negōtium dat. 4. Propter timōrem dē bellō inter sē coniūrant. 5. Mē ad tē vocās. 6. Caesar eis praemia dat, et eōs maximē laudat. 7. Orgetorix quattuor obsidēs habet et eōs post castra collocat. 8. Ego tē laudō et tū mē laudās. 9. Caesar tamen oppidum expugnat et id occupat. 10. Ego in aliā¹ cohorte sum, tū in aliā.¹

IV

1. Many men praise themselves. 2. The soldiers fight well and the leader praises them. 3. The Helvetians carry the baggage into one place and place it² behind the wagons. 4. The chief praises the men and gives great rewards to them. 5. The soldiers arm themselves quickly. 6. The enemy approach nearer and prepare themselves for³ battle. 7. The great danger arouses me, and I fight long and courageously.⁴ 8. Does the matter annoy you? 9. You⁵ hope for victory, I⁵ expect it.

¹ Aliā . . . aliā, one . . . another.

⁴ boldly.

² Neuter plural.

⁵ Emphatic.

³ ad.

LESSON XVII

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS; THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

98. THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

The possessive pronouns are really adjectives of the first and second declensions. Each possessive is derived from the corresponding personal, thus :

POSSESSIVE		DERIVED FROM
	<i>First Person</i>	
meus, a, um, my, mine		ego (meī)
noster, tra, trum, our, ours		nōs
	<i>Second Person</i>	
tuus, a, um, thy, thine, your, yours		tū
vester, tra, trum, your, yours		vōs
	<i>Third Person</i>	
suus, a, um, his, her, its, their		suī

99. NOTES ON DECLENSION

Noster and **vester** are declined like **pulcher**. The others are like **bonus**, except that **meus** has **mī** in the vocative singular masculine.

100. USE OF POSSESSIVES

1. The possessive (like any adjective) agrees with the noun which it limits.

Hortus meus, my garden.

Filia tua, your daughter.

Castra sua, his camp.

Possessive Pronouns; The Intensive Pronoun 75

2. The possessive may be omitted if the meaning is clear without it.

Vir filium amat, *the man loves (his) son.*

Vir filium meum amat, *the man loves my son.*

3. **Suus**, like the personal **sui**, is reflexive only. When the possessive *his, her, its, their* is not reflexive, the genitive of **is, ea, id** is used.

Filius eius, *his son (the son of him).*

Hortus eorum, *their garden (the garden of them).*

Note carefully the possessives in the following examples, the first being reflexive and the second non-reflexive :

Vir filium suum laudat, *the man praises his (own) son.*

Vir filium eius laudat, *the man praises his (another's, not his own) son.*

101. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

The intensive pronoun is **ipse**, *self, very*. It is declined as follows :

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsos	ipsas	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

102. USE OF THE INTENSIVE

The intensive is frequently used as an adjective. It is translated in such a way as to give emphasis.

Ego ipse, I myself.

Ipse vocat, he himself is calling.

Servus ipse, the very slave.

103. EXERCISE

Decline *patria mea*,¹ *my country*; *vir ipse*,¹ *the man himself*; *dōnum vestrum*,¹ *your gift*.

104. VOCABULARY

captivus, i, m., *captive*.

imperātor, *imperātōris*, m., *general, commander*.

ipse, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, *self, very*.

lēgātus, i, m., *lieutenant, envoy*.

liber, *libri*, m., *book*.

meus, a, um, *my, mine*.

nātiō, *nātiōnis*, f., *nation*.

noster, *tra*, *trum*, *our, ours*.

officium, i, n., *duty*.

scūtum, i, n., *shield*.

sed, *but* (conj.).

suus, a, um, *his, her, its, their*.

tempestās, *tempestātis*, f., *weather, storm, tempest*.

tuus, a, um, *thy, thine, your, yours* (sing.).²

vester, *tra*, *trum*, *your, yours* (pl.).³

105.

EXERCISES

I

1. *Servō ipsī.*

2. *Librōs meōs.*

3. *Officium vestrum.*

4. *Ipse lēgātus.*

5. *Lēgātis ipsīs.*

6. *Imperātor tuus.*

7. *Exercitum nostrum.*

8. *Cōpiaē suae.*

9. *Cōpiaē eius.*

10. *Cōpiaē eōrūm.*

11. *Captivōrūm eiūs.*

12. *Captivīs suīs.*

¹ Possessives usually follow the noun limited. **Ipse** either follows or precedes.

² Referring to one person.

³ Referring to more than one person.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 13. Filiam meam laudās. | 17. Militēs suōs laudat. |
| 14. Filium meum laudō. | 18. Militēs eius laudās. |
| 15. Servōs nostrōs vocāmus. | 19. Militēs suōs laudant. |
| 16. Servōs nostrōs vocant. | 20. Militēs eōrum laudō. |

II

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. To the boy himself. | 11. Of our commander. |
| 2. The very island. | 12. For your leaders. |
| 3. Of my country. | 13. I carry my books. |
| 4. To your troops. | 14. You carry my books. |
| 5. Of thy duty. | 15. You love her daughter. |
| 6. Of his shield. ¹ | 16. She loves her daughter. |
| 7. Her roses. ¹ | 17. I arm their troops. |
| 8. Their captive. ¹ | 18. They arm their troops. |
| 9. Their books. ¹ | 19. He summons his troops. |
| 10. Of his troops. ¹ | 20. We summon his slaves. |

III

1. Lēgāti inter sē coniūrant et imperātōrem suum oppugnant. 2. Dux noster nōs laudat et nōbīs praemia dat; sed vōs nōn laudat. 3. Pueri puellaeque librōs suōs portant. 4. Princeps Germānōrum duci nostrō obsidēs dat. 5. Servi vestri in vicō sunt. 6. Filius meus in Caesaris exercitū est. 7. Tempestās nāvibus eōrum nōn idōnea est. 8. Impedimenta vestra in castris māiōribus sunt. 9. Socii nostri Gallōs oppugnant et castra eōrum occupant. 10. Princeps ipse pācem cōfirmāre recūsāt. 11. Ego ipse tē vocō. 12. Officium tuum, fili mī, est patriam amāre. 13. Post breve tempus Helvētīi comēātūs suōs comparant et cōpiās nostrās oppugnāre properant. 14. Caesar tamen suōs² armat et propius appropinquat. 15. Lēgātus ipse imperātōri suō rem nūntiat.

¹ Render in two ways.

² Suōs = *his (men)*.

IV

1. The captives themselves report the number of the enemy. 2. My soldiers easily capture the whole town. 3. By the aid of their allies the chiefs of Gaul overcome one legion without difficulty. 4. The farmers are calling their slaves from the fields. 5. He is the very man. 6. The Germans arm themselves with our swords and shields. 7. The inhabitants are savage, but they are our allies. 8. The Germans are very brave, and many nations have the greatest fear of them. 9. Is their commander summoning you? 10. Marcus is your son-in-law, is he not?



MENSIS IANUAR	MENSIS FEBRUA	MENSIS MARTIUS
DIES-XXX	DIES-XXVIII	DIES-XXXI
NONQVINT	NONQVINT	NONSEPTIMAN
DIES-HOR-VI	DIES-HOR-XS	DIES-HOR-XII
NOX-HOR-XXV	NOX-HOR-XIII	NOX-HOR-XXI
SOL	SOL-AD-PIA	AD-NOCT-PI
CAPICORNO	TVTET-NEPTV	VII KAL-APR
TVTETLA	SEGETES	SOL-PI-ABVS
IVNONIS	SAR-IVNTVR	TVTET-MINERV
PALVS	VINEARVM	NOCE-PEDAMIN
AD-IVTV	SUPERFIC-COLIT	IMPASTING
SALIN	HARVINOIS	PUTANTVR
HARVINO	INCENDVNT	TUMETISCVTV
CEDITVR	PARENTALIA	INSIGNAVHQM
SACRIFICAN	LVPERCALIA	SAGR-MANVRIS
DIES	CAN-CCGNATO	LIBER-MAQVINE
PERNATIVS	TERMINALIS	TRIA-LAVATO

KALENDAE AGRICOLAE

LESSON XVIII

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

106. The demonstrative pronouns are *hic*, *iste*, *ille*, *is*, *idem*. They are declined as follows :

Hic, this

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hōc
<i>Gen.</i>	hūius	hūius	hūius
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hōc
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc

PLURAL

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs

Iste, that, that of yours

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	iste	ista	istud
<i>Gen.</i>	istius	istius	istius
<i>Dat.</i>	istī	istī	istī
<i>Acc.</i>	istum	istam	istud
<i>Abl.</i>	istō	istā	istō

PLURAL

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	istī	istae	ista
<i>Gen.</i>	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	istīs	istīs	istīs
<i>Acc.</i>	istōs	istās	ista
<i>Abl.</i>	istīs	istīs	istīs

Ille, that, that one.

Ille is declined like *iste*.

Is, that, this.

For declension see 91.

Īdem, the same

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	īdem	eadem	īdem
<i>Gen.</i>	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem
<i>Dat.</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem	eandem	īdem
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	{ eīdem iīdem	eaedem	eadem
<i>Gen.</i>	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>	{ eīdem iīdem	{ eīdem iīdem	{ eīdem iīdem
<i>Acc.</i>	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Abl.</i>	{ eīdem iīdem	{ eīdem iīdem	{ eīdem iīdem

107. NOTE ON DECLENSION

Īdem may have *idem* in the nominative plural and *isdem* in the dative and ablative plural.

108. USE OF THE DEMONSTRATIVES

1. *Hic*, *iste*, and *ille* are known, from their meanings, as demonstratives of the first, second, and third persons; as,

Hic liber, this book (near me, here).

Iste liber, that book (near you, there).

Ille liber, that book (near him, yonder).

2. *Hic* and *ille* are often used together to show a contrast. *Hic* may then mean *the latter*, and *ille*, *the former*; as,

Hic Rōmānus, ille Gallus est, the latter is a Roman, the former, a Gaul.

3. *Ille* may mean *that famous, that well-known*; as,

Bellum illud, that famous war.

4. The demonstrative *is* is frequently used in place of the personal pronoun of the third person, which is lacking in Latin (see 91). The two uses should be carefully distinguished.

DEMONSTRATIVE: *Is vir, that man.*

PERSONAL: *Eum laudō, I praise him.*

5. All the demonstratives may be used as adjectives, and when so used precede the noun limited; but *ille*, in the use mentioned in 3, usually follows the noun.

109. EXERCISE

Decline *ille imperātor, that general*; *idem exercitus, the same army*; *ea rēgīna, that queen*; *hōc bellum, this war*.

110.

VOCABULARY

angustiae, ārum, f. pl., <i>narrow pass.</i>	is, ea, id, <i>that, this</i> ; pl., <i>those, these.</i>
atque (ac), <i>and</i> (conj.).	iste, ista, istud, <i>that (of yours)</i> ;
contrā, prep. gov. acc., <i>against, opposite.</i>	pl., <i>those.</i>
crēber, bra, brum, <i>frequent.</i>	libertās, libertātis, f., <i>liberty.</i>
cupidus, a, um, <i>eager, desirous.</i>	occāsiō, occāsiōnis, f., <i>opportunity.</i>
hīc, haec, hōc, <i>this</i> ; pl., <i>these.</i>	quinque, <i>five</i> (indeclinable).
idem, eadem, idem, <i>the same.</i>	rūrsus, <i>again</i> (adv.).
ille, illa, illud, <i>that</i> ; pl., <i>those.</i>	spēs, speī, f., <i>hope.</i>

111.

EXERCISES

I

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Hūius. | 11. Hōc scūtō. |
| 2. Illi. | 12. Istō scūtō. |
| 3. Eōdem. | 13. Illō scūtō. |
| 4. Eidem condiōnī. | 14. Speī ipsius. |
| 5. Eis captivīs. | 15. Hūius offici. |
| 6. Illius imperātōris. | 16. Illae prōvinciae. |
| 7. Ea negōtia. | 17. Hāc occāsiōne. |
| 8. Iisdem exercitibus. | 18. Id vāllum. |
| 9. Natiōēs ipsae. | 19. Eiusdem captivī. |
| 10. In eis angustiis. | 20. Hae occāsiōēs. |

II

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Of these. | 8. Of the same armies. |
| 2. To those. | 9. Of that storm. |
| 3. For the same things. | 10. These opportunities. |
| 4. To those famous queens. | 11. By those duties. |
| 5. For the same conditions. | 12. This field. |
| 6. To these envoys. | 13. That field. |
| 7. For those dangers. | 14. That field of yours. |

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 15. To that nation. | 18. Against these men. |
| 16. To that very nation. | 19. Of liberty itself. |
| 17. Of the same hope. | 20. That island. |

III

1. Spēs libertātis illis captīvīs cārissima est. 2. Exercitus noster commeātūs suōs per angustiās montium portat. 3. Nostri¹ haec¹ portant. 4. Eaedem nātiōnēs oppida vestra oppugnant. 5. Militēs ipsī id oppidum expugnant. 6. Omnium ducum, hīc imperātor est fortissimus. 7. Haec occāsiō idōnea est atque cōpiaē oppidum illud terrā marīque oppugnant. 8. Eī sociī Rōmānis crēbra proelia nūntiant. 9. Hae gentēs sunt cupidae belli. 10. Hic imperātor bonus, ille malus est. 11. Incolae sine timōre periculī imperātōrī haec nūntiant. 12. Liberī mei multa dōna spērant. 13. Quinque legiōnēs contrā ducem suum coniūrant et eum oppugnant.

IV

1. The same envoy reports these conditions to the enemy. 2. That is the duty of all good citizens. 3. The enemy strengthen their camp, but the legions easily capture it. 4. Those nations love their liberty very dearly. 5. This road is the shortest, but the most difficult. 6. This book is suitable for your children. 7. The latter custom is the better, the former, the more ancient. 8. The inhabitants have great fear of that famous commander. 9. This man loves his children. 10. The weather is again suitable for those ships.

¹ Adjectives and possessive or demonstrative pronouns are often used in this way in the plural. The masculine denotes persons, the neuter things; as, *nostri*, *our (men)*; *haec*, *these (things)*.

LESSON XIX

RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

112. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

The relative pronoun is **quī**, *who, which, what, that*. It is declined as follows :

SINGULAR			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius	cūius	cūius
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō
PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus

113. USE OF THE RELATIVE

1. The relative pronoun is so called because it refers or *relates* to a preceding noun or pronoun for which it stands. This preceding noun or pronoun is called the antecedent of the relative. In the sentence "I have a book which belongs to you," *which* is the relative pronoun, and *book* is the antecedent.

2. RULE: *A relative pronoun agrees in gender and number with its antecedent, but its case depends on the way it is used in the sentence.*

Imperātor militēs vocat quī in castris sunt, *the commander summons the soldiers who are in the camp.*

Here **quī** is masculine plural to agree with its antecedent **militēs**; but, while **militēs** is accusative, object of **vocat**, **quī** is nominative, subject of **sunt**.

114. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

The interrogative pronouns are **quis**, *who? which? what?* (substantive), and **quī**, *what? what kind of?* (adjective). **Qui** is declined like the relative, and **quis** is declined as follows:

SINGULAR		
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quid
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius	cūius
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quō

PLURAL

Declined like the relative **quī**.

115. USE OF THE INTERROGATIVES

Distinguish carefully **quis**, the substantive, and **quī**, the adjective. Examples are the following:

SUBSTANTIVE:

Quis oppidum oppugnat, *who is attacking the town?*

Quid nūntiās, *what do you announce?*

ADJECTIVE:

Quī dux oppidum oppugnat, *what leader is attacking the town?*

Quae rēgīna est in oppidō, *what queen is in the town?*

Quod proelium nūntiās, *what battle do you announce?*

116.

VOCABULARY

adventus, ūs, m., *arrival, approach.*

ante, prep. gov. acc., *before.*

auxilia, ōrum, n. pl., *auxiliary troops.*

Belgae, ārum, m. pl., *the Belgians.*

finitimus, a, um, *neighboring, adjoining.*

hiberna, ōrum, n. pl., *winter quarters.*

occāsus, ūs, m., *setting (of the sun).*

paene, almost, nearly (adv.).

paulātim, gradually, little by little (adv.).

perturbō, I confuse, disturb.

qui, quae, quod, who, which, what, that (rel. pron.).

qui, quae, quod, what? what kind of? (interrog. adj.).

quis, quid, who? which? what? (interrog. pron.).

repentinus, a, um, sudden.

senātus, ūs, m., senate.

sōl, sōlis, m., sun.

117.

EXERCISES

I

1. Quōrum.

2. Quā.

3. Quibus.

4. Quōs.

5. Cūius.

6. Quō.

7. Quae.

8. Quās.

9. Quī agricola?

10. Quis?

11. Quem servum?

12. Quōrum cōsiliōrum?

13. Quod oppidum?

14. Qui captīvus?

15. Cūius¹ frūmentum?

16. Quōrum¹ frūmentum?

II

1. Whom (masc.).

2. Whom (fem.).

3. Who (fem.).

4. Of whom (sing.).

5. Whose (sing.).

6. Whose (pl.).

7. Of whom (pl.).

8. For which (pl.).

9. Of what town?

10. What place?

11. What javelin?

12. What winter quarters?

13. Of what island?

14. By whose aid?

15. For which legion?

16. Which man?

¹ Of whom, i.e. whose?

III

1. Nōne hī sunt idem militēs quī oppidum oppugnant?
2. Belgae proximī sunt Germānīs, quibuscum¹ saepe pugnant.
3. Repentinus Caesaris adventus Gallōs, quī in angustiis sunt, magnopere perturbat.
4. Quīnque cohortēs Helvētiōs rūrsus oppugnant, quōrum² castra in colle finitimō sunt.
5. Quis senātui illud proelium nūntiat?
6. Senātus cum Gallis, quōs paulātim superāmus, pācem nōn cōfirmat.
7. Caesar in hibernis cōpiās suās, quae in Galliā sunt, collocat.
8. Quī imperātōr contrā eōs fortissimē pugnat?
9. Caesar adventum militum quī subsidium comparant ante sōlis occāsum exspectat.
10. Quod oppidum ista auxilia occupant?
11. Spēs libertātis Helvētiōs, quī sunt fortissimī, incitat.
12. Quid captīvī spērant?
13. Cūius filius es tū?
14. Quōrum librī hī sunt?
15. Impetū ācrī hostēs paene superāmus.

IV

1. This is an opportunity which a boy does not often have.
2. The Romans gradually overcome the enemy, and seize the camp which is near the river.
3. These soldiers, who are very brave, hope for frequent battles.
4. Who stations the line of battle in that place?
5. The Gauls are a nation which is desirous of liberty.
6. There are many ancient customs which we do not praise.
7. Whose children are in your garden?
8. Are these the same boys to whom you often give rewards?
9. What are you awaiting?
10. What commander summons these soldiers, and what aid does he await?

¹ *Quibuscum*: always written for *cum quibus*.

² *Quōrum*: see I, 15, 16, footnote.

LESSON XX

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

118. Among the most important indefinite pronouns are **quisquam**, **aliquis**, **quisque**, and **quidam**. They are declined as follows :

Quisquam, *any one (at all)*

SINGULAR		
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	quisquam	quidquam
<i>Gen.</i>	cūiusquam	cūiusquam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuiquam	cuiquam
<i>Acc.</i>	quemquam	quidquam
<i>Abl.</i>	quōquam	quōquam

Quisquam has no plural.

Aliquis, *some one, some*

SINGULAR			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquis (aliquī)	aliqua	aliquid (aliquod)
<i>Gen.</i>	alicūius	alicūius	alicūius
<i>Dat.</i>	alicui	alicui	alicui
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (aliquod)
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
<i>Gen.</i>	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

Quisque, each, every

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	quisque	quaeque	quidque (quodque)
<i>Gen.</i>	cūiusque	cūiusque	cūiusque
<i>Dat.</i>	cuique	cuique	cuique
<i>Acc.</i>	quemque	quamque	quidque (quodque)
<i>Abl.</i>	quōque	quāque	quōque

PLURAL

Like *quī*, with the suffix *-que*.

Quīdam, certain

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)
<i>Gen.</i>	cūiusdam	cūiusdam	cūiusdam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
<i>Acc.</i>	quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)
<i>Abl.</i>	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
<i>Dat.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
<i>Acc.</i>	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
<i>Abl.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

119. USE OF THE INDEFINITES

1. The indefinites, except *quisquam*, may be used as substantives or adjectives. *Quisquam* is substantive only.

2. Where double forms occur in the paradigms, the first is substantive, the second, adjective. The pupil should be careful to distinguish them. Examples are the following:

Aliquis, *any one.*

Aliqui dux, *any leader.*

Quidque est bonum, *each is good.*

Quodque cōsiliū est bonum, *each plan is good.*

3. **Quisquam** is used chiefly in negative sentences, and sentences implying a negative.

4. The indefinites usually follow the noun-limited.

120.

EXERCISE

Decline **mīles quidam**, *a certain soldier*; **dōnum quodque**, *each gift*; **legiō aliqua**, *any legion.*

121.

VOCABULARY

aliquis (**aliqui**), **aliqua**, **aliquid** (**aliquod**), *some one, some.*

iūs, **iūris**, n., *justice, law, right.*

ōrātiō, **ōrātiōnis**, f., *speech.*

castellum, i, n., *small fort, redoubt.*

quidam, **quaedam**, **quiddam** (**quoddam**), *certain.*

citerior, **citerius**, *hither, nearer* (comparative adjective; superlative, **citimus**, a, um).

quisquam, **quidquam**, *any one* (at all).

concilium, i, n., *assembly, council.*

quisque, **quaeque**, **quidque** (**quodque**), *each, every.*

cōnsuetūdō, **cōnsuetūdinis**, f., *custom.*

ulterior, **ulterius**, *farther* (comparative adjective; superlative, **ultimus**, a, um).

equus, i, m., *horse.*

explōrātor, **explōrātōris**, m., *scout.*

vadum, i, n., *ford, shoal.*

122.

EXERCISES

I

1. **Legiōnis cūiusque.**

3. **Virī cūiusque.**

2. **In locō quōdam.**

4. **Hiberna aliqua.**

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 5. Cohortium quārundam. | 13. Cūiusquam. |
| 6. Ab auxiliis aliquibus. | 14. In castris quibusque. |
| 7. Agricolam quendam. | 15. Oppida aliqua. |
| 8. Cōnsuētūdine aliquā. | 16. Vadum aliquod. |
| 9. Concili cūiusdam. | 17. Aliquid. |
| 10. Equō cuique. | 18. Quidque. |
| 11. Quidquam. | 19. Proelium quodque. |
| 12. Quemquam. | 20. Servi cūiusdam. |

II

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Anything. | 11. To each cohort. |
| 2. Of anything. | 12. Of certain farmers. |
| 3. Of any one. | 13. On a certain hill. |
| 4. Of some one. | 14. Of some redoubt. |
| 5. To each one. | 15. Some redoubts. |
| 6. By certain men. | 16. A certain town. |
| 7. By anything. | 17. For each boy. |
| 8. For each one. | 18. Of some chief. |
| 9. By any one. | 19. Certain hostages. |
| 10. Some one. | 20. Each part. |

III

1. Ad flāmen sunt castella aliqua. 2. In citeriōre¹ Galliā est oppidum quoddam, quod contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrat. 3. In agrō quōque est magnus numerus equōrum. 4. Miles quisque scūtum et pilum et gladium habet. 5. Auxilia quaedam vicōs finitimōs vexant. 6. Num explorātōrēs prīncipibus Germānōrum quidquam nūntiant? 7. Cōnsuētudinēs aliquae sunt veterrimae. 8. Incolae Britanniae concilium gentis cūiusque vocant. 9. Caesar cōpiās suās, quae in ulteriōre¹ Galliā sunt, in

¹ Citerior Gallia, *hither Gaul* (south of the Alps); ulterior Gallia, *farther Gaul* (north of the Alps).

hibernis collocat. 10. Post sōlis occāsum servī trāns vadum quodque commeātūs portant. 11. Quis repentinum ēius adventum nūntiat? 12. Rōmānī appropinquant atque paulātim quemque locum optimum¹ occupant. 13. Gentēs ferae iūs Rōmānōrum nōn amant.

IV

1. Fire confuses some horses. 2. Each soldier carries his (own) supplies. 3. Does any one praise a bad man? 4. These are the same Germans with whom the Helvetians often fight. 5. Certain scouts, who are wintering in Gaul, report these matters to Caesar. 6. The speech of the leader arouses each man. 7. A certain slave has my baggage. 8. Some tribes have many villages and towns. 9. I am giving a good book to each boy. 10. Who are your allies?

¹ Each best place, i.e. all the best places.



DENARIUS ROMANUS

A Roman coin with the head of Julius Caesar

LESSON XXI

REVIEW OF PRONOUNS; NUMERALS

123.

EXERCISES

Study the review chart of pronouns, 130.

124.

NUMERALS

The cardinal numerals are *one, two, three*, etc.; the ordinals are *first, second, third*, etc. Learn the following numerals:¹

CARDINALS

ūnus, one.
duo, two.
trēs, three.
quattuor, four.
quinque, five.
sex, six.
septem, seven.
octō, eight.
novem, nine.
decem, ten.
centum, hundred.
mille, thousand.

ORDINALS

primus, first.
secundus, second.
tertius, third.
quārtus, fourth.
quintus, fifth.
sextus, sixth.
septimus, seventh.
octāvus, eighth.
nōnus, ninth.
decimus, tenth.

125.

DECLENSION OF NUMERALS

1. The ordinals are declined like *bonus*.
2. Of the cardinals given above, only *ūnus, duo, trēs*, and

¹ These numerals take the place of the vocabulary in this lesson.

mille are declined. For declension of **ūnus**, see 32. The others are declined as follows :

Duo, two

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs, duo	duās	duo
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

Trēs, three

Declined like the plural of **facilis**.

Mille, thousand

SINGULAR	PLURAL	
Indeclinable	<i>Nom.</i>	milia
	<i>Gen.</i>	milium
	<i>Dat.</i>	milibus
	<i>Acc.</i>	milia
	<i>Abl.</i>	milibus

126.**USE OF MILLE**

1. In the singular, **mille** is an adjective :

Mille militēs, a thousand soldiers.

2. In the plural, **milia** is a neuter noun, and is followed by the genitive :

Tria milia captivōrum, three thousand(s of) captives.

127.**EXERCISES****I**

1. **Ūnus**¹ legiōnis.
2. **Quattuor** librōrum.
3. **Ā** septem viris.
4. **Prima**¹ aciēs.

¹ Cardinals precede the noun ; ordinals precede or follow.

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 5. Diēs tertius. | 8. Mille equī. |
| 6. Novem diērum. | 9. Milia peditum. |
| 7. Quinque explorātōrum. | 10. Duo milia servōrum. |

II

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Of three girls. | 6. To the fourth ship. |
| 2. In the second line of battle. | 7. A hundred children. |
| 3. Three thousand captives. | 8. By eight javelins. |
| 4. For the tenth legion. | 9. Of the seventh cohort. |
| 5. By six wagons. | 10. Of a thousand men. |

III

1. Mārcus quattuor liberōs, trēs filiōs et ūnam filiam, habet. 2. Sex legiōnēs centum milia hostium facile superant. 3. Caesar ōrātiōne primā suōs incitat. 4. Duae prōvinciae Rōmānae sunt citerior et ulterior Gallia. 5. Commūne Belgārum concilium cōnsilia quaedam nūntiat. 6. Cōnsuētūdō est Gallōrum gladiis pilisque fortiter pugnāre. 7. Nōna cohors vadō trāns flūmen frūmentum portat. 8. Cohors quīnta legiōnis octāvae est in castris, sed sexta cohors vicum oppugnat. 9. Num quidquam cōpiās perturbat? 10. Hīc collis altior quam montēs aliquī est.

IV

1. Each legion has ten cohorts. 2. The fifth cohort of the tenth legion is in the second line of battle. 3. Each boy has three gifts. 4. Four legions which have no leader are wintering in farther Gaul. 5. That chief has a thousand cavalry and three thousand infantry. 6. The justice of the Roman senate is the best. 7. There are three islands in that river. 8. Each farmer has two horses in my field. 9. Whose roses are those which the

little girl is carrying? 10. That is a good book which the boy has.

128.

REVIEW CHART—NOUNS

SINGULAR					
puell-a	serv-us	vir	dōn-um	dux	caput
-ae	-ī	-ī	-ī	duc-is	capit-is
-ae	-ō	-ō	-ō	-ī	-ī
-am	-um	-um	-um	-em	caput
-ā	-ō	-ō	-ō	-e	capit-e
PLURAL					
puell-ae	serv-ī	vir-ī	dōn-a	duc-ēs	capit-a
-ārum	-ōrum	-ōrum	-ōrum	-um	-um
-īs	-īs	-īs	-īs	-ibus	-ibus
-ās	-ōs	-ōs	-a	-ēs	-a
-īs	-īs	-īs	-īs	-ibus	-ibus
SINGULAR					
host-is	animal	arx	fruct-us	corn-ū	di-ēs
-is	animāl-is	arc-is	-ūs	-ūs	-ēī
-ī	-ī	-ī	-uī	-ū	-ēī
-em	animal	-em	-um	-ū	-em
-e	animāl-ī	-e	-ū	-ū	-ē
PLURAL					
host-ēs	animāl-ia	arc-ēs	fruct-ūs	corn-ua	di-ēs
-ium	-ium	-ium	-uum	-uum	-ērum
-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ēbus
-īs, -ēs	-ia	-īs, -ēs	-ūs	-ua	-ēs
-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ēbus

Vocative = nom. ; except sing. of second declension nouns in -us = e.

129.

REVIEW CHART—ADJECTIVES

Learn the following classification, and review the declension of the models :

POSITIVES

First and Second Declensions.

- | | |
|-----------|----------------------|
| 1. In -us | like bonus. |
| 2. In -er | like pulcher, liber. |

Third Declension.

- | | |
|-----------|--|
| 1. In -er | like ācer. |
| 2. In -is | like facilis. |
| 3. Others | { like ferāx, prūdēns (-i stem).
like vetus (cons. stem). |

COMPARATIVES

- | | |
|------------|--------------|
| 1. In -ior | like altior. |
|------------|--------------|

SUPERLATIVES

- | | |
|-----------|-------------|
| 1. In -us | like bonus. |
|-----------|-------------|

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

1. The nine irregulars : alius, alter, uter, neuter, ūllus, nūllus, ūnus, tōtus, sōlus.
2. The comparative plūs.

130. REVIEW CHART—PRONOUNS

Learn the following classification of pronouns, and review their declension :

PERSONAL

ego, I.
 nōs, we.
 tū, thou, you.
 vōs, you.
 sui, { of himself, etc. (reflexive)
 { of themselves.
 is, ea, id, he, she, (non-reflexive)
 it; pl., they.

POSSESSIVE

meus, my.
 noster, our.
 tuus, thy, your.
 vester, your.
 suus, { his, etc. (reflexive)
 { their.
 { ēius, his, etc. }
 { eōrum } their. } (non-reflexive)
 { eārum }

INTENSIVE

ipse, *self, very.*

DEMONSTRATIVE

hic, *this.*

is, *that, this.*

iste, *that, that of yours.*

idem, *the same.*

ille, *that.*

RELATIVE

qui, *who, which, what, that.*

INTERROGATIVE

quis, *who? which? what?*

quī, *what? what kind of?*

INDEFINITE

quisquam, *any one.*

quisque, *each.*

aliquis, *some one.*

quidam, *certain.*



EQUES

LESSON XXII

VERBS¹: PRINCIPAL PARTS ; STEMS; *SUM*

131. PRINCIPAL PARTS; VERB STEMS

1. The principal parts of a verb are the present indicative, present infinitive, perfect indicative, and participle (perfect or future).

2. The principal parts are so called because they show the three *stems*, on which all forms of the verb are built.

3. The present stem may be found by dropping the ending of the present infinitive. Thus the present stem of *sum* is *es-*, from *esse*.

4. The perfect stem may be found by dropping *-i* from the perfect indicative. Thus, the perfect stem of *sum* is *fu-*, from *fuī*.

5. The supine stem may be found by dropping *-us*² or *-ūrus* from the participle. Thus the supine³ stem of *sum* is *fut-*, from *futūrus*.

6. In general, the first three tenses of a Latin verb are formed on the present stem, and the last three on the perfect stem. Certain forms, however, are always formed on the supine stem. These will be noted as they occur.

132. THE IRREGULAR VERB — *SUM*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	FUT. PARTICIPLE
<i>sum</i>	<i>esse</i>	<i>fuī</i>	<i>futūrus</i>

¹ For general explanation of mood, tense, etc., see Introduction, XI.

² *-us* from perfect participle, *-ūrus* from future.

³ Also called the participle stem.

Stems

Present, es-

Perfect, fu-

Supine, fut-

Indicative Mood

SINGULAR

PLURAL

Present Tense

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>sum, I am</i> | <i>sumus, we are</i> |
| 2. <i>es, thou art, you are</i> | <i>estis, you are</i> |
| 3. <i>est, he is</i> | <i>sunt, they are</i> |

Imperfect

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. <i>eram, I was</i> | <i>erāmus, we were</i> |
| 2. <i>erās, you were</i> | <i>erātis, you were</i> |
| 3. <i>erat, he was</i> | <i>erant, they were</i> |

Future

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. <i>erō, I shall be</i> | <i>erimus, we shall be</i> |
| 2. <i>eris, you will be</i> | <i>eritis, you will be</i> |
| 3. <i>erit, he will be</i> | <i>erunt, they will be</i> |

Perfect

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>fui, I have been, I was</i> | <i>fuiinus, we have been, we were</i> |
| 2. <i>fuisti, you have been, you were</i> | <i>fuistis, you have been, you were</i> |
| 3. <i>fuit, he has been, he was</i> | <i>fuērunt, fuēre, they have been, they were</i> |

Pluperfect

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. <i>fueram, I had been</i> | <i>fuerāmus, we had been</i> |
| 2. <i>fuerās, you had been</i> | <i>fuerātis, you had been</i> |
| 3. <i>fuerat, he had been</i> | <i>fuerant, they had been</i> |

Future Perfect

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>fuerō, I shall have been</i> | <i>fuerimus, we shall have been</i> |
| 2. <i>fueris, you will have been</i> | <i>fueritis, you will have been</i> |
| 3. <i>fuerit, he will have been</i> | <i>fuerint, they will have been</i> |

133.

NOTES ON CONJUGATION

1. The first three tenses are very irregular. They are formed on the present stem (131, 3, 6), but the stem appears altered in most forms.

2. The last three tenses are regular and are formed on the perfect stem (131, 4, 6).

134.

VOCABULARY

amicus, a, um, *friendly*.

amicus, i, m., *friend*.

cotidianus, a, um, *daily, every-day*.

ferē, *almost, nearly* (adv.).

incolumis, *incolume*, *unharmed, safe*.

mulier, *mulieris*, f., *woman*.

multitūdō, *multitūdinis*, f., *multitude*.

praesidium, i, n., *guard, garri-son; protection*.

reliquus, a, um, *remaining, rest of*.

signum, i, n., *standard, signal*.

sum, esse, fui, futurus, *be*.

135.

EXERCISES

I

1. Sum.

2. Eram.

3. Erō.

4. Fuisti.

5. Estis.

6. Erātis.

7. Fuerāmus.

8. Fuerint.

9. Erunt.

10. Fuerant.

11. Fuērunt.

12. Fuēre.

13. Erimus.

14. Fuerās.

15. Fueris.

16. Eritis.

II

1. We shall have been.

2. I shall be.

3. He was.

4. You are.

5. You had been.

6. We have been.

7. Thou wast.

8. They were.

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 9. Thou hast been. | 13. They had been. |
| 10. He will have been. | 14. They will be. |
| 11. He will be. | 15. You will have been. |
| 12. They have been. | 16. You will be. |

III

1. Mulierēs liberique fuērunt in carris. 2. Germāni ferī fuerant amīcī sociique Gallōrum. 3. Duae legiōnēs in colle erunt, sed reliquae cōpiae sunt in castris. 4. Helvētīi ferē cotidiānis proeliis cum Germānis pugnant, et fortissimī Gallōrum sunt. 5. Ubi signum decimae legiōnis erit? 6. Ūna cohors in magnō periculō fuerat. 7. In quō locō fuistis? 8. Incolae prōvinciae praesidiō amīcī erant. 9. Magna virōrum multitudō in oppidō erit. 10. Explōrātōrēs fuerant in castris hostium, atque tamen incolumēs fuērunt. 11. Caesar nōbis amicus erit. 12. Eram Caesaris amicus.

IV

1. Who has been commander of this garrison? 2. Where was¹ Galba's slave? 3. The auxiliaries will be in the redoubt. 4. I shall have been near your winter quarters. 5. You have been in that village a long time. 6. Will not the women be near the camp? 7. The loyalty of our friends has been incredible. 8. Your children are most friendly to me. 9. What² have been the conditions of peace? 10. In what harbor will these ships be?

¹ perfect.² *What conditions of peace have (there) been?*

LESSON XXIII

SUM (continued)

136. Subjunctive Mood

SINGULAR

PLURAL

Present

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. <i>sim, may I be</i> | sīmus, let us be, may we be |
| 2. <i>sis, be you, may you be</i> | sītis, be ye, may you be |
| 3. <i>sit, let him be, may he be</i> | sint, let them be, may they be |

Imperfect

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>essem, I should be</i> | essēmus, we should be |
| 2. <i>essēs, you would be</i> | essētis, you would be |
| 3. <i>esset, he would be</i> | essent, they would be |

Perfect

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. <i>fuerim, I may have been</i> | fuerīmus, we may have been |
| 2. <i>fueris, you may have been</i> | fuerītis, you may have been |
| 3. <i>fuerit, he may have been</i> | fuerint, they may have been |

Pluperfect

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| 1. <i>fuissem, I should have been</i> | fuissēmus, we should have been |
| 2. <i>fuissēs, you would have been</i> | fuissētis, you would have been |
| 3. <i>fuisset, he would have been</i> | fuissent, they would have been |

Imperative Mood

- | | |
|---|----------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> 2. <i>es, be thou</i> | este, be ye |
| <i>Fut.</i> 2. <i>estō, thou shalt be</i> | estōte, ye shall be |
| 3. <i>estō, he shall be</i> | suntō, they shall be |

Infinitive

Participle

- | | |
|--|---|
| <i>Pres.</i> <i>esse, to be</i> | |
| <i>Perf.</i> <i>fuisse, to have been</i> | |
| <i>Fut.</i> <i>futūrus esse, to be</i> | <i>Fut.</i> <i>futūrus,¹ about to be</i> |
| <i>about to be</i> | |

¹ Futūrus, a, um; declined like bonus.

137.**NOTES ON CONJUGATION**

1. The future participle and future infinitive are formed on the supine stem (131, 5). All other forms follow the regular rule (131, 6).
2. The present stem appears altered in the present subjunctive, and the third person plural of the future imperative.

138.**VERB SYNOPSSES**

Below is given a synopsis of the verb *sum* in the third person singular. Note that only the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative have person; therefore the remaining forms are given complete.

PRIN. PARTS: *sum, esse, fui, futurus.*

STEMS:	Pres. es-		Perf. fu-		Sup. fut-	
TENSES	Indic.	Subj.	Imper.	Infin.	Part.	Gerund(ive)
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>est</i>	<i>sit</i>		<i>esse</i>		
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>erat</i>	<i>esset</i>				
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>erit</i>		<i>estō</i> ¹	<i>futūrus esse</i>	<i>futūrus</i>	(Supine)
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>fuit</i>	<i>fuert</i>		<i>fuisse</i>		
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>fuert</i>	<i>fuisse</i>				
<i>Fut. P.</i>	<i>fuert</i>					

¹ If the teacher prefers, the imperative may be given entire. In that case the pupil should clearly understand that a synopsis proper is given only for the indicative and subjunctive.

139.**EXERCISE**

Write from memory synopses in the second person plural, third person plural, etc.

140.**MEANING AND USE OF MOODS**

1. The subjunctive has a great variety of meanings and uses. These will be explained more fully in later lessons. For the present the meanings given above should be memorized, and employed in the exercises.

2. The present subjunctive often expresses (1) a wish ; as,

Dux incolumis sit, may the leader be unharmed !

- (2) a mild command ; as,

Sĩmus fortēs, let us be brave !

3. The imperative is used to express a command ; see 142, III, 5, 6.

4. The infinitive may be used as in English ; see 142, III, 11.

5. The participle is a verbal adjective, and agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.

141.

VOCABULARY

aditus, ūs, m., approach.

aedificium, ī, n., building.

aequus, a, um, level ; favorable.

autem, moreover, but, however,
(conj.).

calamitās, calamitātis, f., calam-
ity, disaster, defeat.

clāmor, clāmōris, m., shouting,
cry.

dexter, tra, trum, right.

inopia, ae, f., lack, want.

regiō, regiōnis, f., region, district.

Rhēnus, ī, m., the Rhine.

rīpa, ae, f., bank, shore.

sinister, tra, trum, left.

uterque,¹ utraque, utrumque,
each (of two), both.

142.

EXERCISES

I

1. Sīs.

2. Esset.

3. Es.

4. Este.

5. Fueritis.

6. Futūrus.

7. Fuisse.

8. Essēmus.

9. Esse.

10. Fuissēmus.

11. Estōte.

12. Futūrus esse.

13. Suntō.

14. Sītis.

15. Fueris.

16. Fuissent.

¹ Declined like *uter* ; see 32.

II

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. We may have been. | 9. You may have been. |
| 2. He would be. | 10. You would have been. |
| 3. Let us be. | 11. To be. |
| 4. May we be. | 12. Thou shalt be. |
| 5. May they be. | 13. To have been. |
| 6. Let them be. | 14. He shall be. |
| 7. Be ye. | 15. To be about to be. |
| 8. About to be. | 16. Be thou. |

III

1. Aditus sit facilis! 2. In utrāque rīpā flūminis fuisset praesidium. 3. In eis regiōnibus fuisset inopia frūmentī. 4. Haec mulier sit rēgina! 5. Este viri audācēs et prūdentēs. 6. Mulierēs incolumēs suntō. 7. Equitēs in dextrō cornū fuissent. 8. Simus viri fortēs! 9. Proelium sit in locō aequō! 10. Calamitatēs patriae nostrae sint paucae! 11. Gallī autem¹ amīcī Rōmānōrum esse recūsant. 12. In sinistrō cornū exercitūs essent duae cohortēs. 13. Ad rīpam flūminis Rhēnī fuissent multa aedificia Germānōrum.

IV

1. There would have been shouting in the camp of the Belgians. 2. These children would have been friends. 3. Almost a third part of the troops would have been unharmed. 4. The Germans hope to be allies of the Romans. 5. May you be good citizens of the fatherland! 6. Let there be daily battles with our enemies! 7. The remaining multitude would be unharmed. 8. Let Caesar be commander. 9. Be ye brave and bold, citizens! 10. We should have been near the standard of our cohort.

¹ *Autem* is post-positive; *i.e.* never stands first in the sentence.

LESSON XXIV

FIRST CONJUGATION — ACTIVE VOICE

143. The First Conjugation includes all regular verbs whose present stem ends in *-ā*. The present stem is found by dropping the infinitive ending *-re* (131, 3).

Amō, I love

PRINCIPAL PARTS

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	PERF. PARTICIPLE
amō	amāre	amāvī	amātus

Stems

Present, amā-	Perfect, amāv-	Supine, amāt-
---------------	----------------	---------------

Indicative Mood

SINGULAR

Present Tense

PLURAL

amō, <i>I love</i>	amāmus, <i>we love</i>
amās, <i>you love</i>	amātis, <i>you love</i>
amat, <i>he loves</i>	amant, <i>they love</i>

Imperfect

amābam, <i>I was loving, I loved</i>	amābāmus, <i>we were loving, etc.</i>
amābās, <i>you were loving, etc.</i>	amābātis, <i>you were loving, etc.</i>
amābat, <i>he was loving, etc.</i>	amābant, <i>they were loving, etc.</i>

Future

amābō, <i>I shall love</i>	amābimus, <i>we shall love</i>
amābis, <i>you will love</i>	amābitis, <i>you will love</i>
amābit, <i>he will love</i>	amābunt, <i>they will love</i>

SINGULAR		PLURAL
	<i>Perfect</i>	
amāvī, <i>I have loved, I loved</i>		amāvimus, <i>we have loved, etc.</i>
amāvistī, <i>you have loved, etc.</i>		amāvistis, <i>you have loved, etc.</i>
amāvit, <i>he has loved, etc.</i>		amāvērunt, amāvēre, <i>they have loved, etc.</i>
	<i>Pluperfect</i>	
amāveram, <i>I had loved</i>		amāverāmus, <i>we had loved</i>
amāverās, <i>you had loved</i>		amāverātis, <i>you had loved</i>
amāverat, <i>he had loved</i>		amāverant, <i>they had loved</i>
	<i>Future Perfect</i>	
amāverō, <i>I shall have loved</i>		amāverimus, <i>we shall have loved</i>
amāveris, <i>you will have loved</i>		amāveritis, <i>you will have loved</i>
amāverit, <i>he will have loved</i>		amāverint, <i>they will have loved</i>

144. NOTES ON CONJUGATION

1. The -ā of the present stem becomes -ī in certain forms and unites with the personal ending in the form amō. Similar variations occur in the present stem of the other conjugations. In studying the formation of tenses on the present stem, these variations need not be considered as irregularities. The quantity of vowels is a subject for special study. See Introduction, V.

2. Otherwise the use of stems is regular according to 131, 6.

145. FIRST CONJUGATION — REVIEW LIST

The following list contains the first conjugation verbs which have occurred in the preceding lessons. They are conjugated precisely like amō. Review their meanings, and give their principal parts:

comparō	superō	collocō
laudō	expectō	incitō
pugnō	oppugnō	pācō

parō	vocō	properō
nūntiō	vāstō	recūsō
armō	vexō	spērō
appropinquō	coniūrō	vulnerō
occupō	cōfirmō	expugnō
portō	hiemō	perturbō

146.

VOCABULARY

auctōritās, auctōritātis, f., <i>authority, influence.</i>	Haedui, ōrum, m., <i>the Haedui, a Gallic tribe.</i>
causa, ae, f., <i>cause, reason.</i>	iugum, i, n., <i>yoke; ridge (of a hill).</i>
clam, <i>secretly (adv.).</i>	magistrātus, ūs, m., <i>magistrate.</i>
convocō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>call together, summon.</i>	nūntius, i, m., <i>messenger.</i>
Diviciācus, i, m., <i>Diviciacus, a chief of the Haedui.</i>	rēgnum, i, n., <i>rule, throne; kingdom.</i>
dubitō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>hesitate, doubt.</i>	sententia, ae, f., <i>opinion, decision.</i>
frūmentārius, a, um, <i>of grain; rēs frūmentāria, grain supplies, provisions.</i>	statim, <i>at once, immediately (adv.).</i>
	vulgō, <i>commonly, generally (adv.).</i>

147.

EXERCISES

I

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. Pugnābis. | 9. Hiemāvistī. |
| 2. Incitāverit. | 10. Vāstāverātis. |
| 3. Collocābāmus. | 11. Spērābam. |
| 4. Vulnerāvēre. | 12. Vocāvimus. |
| 5. Properātis. | 13. Perturbāverō. |
| 6. Recūsāverās. | 14. Appropinquās. |
| 7. Armābant. | 15. Pācāvī. |
| 8. Armābunt. | 16. Laudābō. |

II

- | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. You have armed. | 9. They were preparing. |
| 2. I shall lay waste. | 10. You have praised. |
| 3. You had wounded. | 11. We shall station. |
| 4. We shall have praised. | 12. He subdued. |
| 5. You are conspiring. | 13. You will attack. |
| 6. You conspire. | 14. I was awaiting. |
| 7. He has called. | 15. You were preparing. |
| 8. We had hesitated. | 16. They have established. |

III

1. Diviciācus concilium magistrātuum convocāvit.¹
 2. Omnēs Belgae contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrābant.²
 3. In Galliā principēs audācissimī rēgna vulgō occupāverunt.
 4. Impetū repentinō hostēs cōpiās Rōmānās magnopere perturbāverant. 5. Auctōritās principis Gallōs celeriter incitābit. 6. Militēs in sinistrō cornū collocāverō.
 7. Dux nūntiōs Haeduōrum exspectābat. 8. In regiōnibus finitimis fuerat inopia rei frūmentāriae. 9. Cōsul dē proeliō diū dubitābat. 10. Quis vestrum hanc sententiam laudābit? 11. Dux in summō iugō collis ūnam cohortem collocāverat. 12. Nōne in locō aequō pugnābitis? 13. Explōrātōrēs causam ignis celeriter nūntiāverunt. 14. Germāni ad utramque ripam Rhēnī statim commeātūs portābunt.

IV

1. You will easily seize the town, but the approach is very difficult. 2. The cries of the women had aroused the right wing of the enemy. 3. The Germans were has-

¹ A single past action is expressed by the perfect; as, *convocāvit*, he summoned.

² Continued or customary past action is expressed by the imperfect; as, *coniūrābant*, they were conspiring; *dubitābat*, he hesitated (usually, habitually).

tening¹ into the province. 4. The enemy had seized many buildings and villages of the Haedui. 5. The inhabitants of Gaul, moreover, are very brave. 6. Disasters do not easily disturb us. 7. I shall summon all the magistrates to the council. 8. You had wounded him with a javelin. 9. The leader established¹ peace with the Haedui. 10. Who will refuse to fight against the enemies of his country?

¹ What tense? See III, 1, 2, footnotes.



NAVIS ET NAUTAE

LESSON XXV

FIRST CONJUGATION—ACTIVE (Continued)

148.

Subjunctive Mood

SINGULAR

PLURAL

Present

amem, may I love

amēmus, let us love

amēs, may you love

amētis, may you love

amet, let him love, may he love

ament, let them love, may they love

Imperfect

amārem, I should love

amārēmus, we should love

amārēs, you would love

amārētis, you would love

amāret, he would love

amārent, they would love

Perfect

amāverim, I may have loved

amāverimus, we may have loved

amāveris, you may have loved

amāveritis, you may have loved

amāverit, he may have loved

amāverint, they may have loved

Pluperfect

amāvissem, I should have loved

amāvissēmus, we should have

amāvissēs, you would have loved

loved

amāvisset, he would have loved

amāvissētis, you would have loved

amāvissent, they would have loved

Imperative Mood

Pres. 2. amā, love thou

amāte, love ye

Fut. 2. amātō, thou shalt love

amātōte, ye shall love

3. amātō, he shall love

amantō, they shall love

Infinitive

Participle

Pres. amāre, to love

Pres. amāns,¹ loving

Perf. amāvisse, to have loved

(Gen. amantis)

Fut. amātūrus esse, to be about to love

Fut. amātūrus, about to love

Gerund

Supine

Gen. amandī, of loving

Dat. amandō, for loving

Acc. amandum, loving

Acc. amātum, to love

Abl. amandō, by loving

Abl. amātū, to love, be loved

149. NOTES ON CONJUGATION

1. The future participle, future infinitive, and the supine are formed on the supine stem.

2. The gerund is a verbal noun and is formed on the present stem.

3. All other forms follow the regular rule (131, 6). Notice, however, that the present stem loses -ā entirely in the present subjunctive. This, and other variations of the present stem, must be memorized in the study of the paradigms.

150. VERB SYNOPSSES; EXERCISES

I. Below is a synopsis of amō in the third person singular:

PRIN. PARTS: amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus.

STEMS:	Pres. amā-		Perf. amāv-		Sup. amāt-	
TENSES	Indic.	Subj.	Imper.	Infīn.	Part.	Gerund(ive)
<i>Pres.</i>	amat	amet		amāre	amāns	amandī
<i>Imp.</i>	amābat	amāret				
<i>Fut.</i>	amābit		amātō	amātūrus esse	amātūrus	(Supine) amātum
<i>Perf.</i>	amāvit	amāverit		amāvisse		
<i>Plup.</i>	amāverat	amāvisset				
<i>Fut. P.</i>	amāverit					

¹ Declined like prūdēns, 52. The ablative singular prefers -e to -ī unless used as an adjective.

2. Determine the stems of *laudō*, *pugnō*, *collocō*, *dubitō*, *vāstō*, according to the principles of 131.

3. Write synopses of two of the above verbs in different persons.

151.

THE GERUND AND SUPINE

1. The gerund may be used in its different cases like a noun ; see 153, III, 2, 15.

2. The use of the supine will be explained in a later lesson.

152.

VOCABULARY

colloquium, i, n., *conference*.

difficultās, *difficultātis*, f., *difficulty*.

fuga, ae, f., *flight*.

labor, *labōris*, m., *labor, task*.

potestās, *potestātis*, f., *power, authority*.

primō, *at first* (adv.).

prōpugnō, āre, āvi, ātus, *fight back, resist*.

pugna, ae, f., *fight, battle*.

rēx, *rēgis*, m., *king*.

studium, i, n., *desire, eagerness*.

temptō, āre, āvi, ātus, *try, attempt*.

153.

EXERCISES

I

1. *Laudārēs*.

2. *Collocātō*.

3. *Hiemāvissem*.

4. *Armandō*.

5. *Occupāveritis*.

6. *Temptent*.

7. *Dubitāte*.

8. *Prōpugnāns*.

9. *Parātūrus*.

10. *Pēcāvisse*.

11. *Vexārent*.

12. *Cōfirmāre*.

13. *Incitāvissēs*.

14. *Superāverit*.

15. *Nūntiēs*.

16. *Vexārētis*.

II

1. You would have called

2. To have wounded.

3. He may hesitate.

4. Reporting.

5. Of hoping.

6. To attempt.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 7. He would arm. | 12. He would prepare. |
| 8. They would hope. | 13. About to attack. |
| 9. Let them approach. | 14. To arouse. |
| 10. You may summon. | 15. To be about to refuse. |
| 11. I should have prepared. | 16. They would have resisted. |

III

1. Concilium principum ipsorum clam convocemus. 2. Hostes primò erant nòn cupidì pugnandì. 3. Adventum Caesaris cum rē frumentariā expectāvissēmus. 4. Este audacēs et oppidum oppugnāte! 5. Caesar dē proeliō nòn dubitāvisset. 6. Rēx omnēs milītēs statim armāre parāvit. 7. Per potestātem Diviciāci Gallōs facile pācāvissētis. 8. Cum populō Rōmānō Haedui pācem cōfirment! 9. Sententiam magistrātuum celeriter nūntiet! 10. Impetus hostium saepe est ācerrimus, sed nostri prōpugnāre vulgō nòn recūsant. 11. Ad colloquium nūntius lēgātōs convocāvisset. 12. Dux primum agmen¹ hostium oppugnāre parat. 13. In summō iugō collis milītēs, fortiter pugnantēs, hostēs superābunt. 14. Difficultās labōris est maxīma, sed temptāre non recūsāmus. 15. Studium pugnandì cōpiās incitet!

IV

1. The Gauls have many opportunities of conspiring. 2. The scouts would have reported the sudden flight of the Gauls. 3. For many reasons² the leaders were preparing to capture the town. 4. Let us overcome the enemy by fighting bravely! 5. The chief of the Haedui would have seized the throne. 6. Fight bravely, men,

¹ *Primum agmen, the first of the column, i.e. advance guard.*

² *Multis dē causis.*

with your commander. 7. The commander, arousing his soldiers, places them in line of battle. 8. Let us attempt this task without fear! 9. The farmer hastened to summon his slaves. 10. I should have reported this difficulty to you.

154. READING LESSON—THE NAUGHTY BOY,¹ I

Albertus, puer ignāvus, litterās nōn amābat. Saepe magistrum suum vitābat, et agrōs pererrābat. At saevus taurus agrōs habitābat. Dēnique puerum videt.² Primō stat et advenam saevīs oculīs lūstrat. Albertus fugam tentat. Tum instat taurus. Mox cornigerum mōnstrum miserī puerī tergum vulnerābit.

¹ Words occurring in the reading lessons of Lessons XXV-XXXV, and not occurring in preceding vocabularies, will be found in the special vocabularies, page 299. ² Videt, *sees*.



MILITES ROMANI LEGIONARII

LESSON XXVI

FIRST CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE

155.

AMŌ (Continued)

SINGULAR		Indicative Mood	PLURAL
		PRESENT TENSE <i>I am loved</i>	
amor			amāmur
amāris, or -re			amāmini
amātur			amantur
		IMPERFECT <i>I was loved</i>	
amābar			amābāmur
amābāris, or -re			amābāmini
amābātur			amābantur
		FUTURE <i>I shall be loved</i>	
amābor			amābimur
amāberis, or -re			amābimini
amābitur			amābuntur
		PERFECT <i>I have been loved or I was loved</i>	
amātus (-a, -um) sum			amātī (-ae, -a) sumus
amātus es			amātī estis
amātus est			amātī sunt
		PLUPERFECT <i>I had been loved</i>	
amātus eram			amātī erāmus
amātus erās			amātī erātis
amātus erat			amātī erant
		FUTURE PERFECT <i>I shall have been loved</i>	
amātus erō			amātī erimus
amātus eris			amātī eritis
amātus erit			amātī erunt

156.

NOTES ON CONJUGATION

1. The use of the present stem is regular except in the form *amor*, which is formed by adding the passive ending *-r* to the active *amō* and shortening the *-ō*.

2. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive are composed of the perfect passive participle (see 162) and the verb *sum*. They are called *compound* tenses, since they consist of two parts. All compound tenses are formed on the supine stem.

157.

EXERCISE

Observe that compound tenses have different forms for each gender. Translate: (1) He has been called. (2) The girl has been loved. (3) The town has been captured.

158.

ABLATIVE OF AGENT

RULE: *With passive verbs, the agent (or person who performs the action) is expressed by the ablative with the preposition ā (ab).*

Nūntius ā Caesare expectābātur, the messenger was awaited by Caesar.

159.

VOCABULARY

angustus, a, um, narrow.

apud, prep. gov. acc., among, with.

celeritās, celeritātis, f., speed.

equester, equestris, equestre, pertaining to cavalry, equestrian.

insidiae, ārum, f. pl., ambush.

interim, meanwhile (adv.).

lātītūdō, lātītūdinis, f., width.

latus, lateris, n., side, flank.

modus, i, m., manner, way, kind.

nōbilis, nōbile, noble.

salūs, salūtis, f., safety.

trānsportō, āre, āvi, ātus, carry across, transport.

tūtus, a, um, safe.

160.

EXERCISES

I

- | | |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1. Trānsportāris. | 9. Recūsābitur. |
| 2. Laudābiminī. | 10. Expugnātum erit. |
| 3. Vocātus es. | 11. Perturbantur. |
| 4. Vocāta est. | 12. Perturbābantur. |
| 5. Nūntiātum erat. | 13. Superātī erunt. |
| 6. Vāstābātur. | 14. Exspectābāris. |
| 7. Parābor. | 15. Vulnerāberis. |
| 8. Amāminī. | 16. Vocātae sunt. |

II

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. I shall be called. | 9. You are called. |
| 2. I have been praised. | 10. They had been wounded. |
| 3. They are awaited. | 11. We were awaited. |
| 4. We are wounded. | 12. They had been overcome. |
| 5. You will be praised. | 13. He has been praised. |
| 6. We had been overcome. | 14. It was attacked. |
| 7. She has been called. | 15. He will have been called. |
| 8. It had been prepared. | 16. It is refused. |

III

1. Orgetorix, quī apud Helvētiōs longē¹ nōbilissimus erat, ad concilium vocātus est. 2. Nōne ad colloquium ducum vocātus es? 3. Ab hostibus in extrēmā spē salūtis fortiter pugnābitur.² 4. Summā cum difficultāte³ Germānī pācābuntur. 5. Omnibus Gallōrum gentibus potestās populī Rōmānī nūntiābitur. 6. In pugnā cum Gallis vulnerātus sum. 7. Ūnum latus castrōrum vāllō cōfirmātum erat. 8. Equestrī proeliō inter duās aciēs

¹ By far.² It will be fought by the enemy, i.e. the enemy will fight.³ Summā cum difficultāte, a very common order; equivalent to cum summā difficultāte.

ācritēr pugnābātūr. 9. Interim sine ūllō periculō com-
meātūs ā Gallis portābantur. 10. Ab hostibus insidiae
in silvis collocātae erant, sed cōpiae Rōmānae fortiter
prōpugnāvērunt. 11. Clāmōre hostium perturbābāmur.
12. Propter lātitudinem flūminis frūmentum nōn facile
trānsportātūr. 13. Labor est maximus et pauca praemia
exspectantur.

IV

1. The fields of the Gauls had been laid waste, and
their towns had been captured. 2. The flight of the
enemy will be reported to Caesar with the greatest speed.
3. The soldiers were aroused by the eagerness¹ of their
leader. 4. Were you wounded in the cavalry battle?
5. Meanwhile all the captives had been summoned to the
conference. 6. We were aroused 'by the bravery¹ of
our commander. 7. This was reported to the senate by
those envoys. 8. Safety is not hoped for by the captives.
9. Marcus will be quickly called by the messenger.
10. I am greatly disturbed by this matter.¹

161. READING LESSON—THE NAUGHTY BOY, II

Fossa lāta, limō et aquā plēna, agrum forte terminābat.
Miser puer locō appropinquat et temere aquae sē mandat.
Nōn alta est aqua, sed limus profundus membra cohibet.²
Taurus puerum videt³ sed periculum aquae timet.⁴ Diū
haeret⁵ Albertus; taurus vānā irā captivum lūstrat. At
agricola forte agrum intrat. Statim magnō baculō taurum
dēturbat liberatque puerum.

¹ Not the *agent*; use no preposition.² *Cohibet* = *holds*.³ *Videt* = *sees*.⁴ *Timet* = *fears*.⁵ *Haeret* = *sticks*.

LESSON XXVII

FIRST CONJUGATION — PASSIVE (Continued)

162. Subjunctive Mood

SINGULAR	PRESENT	PLURAL
----------	---------	--------

May I be loved, let him be loved

amer	amēmur
amēris, or -re	amēmini
amētur	amentur

IMPERFECT

I should be loved, he would be loved

amārer	amārēmur
amārēris, or -re	amārēmini
amārētur	amārentur

PERFECT

I may have been loved

amātus sim	amātī simus
amātus sis	amātī sitis
amātus sit	amātī sint

PLUPERFECT

I should have been loved, he would have been loved

amātus essem	amātī essēmus
amātus essets	amātī essētis
amātus esset	amātī essent

Imperative Mood

Pres. 2. amāre, be thou loved amāmini, be ye loved

Fut. 2. amātor, thou shalt be loved

3. amātor, he shall be loved amāntor, they shall be loved

Infinitive	Participle
<i>Pres. amāri, to be loved</i>	
<i>Perf. amātus esse, to have been loved</i>	<i>Perf. amātus,¹ loved, having been loved</i>
<i>Fut. amātum iri, to be about to be loved</i>	<i>Gerundive amandus,¹ to be loved, deserving to be loved</i>

163. NOTES ON CONJUGATION

1. The present stem loses -ā in the present subjunctive.
2. The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, and the perfect and future infinitive, being compound tenses, are formed on the supine stem. Also, the perfect participle is formed on the supine stem.
3. The gerundive,² like the gerund, is formed on the present stem.
4. All other forms follow the regular rule (131, 6).

164. VERB FORMATION

From the conjugation of *amō*, the following facts, which apply to all conjugations, may be deduced. They should be committed to memory.

1. The present stem³ may be found by dropping -re from the infinitive (second principal part).
2. The perfect stem may be found by dropping -i from the perfect (third principal part).
3. The supine stem may be found by dropping -us or -ūrus from the participle (fourth principal part).
4. On the supine stem are formed the supine, the future active and perfect passive participles, and all compound tenses.

¹ Declined like *bonus*.

² Sometimes called the future passive participle. Its use will be explained later.

³ Variations in the final vowel of the present stem occur in all conjugations, and must be learned in the paradigms; see 144, 1; 149, 3.

5. The gerund and gerundive are formed on the present stem.

6. All other tenses are formed on either the present or perfect stem, according to the tense.

165.

EXERCISE

Write synopses in the passive voice of *vāstō*, second singular ; *parō*, third plural.

166.

VOCABULARY

dēbet, *he ought, it ought.*

explōrō, āre, āvi, ātus, *find out, explore.*

memoria, ae, f., *memory.*

mūnitlō, mūnitlōnis, f., *fortification.*

ob, prep. gov. acc., *on account of, for.*

postulō, āre, āvi, ātus, *demand.*

potēns, potēns, gen. *potentis*, *powerful.*

prō, prep. gov. abl., *for, in behalf of, instead of, in front of.*

probō, āre, āvi, ātus, *approve.*

recēns, recēns, gen. *recentis*, *recent.*

Rēmī, ōrum, m., *the Remi*, a Gallic tribe.

undique, *from all directions, on all sides (adv.).*

167.

EXERCISES

I

1. *Laudārētur.*

2. *Parātus.*

3. *Vocēmini.*

4. *Vocāti essētis.*

5. *Superandus.*

6. *Pācātum iri.*

7. *Parāri.*

8. *Occupārēmur.*

9. *Exspectāta esset.*

10. *Nūntiētur.*

11. *Trānsportārentur.*

12. *Vulnerātus sim.*

13. *Vulnerāta sit.*

14. *Occupātus esse.*

15. *Vocārēmur.*

16. *Pācātus.*

II

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. We may be called. | 9. It would be demanded. |
| 2. Let him be called. | 10. He may have been called. |
| 3. To have been praised. | 11. They would be overcome. |
| 4. To be about to be loved. | 12. She would have been loved. |
| 5. It would have been reported. | 13. Prepared. |
| 6. To be summoned. | 14. Having been prepared. |
| 7. May he be praised. | 15. Be ye prepared. |
| 8. He may have been loved. | 16. Thou shalt be praised. |

III

1. *Insidiae huius modi temptentur!* 2. *Haec munitio oppugnari debet.* 3. *Hae omnes res a Romanis exploratae essent.* 4. *Haec munitio ab hostibus nostris expugnari non debet.* 5. *Imperium totius belli ab hac gente postularetur.* 6. *Hanc ob causam Diviciacus, vir potentissimus, expectetur.* 7. *Legati hostium, ad colloquium convocati, pacem confirmare recusant.* 8. *Parimini, Romani nobiles, diu et fortiter pugnare!* 9. *Memoria belli recentis omnes Romanos perturbati essent.* 10. *Consilium vestrum probetur!* 11. *Viri summa cum celeritate undique convocentur!*

IV

1. One legion would have been stationed in a safe place. 2. Meanwhile let the troops be transported across the river. 3. The Germans would have been overcome in a cavalry battle. 4. On account of the width of the river, the grain would not easily have been carried across. 5. The horsemen, having been attacked, resisted sharply in the narrow road. 6. The right side of the fortification would have been captured by a sudden attack. 7. Few

citizens would not have been aroused by this surrender of our troops. 8. On account of our recent victory a hostage ought to be demanded. 9. Let the inhabitants of the village be summoned from the fields! 10. What plan ought to be approved?

168. READING LESSON—THE BAD APPLES

Carolus, filius impigri agricolae, bonus erat puer sed malōs amicōs amābat. Agricola igitur puerō calathum plēnum pōmōrum dat. Bona pōma continēbat¹ calathus, pauca tamen erant putrida. Puer dōnum diligenter cūrat, sed mala pōma bona maculant, et mox cūncta sunt mala. Carolus maestus adversam fortūnam plōrat. Tum agricola filium ita monet²: “Mala pōma bona maculant, certē mali amicī bonum puerum maculābunt.”

¹ **Continēbat** = *contained*.

² **Monet** = *advises, admonishes*.



SCUTUM

LESSON XXVIII

SECOND CONJUGATION — ACTIVE VOICE

169. The Second Conjugation includes all regular verbs whose present stem ends in -ē.

Moneō, I advise

PRINCIPAL PARTS

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	PERF. PARTICIPLE
moneō	monēre	monuī	monitus

Stems

Present, monē-	Perfect, monu-	Supine, monit-
----------------	----------------	----------------

Indicative Mood

SINGULAR

PRESENT TENSE

I advise

PLURAL

moneō

monēmus

monēs

monētis

monet

monent

IMPERFECT

I was advising, or I advised

monēbam

monēbāmus

monēbās

monēbātis

monēbat

monēbant

FUTURE

I shall advise

monēbō

monēbimus

monēbis

monēbitis

monēbit

monēbunt

PERFECT

I have advised, or I advised

monuī

monuimus

monuisti

monuistis

monuit

monuerunt, or -ēre

SINGULAR

PLURAL

PLUPERFECT

I had advised

monueram

monuerāmus

monuerās

monuerātis

monuerat

monuerant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have advised

monuerō

monuerimus

monueris

monueritis

monuerit

monuerint

Subjunctive Mood

PRESENT

May I advise, let him advise

moneam

moneāmus

moneās

moneātis

moneat

moneant

IMPERFECT

I should advise, he would advise

monērem

monērēmus

monērēs

monērētis

monēret

monērent

PERFECT

I may have advised

monuerim

monuerimus

monueris

monueritis

monuerit

monuerint

PLUPERFECT

I should have advised, he would have advised

monuissē

monuissēmus

monuissēs

monuissētis

monuisset

monuissent

Imperative Mood

<i>Pres.</i> monē, <i>advise thou</i>	monēte, <i>advise ye</i>
<i>Fut.</i> monētō, <i>thou shalt advise</i>	monētote, <i>ye shall advise</i>
monētō, <i>he shall advise</i>	monentō, <i>they shall advise</i>

Infinitive

Participle

<i>Pres.</i> monēre, <i>to advise</i>	<i>Pres.</i> monēns, <i>advising</i>
<i>Perf.</i> monuisse, <i>to have advised</i>	(<i>Gen.</i> monentis)
<i>Fut.</i> monitūrus esse, <i>to be about to advise</i>	<i>Fut.</i> monitūrus, <i>about to advise</i>

Gerund

Supine

<i>Gen.</i> monendī, <i>of advising</i>	
<i>Dat.</i> monendō, <i>for advising</i>	
<i>Acc.</i> monendum, <i>advising</i>	<i>Acc.</i> monitum, <i>to advise</i>
<i>Abl.</i> monendō, <i>by advising</i>	<i>Abl.</i> monitū, <i>to advise, be advised</i>

170. NOTE ON CONJUGATION

The use of stems is entirely regular.¹

171. EXERCISE

According to the principles of 164, determine the stems of the verbs in the vocabulary. Write synopses of *augeō*, third singular, and of *dēbeō*, first plural.

172. VOCABULARY

<i>altitūdō</i> , <i>altitūdinis</i> , f., <i>height, depth.</i>	<i>fremitus</i> , ūs, m., <i>noise, uproar.</i>
<i>augeō</i> , ēre, auxi, <i>auctus</i> , <i>increase, make larger.</i>	<i>habeō</i> , ēre, ui, <i>itus</i> , <i>have, possess, hold; maintain, consider.</i>
<i>dēbeō</i> , ēre, ui, <i>itus</i> , <i>ought, be obliged to; owe.</i>	<i>iam</i> , <i>now, already (adv.).</i>
	<i>inermis</i> , <i>inermis, unarmed.</i>
	<i>lateō</i> , ēre, <i>latui</i> , ² <i>lie hid.</i>

¹ But see 164, 1, footnote.

² *Lateō* lacks the supine stem.

moneō, ēre, uī, itus, <i>advise, warn.</i>	onerārius, a, um, <i>of burden; nāvēs onerāriae, freight ships, transports.</i>
Morinī, ōrum, m., <i>the Morini, a Belgian tribe.</i>	praebeō, ēre, uī, itus, <i>afford, furnish, show.</i>
obtineō, ēre, uī, tentus, <i>hold, occupy; obtain.</i>	ventus, i, m., <i>wind.</i>

173.

EXERCISES

I

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. Auxisse. | 9. Auctum. |
| 2. Habērēmus. | 10. Praebitū. |
| 3. Monitūrus. | 11. Habuissētis. |
| 4. Obtinuerimus. | 12. Latēre. |
| 5. Obtinuerimus. | 13. Obtinēbātis. |
| 6. Latēbis. | 14. Dēbuerātis. |
| 7. Praebētis. | 15. Monuimus. |
| 8. Obtinendō. | 16. Obtinēns. |

II

- | | |
|----------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. We shall furnish. | 9. We have obtained. |
| 2. Let us afford. | 10. You have advised. |
| 3. He had advised. | 11. He has possessed. |
| 4. He owed. | 12. I shall furnish. |
| 5. They will owe. | 13. They had owed. |
| 6. I ought. | 14. You will have increased. |
| 7. You may obtain. | 15. You lay hid. |
| 8. To have obtained. | 16. He would have lain hid. |

III

1. Inermis exercitus noster ab hostibus, quī in silvis latēbant, undique oppugnātus est. 2. Deī nōbīs auxilium praebeant! 3. Morinī ad¹ utramque ripam Rhēnī agrōs, aedificia, vicōsque habēbant. 4. Impedimenta difficultātēs itineris augēbant. 5. Hostēs speciem timōris

¹ On or near.

praebuissent. 6. Prō civibus, militēs, parāte pugnāre et nūllum timōrem praebēte! 7. Vis ventī difficultātem militēs¹ trānsportandī nāvibus² onerāriis auxit. 8. Vir potentissimus esse dēbēs. 9. Monēte incolās vicī! 10. Propter memoriā rērum recentium obsidēs postulāre dēbēmus. 11. Eam ob causam rēgnum nōn obtinuissēs. 12. Nōnne hōc cōsiliū probāvissētis? 13. Erat fremitus magnus in vicō atque militēs nostri iam perturbābantur. 14. Dux altitudinem mūitiōnis atque lātitudinem fossae explōrāverat.

IV

1. The women and children lay hidden in the forest.
2. Increase the infantry to the number of ten thousand men. 3. Caesar would have had many transports in the farther harbor. 4. The hope of obtaining the rule³ arouses him. 5. One legion ought to hold the camp. 6. We ought not to afford an opportunity of increasing the troops.³ 7. We have already warned the citizens. 8. You have held the throne a long time. 9. On account of the depth of the river we ought to have boats. 10. On account of their loyalty, the Remi will have great rewards.

174. READING LESSON — THE LITTLE SLAVE

Flōrus, parvus puer, servus erat Titī, colōnī Britannici (nam Britannī ōlim servōs habēbant). Augustus et Iūlius, filii Titī, servum parvum saepe vexābant et ēius membra limō maculābant. Flōrus aliquandō lacrimās nōn tenēbat. At Titus, vir bonus, forte lacrimās videt, et plēnus irae limō oculōs et capillōs et membra puerōrum malōrum maculat. Itaque nunquam posthāc puerī servum parvum vexābant.

¹ Object of the gerund trānsportandī. ² Abl., *by*. ³ Compare III, 7.

LESSON XXIX

SECOND CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE

175.

MONĒŌ (Continued)

SINGULAR	Indicative Mood	PLURAL
	PRESENT TENSE <i>I am advised</i>	
monēor		monēmur
monēris, or -re		monēmini
monētur		monentur
	IMPERFECT <i>I was advised</i>	
monēbar		monēbāmur
monēbāris, or -re		monēbāmini
monēbātur		monēbantur
	FUTURE <i>I shall be advised</i>	
monēbor		monēbimur
monēberis, or -re		monēbimini
monēbitur		monēbuntur
	PERFECT <i>I have been advised, I was advised</i>	
monitus sum		monitī sumus
monitus es		monitī estis
monitus est		monitī sunt
	PLUPERFECT <i>I had been advised</i>	
monitus eram		monitī erāmus
monitus erās		monitī erātis
monitus erat		monitī erant
	FUTURE PERFECT <i>I shall have been advised</i>	
monitus erō		monitī erimus
monitus eris		monitī eritis
monitus erit		monitī erunt

Subjunctive Mood

SINGULAR

PLURAL

PRESENT

May I be advised, let him be advised

monear

moneāmur

moneāris, or -re

moneāmini

moneātur

moneantur

IMPERFECT

I should be advised, he would be advised

monērer

monērēmur

monērēris, or -re

monērēmini

monērētur

monērentur

PERFECT

I may have been advised

monitus sim

moniti simus

monitus sis

moniti sitis

monitus sit

moniti sint

PLUPERFECT

I should have been advised, he would have been advised

monitus essem

moniti essemus

monitus essēs

moniti essētis

monitus esset

moniti essent

Imperative Mood

Pres. monēre, be thou advised monēmini, be ye advised*Fut.* monētor, thou shalt be
advisedmonētor, he shall be monentor, they shall be advised
advised

Infinitive

Participle

Pres. monēri, to be advised*Perf.* monitus esse, to have been
advised*Perf.**Gerundive*

monitus, advised

monendus, to be
advised, desert-
ing to be advised*Fut.* monitum iri, to be about to
be advised

176. NOTE ON CONJUGATION

The use of stems is regular.¹

177. EXERCISE

1. Determine the stems of each verb in the vocabulary.
2. Write synopses of two of them, in different persons.

178. VOCABULARY

Ariovistus, ī, m., <i>Ariovistus</i> , a German king.	prōvideō, ēre, vīdī, visus, <i>fore-see</i> .
dō, ² dare, dedī, datus, <i>give</i> .	pūblicus, a, um, <i>public</i> ; rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae, f., <i>republic</i> , <i>state</i> .
Dumnorix, Dumnorix, m., <i>Dumnorix</i> , a Haeduan leader.	remaneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, <i>remain</i> .
frāter, frātris, m., <i>brother</i> .	respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsus, <i>answer</i> , <i>reply</i> .
grātia, ae, f., <i>influence</i> , <i>favor</i> .	ubi, <i>when</i> (conj.).
iniūria, ae, f., <i>injury</i> , <i>wrong</i> .	videō, ēre, vīdī, visus, <i>see</i> .
moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, <i>move</i> , <i>influence</i> , <i>excite</i> .	
prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus, <i>keep from</i> , <i>prevent</i> , <i>prohibit</i> , <i>stop</i> .	

179. EXERCISES

I

- | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| 1. Visus erat. | 9. Movēbar. |
| 2. Visa est. | 10. Praebita sunt. |
| 3. Visum est. | 11. Monitae erant. |
| 4. Auctum īrī. | 12. Vīsī erunt. |
| 5. Obtinērētur. | 13. Dēbēbātur. |
| 6. Praebeātur. | 14. Habērī. |
| 7. Monēminī. | 15. Habitus esse. |
| 8. Moneāminī. | 16. Prohibentor. |

¹ But see 164, 1, footnote.

² Dō is a first conjugation verb with irregular stems, — dā-, ded-, dāt-. The present stem, however, has -ā- in the forms dās, dāns, dā.

II

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. He is moved. | 9. They will be moved. |
| 2. To be moved. | 10. To have been possessed. |
| 3. Having been increased. | 11. It may be increased. |
| 4. They shall be moved. | 12. It may have been seen. |
| 5. He would have been seen. | 13. He may be prevented. |
| 6. It would be prohibited. | 14. She has been prevented. |
| 7. She has been seen. | 15. To be about to be seen. |
| 8. He had been warned. | 16. Be ye advised. |

III

1. Hanc ob causam castra ex eō locō movēbuntur.
 2. Ariovistus ad ōratiōnem Caesaris multa¹ respondisset, sed colloquium prohibitum est. 3. Dumnorix, frāter Dīviciāci, iam monitus erat. 4. Fremitus clāmōribus servōrum inermium augēbātur. 5. Nāvēs onerāriæ ā Gallis praebeantur! 6. Explōrātor, ab hostibus vīsus, in monte latēbat. 7. Altitudīne mūri Morinī castris prohibiti essent. 8. Magna grātia ā Dumnorige habēbātur. 9. Propter iniūriās rei pūblicae, Caesar in Galliā remanēre parābat. 10. Obsidēs ā Gallis Caesarī dati sunt. 11. Principēs Galliae inter sē coniūrant atque omnēs rēs ab eis prōvidēbuntur.

IV

1. One part of these regions was held by the Gauls.
 2. The enemy were excited by² the height of the tower.
 3. By whom were you seen? 4. What did you reply when these gifts were given to you? 5. When Caesar moved his camp, he was not seen by the enemy. 6. The danger of the republic ought to be foreseen. 7. Will not

¹ See 111, III, 3, footnote.

² Use no preposition to express "by," unless the ablative denotes the *agent*.

your brother be seen again? 8. I was greatly moved by these injuries which have annoyed you. 9. The enemy will easily be kept from supplies.¹ 10. On account of these causes, the baggage had been moved.

180. READING LESSON—THE MISER, I

Plūtus, vir avārus, parvam fossam parat, atque ibi multum argentum cēlat. Servus forte agrum arābat. Subitō latebrās nūdat spoliatque argentum. Postridiē dominō appāret fūrtum, nam avidis oculis thēsaurum suum saepe spectābat. Miser Plūtus terram et caelum querēlis implet. Mercurius, fīdus deōrum nūntius, subitō adest, et causam lacrimārum benignē postulat. Plūtus igitur malam fortunam ita nārrat.

¹ Ablative; use no preposition. Cf. III, 7.



CLYPEUS

LESSON XXX

THIRD CONJUGATION — ACTIVE VOICE

181. The Third Conjugation includes all regular verbs whose present stem ends in *-e*.

Regō, I rule

PRINCIPAL PARTS

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PARTICIPLE
regō	regere	rēxī	rēctus

Stems

Present, rege-	Perfect, rēx-	Supine, rēct-
----------------	---------------	---------------

Indicative Mood

SINGULAR

PLURAL

PRESENT TENSE

I rule

regō

regimus

regis

regitis

regit

regunt

IMPERFECT

I was ruling, or I ruled

regēbam

regēbāmus

regēbās

regēbātis

regēbat

regēbant

FUTURE

I shall rule

regam

regēmus

regēs

regētis

reget

regent

PERFECT

I have ruled, or I ruled

rēxī

rēximus

rēxisti

rēxistis

rēxit

rēxērunt, or -ēre

SINGULAR

PLURAL

PLUPERFECT

I had ruled

rēxeram
rēxerās
rēxerat

rēxerāmus
rēxerātis
rēxerant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have ruled

rēxerō
rēxeris
rēxerit

rēxerimus
rēxeritis
rēxerint

Subjunctive Mood

PRESENT

May I rule, let him rule

regam
regās
regat

regāmus
regātis
regant

IMPERFECT

I should rule, he would rule

regerem
regerēs
regeret

regerēmus
regerētis
regerent

• PERFECT

I may have ruled

rēxerim
rēxeris
rēxerit

rēxerimus
rēxeritis
rēxerint

PLUPERFECT

I should have ruled, he would have ruled

rēxissem
rēxisseās
rēxisset

rēxisseāmus
rēxisseātis
rēxisset

Imperative Mood

<i>Pres.</i>	rege, rule thou	regite, rule ye
<i>Fut.</i>	regitō, thou shalt rule	regitōte, ye shall rule
	regitō, he shall rule	reguntō, they shall rule

Infinitive

Participle

<i>Pres.</i>	regere, to rule	<i>Pres.</i>	regēna, ruling
<i>Perf.</i>	rēxisse, to have ruled		(Gen. regentis)
<i>Fut.</i>	rēctūrus esse, to be about to rule	<i>Fut.</i>	rēctūrus, about to rule

Gerund

Supine

<i>Gen.</i>	regendī, of ruling		
<i>Dat.</i>	regendō, for ruling		
<i>Acc.</i>	regendum, ruling	<i>Acc.</i>	rēctum, to rule
<i>Abl.</i>	regendō, by ruling	<i>Abl.</i>	rēctū, to rule, be ruled

182.

NOTES ON CONJUGATION

Variations occur in the final vowel of the present stem, as noted in 164, 1, footnote. Otherwise the use of stems is regular.

183.

EXERCISE

According to the principles of 164, determine the stems of each verb in the vocabulary, and write synopses of two in different persons.

184.

VOCABULARY

agō, ere, ēgī, āctus, drive, lead, bring up; grātiās agō, I return thanks.	dēserō, ere, serui, sertus, desert, abandon.
cōgō, ere, cōēgī, cōāctus, force; gather, collect.	dūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus, lead.
	emō, ere, ēmi, ēmptus, buy, purchase.

gerō, ere, gessi, gestus, <i>carry</i> ; <i>carry on, do, perform</i> ; bellum gerō, <i>I wage war.</i>	militāris, militāre, <i>military</i> ; rēs militāris, <i>the art of war,</i> <i>military affairs.</i>
litterae, ārum, f. pl., <i>letter, docu-</i> <i>ment.</i>	mittō, ere, misi, missus, <i>send.</i> praemittō, ere, misi, missus, <i>send ahead.</i>
mercātor, mercātōris, m., <i>trader,</i> <i>merchant.</i>	regō, ere, rēxi, rēctus, <i>rule.</i> servitūs, servitūtis, f., <i>slavery.</i>

185.

EXERCISES

I

- | | |
|--------------|-------------------|
| 1. Reget. | 9. Gessisse. |
| 2. Mittēbās. | 10. Āctūrus esse. |
| 3. Gerere. | 11. Ēmerant. |
| 4. Āctūrus. | 12. Agunt. |
| 5. Dēseruit. | 13. Dūcent. |
| 6. Dūcēns. | 14. Cōgite. |
| 7. Cōgendī. | 15. Mittuntō. |
| 8. Coāctum. | 16. Rēxerātis. |

II

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. He was ruling. | 9. They will drive. |
| 2. He has ruled. | 10. Of driving. |
| 3. He will rule. | 11. You had sent. |
| 4. I should have sent. | 12. To have bought. |
| 5. Sending. | 13. I had collected. |
| 6. We shall have led. | 14. We shall desert. |
| 7. Let them force. | 15. To have deserted. |
| 8. You have bought. | 16. You buy. |

III

1. Caesar ūnam cohortem cum explōrātōribus praemisit.
 2. Caesar ad senātum Rōmānum litterās misit. 3. Hel-
 vētiū quam maximum numerum carrōrum ēmerant.

4. Imperātōrem nostrum non dēseruissēmus. 5. Magistrātūs multitudīnem virōrum cōgant! 6. Helvētīi cum Germānis bellum saepissimē gerunt. 7. Legiō decima Caesari grātiās ēgit. 8. Num contrā hostēs legiōnem mitēs? 9. Prō rē publicā bellum gerāmus! 10. Num Dīviciācus propter iniūriās frātris Dumnorigis Rōmānōs dēseruit? 11. Hostēs trāns Rhēnum cōpiās suās dūxissent. 12. In servitūtem liberōs nostrōs dūcere nōn dēbētis. 13. Militēs ā mercātōribus multum frūmentum ēmerant. 14. Rēs militāris et virtūtem et cōnsilium postulat.

IV

1. The Romans have waged war with many nations. 2. After the battle, the soldiers were collecting the military standards. 3. Let the boys drive the horses to the river! 4. Will the chief lead his troops out of camp? 5. Send ahead as many scouts as possible. 6. I shall gather all the supplies into one place. 7. Will you buy these provisions? 8. We ought to return thanks to our fellow-citizens. 9. A merchant of Britain has sent a letter to me. 10. We should have purchased grain in the village.

186. READING LESSON—THE MISER, II

“Sum vir egēnus, tamen parvum thēsaurum habēbam; magnā cūrā pecūniam meam semper servābam. Nunc tamen nihil mihi manet.” At deus maestum viri animum mulcet et fossam saxīs implet. Tum Plūtum ita admonet: “Tū quidem argentum semper lūstrābās, nec unquam divitiās attrectābās. Avārō divitiae nōn prōsunt¹; saxa igitur locum argenti tibi supplēbunt.”

¹ Prōsunt = *benefit*.

LESSON XXXI

THIRD CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE

187.

REGŌ (Continued)

Indicative Mood

SINGULAR

PRESENT TENSE

I am ruled

PLURAL

regor

regimur

regeris, or -re

regimini

regitur

reguntur

IMPERFECT

I was ruled

regēbar

regēbāmur

regēbāris, or -re

regēbāmini

regēbātur

regēbantur

FUTURE

I shall be ruled

regar

regēmur

regēris, or -re

regēmini

regētur

regentur

PERFECT

I have been ruled, or I was ruled

rēctus sum

rēcti sumus

rēctus es

rēcti estis

rēctus est

rēcti sunt

PLUPERFECT

I had been ruled

rēctus eram

rēcti erāmus

rēctus erās

rēcti erātis

rēctus erat

rēcti erant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have been ruled

rēctus erō

rēcti erimus

rēctus eris

rēcti eritis

rēctus erit

rēcti erunt

Subjunctive Mood

SINGULAR

PLURAL

PRESENT

May I be ruled, let him be ruled

regar

regāmur

regāris, or -re

regāmini

regātur

regantur

IMPERFECT

I should be ruled, he would be ruled

regerer

regerēmur

regerēris, or -re

regerēmini

regerētur

regerentur

PERFECT

I may have been ruled

rēctus sim

rēcti simus

rēctus sis

rēcti sitis

rēctus sit

rēcti sint

PLUPERFECT

I should have been ruled, he would have been ruled

rēctus essem

rēcti essemus

rēctus essēs

rēcti essētis

rēctus esset

rēcti essent

Imperative Mood

Pres. regere, be thou ruled

regimini, be ye ruled

Fut. regitor, thou shalt be ruled

regitor, he shall be ruled

reguntor, they shall be ruled

Infinitive

Participle

*Pres. regī, to be ruled**Perf. rēctus esse, to have been ruled**Perf. rēctus, ruled**Fut. rēctum irī, to be about to be ruled**Gerundive regendus, to be ruled, deserving to be ruled*

188. NOTE ON CONJUGATION

The use of stems is regular, except the usual variations of the present stem vowel.

189. EXERCISES

Repeat the exercise of 183, for this lesson.

190. VOCABULARY

arcessō, ere, ivī, itus, <i>send for, summon.</i>	incolō, ere, colui, <i>inhabit, dwell.</i>
classis, classis, f., <i>fleet.</i>	nātūra, ae, f., <i>nature, character.</i>
dēdō, ere, dēdidī, dēditus, <i>give up, surrender.</i>	neque, nor, and . . . not; neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor (conj.).
dēfendō, ere, fendī, fēnsus, <i>ward off, defend.</i>	redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, <i>lead back.</i>
discēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, <i>leave, depart.</i>	vincō, ere, vicī, victus, <i>conquer.</i>
homō, hominis, c., <i>man, human being.</i>	vineā, ae, f., <i>shed (a shelter to protect a besieging party).</i>
incendō, ere, cendī, cēnsus, <i>burn, set fire to.</i>	

191. EXERCISES

I

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Arcessītus. | 9. Dūcuntor. |
| 2. Dēfendendus. | 10. Missi erunt. |
| 3. Incēnsus esse. | 11. Coācti estis. |
| 4. Cōgī. | 12. Dēserāminī. |
| 5. Redūcerentur. | 13. Ēmptum erat. |
| 6. Gestum erat. | 14. Agerētur. |
| 7. Gesta essent. | 15. Agī. |
| 8. Dēserēmur. | 16. Praemissus est. |

II

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. He is led. | 9. He had been led. |
| 2. We should be led. | 10. To be gathered. |
| 3. To be about to be forced. | 11. You have been deserted. |
| 4. He may be forced. | 12. You will be sent. |
| 5. To have been summoned. | 13. Be ye defended. |
| 6. He shall be defended. | 14. I should have been ruled. |
| 7. We may have been led. | 15. It may be burned. |
| 8. Having been surrendered. | 16. It has been burned. |

III

1. Quidam homō, quī erat mercātor, ā Caesare arcessitus est. 2. Liberī nostrī in servitūtem dūcī nōn dēbuērunt. 3. Helvētīi undique nātūrā loci dēfenduntur. 4. Ab incolis hūius oppidi omnia arma imperātōrī dēdita essent. 5. Explōrātōrēs praemissī castra hostium vidēbunt. 6. Helvētīi finibus suis discēdere coāctī sunt. 7. Vici atque reliqua aedificia incendantur! 8. Dux ā sociīs suis, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, dēsertus est. 9. Neque classe neque exercitū victī essēmus. 10. Num vineae ad mūrū agēbantur? 11. Multa bella contrā Germānōs gerentur.

IV

1. Let thanks be returned to the commander! 2. This letter ought to be sent to the Roman senate. 3. Messengers will be sent ahead concerning peace. 4. The troops will not be led back. 5. The arms would have been surrendered by all these captives. 6. Let the wall be defended by those auxiliaries. 7. On account of the storm, these ships have been compelled to remain in the harbor. 8. That building would have been burned

quickly. 9. In this island neither men nor animals dwell. 10. These nations will be conquered without difficulty.

192. READING LESSON—THE BROKEN DIKE, I

Cimbri miram terram habitant, nam oceanus tecta agrōsque agricolārum saepe inundat. Incolae fossis tumultisque magnis violentiam undarum coërcent; aliquandō tamen aqua claustra dēturbat et terram vāstat. Forte erat tumulus nōn validus; iam appāret parva rima; mox via magna patēbit et undae terram superābunt. At periculum videt puer parvus; statim dextrā rimam implet coërcetque aquam.



GALEAE

LESSON XXXII

FOURTH CONJUGATION — ACTIVE VOICE

193. The Fourth Conjugation includes all regular verbs whose present stem ends in -I.

Audiō, I hear

PRINCIPAL PARTS

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	PERF. PARTICIPLE
audiō	audire	audivī	auditus

Stems

Present, audi-	Perfect, audiv-	Supine, audit-
----------------	-----------------	----------------

Indicative Mood

SINGULAR	PLURAL
----------	--------

PRESENT TENSE

I hear

audiō	audimus
audis	auditis
audit	audiunt

IMPERFECT

I was hearing, or I heard

audiēbam	audiēbāmus
audiēbās	audiēbātis
audiēbat	audiēbant

FUTURE

I shall hear

audiam	audiēmus
audiēs	audiētis
audiet	audient

PERFECT

I have heard, or I heard

audivī	audivimus
audivistī	audivistis
audivit	audiverunt, or -ere

SINGULAR

PLURAL

PLUPERFECT

I had heard

audiveram

audiverāmus

audiverās

audiverātis

audiverat

audiverant .

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have heard

audiverō

audiverimus

audiveris

audiveritis

audiverit

audiverint

Subjunctive Mood

PRESENT

May I hear, let him hear

audiam

audiāmus

audiās

audiātis

audiat

audiant

IMPERFECT

I should hear, he would hear

audirem

audirēmus

audirēs

audirētis

audiret

audirent

PERFECT

I may have heard

audiverim

audiverimus

audiveris

audiveritis

audiverit

audiverint

PLUPERFECT

I should have heard, he would have heard

audivissem

audivissēmus

audivissēs

audivissētis

audivisset

audivissent

Imperative Mood

<i>Pres.</i> audi, <i>hear thou</i>	<i>audite, hear ye</i>
<i>Fut.</i> auditō, <i>thou shalt hear</i>	<i>auditōte, ye shall hear</i>
<i>auditō, he shall hear</i>	<i>audiuntō, they shall hear</i>

Infinitive

Participle

<i>Pres.</i> audire, <i>to hear</i>	<i>Pres.</i> audiēns, <i>hearing</i>
<i>Perf.</i> audivisse, <i>to have heard</i>	(Gen. audientis)
<i>Fut.</i> auditūrus esse, <i>to be about to hear</i>	<i>Fut.</i> auditūrus, <i>about to hear</i>

Gerund

Supine

<i>Gen.</i> audiendī, <i>of hearing</i>	
<i>Dat.</i> audiendō, <i>for hearing</i>	
<i>Acc.</i> audiendum, <i>hearing</i>	<i>Acc.</i> auditum, <i>to hear</i>
<i>Abl.</i> audiendō, <i>by hearing</i>	<i>Abl.</i> auditū, <i>to hear, be heard</i>

194. NOTES ON CONJUGATION

1. In this conjugation, the vowel *e* occurs after the final vowel of the present stem in the imperfect indicative (*ē*), in the gerund (*ē*), and present participle (*ē*). In the same way, the vowel *ū* occurs in the third person plural of the present indicative and of the future imperative.

2. Otherwise the use of stems is regular, except the usual variations of the present stem vowel.

195. EXERCISE

Repeat the exercise of 183, for this lesson.

196. VOCABULARY

<i>amicitia</i> , ae, f., <i>friendship</i> .	<i>callidus</i> , a, um, <i>shrewd, cunning</i> .
<i>audire</i> , ire, ivi, itus, <i>hear</i> .	<i>centuriō</i> , <i>centuriōnis</i> , m., <i>a centurion, commander of a division, or century</i> .
<i>barbarus</i> , i, m., <i>a barbarian, foreigner</i> .	

contendō, ere, tendī, tentus, <i>strive, struggle; hasten.</i>	impediō, ire, ivi, itus, <i>hinder.</i>
dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, <i>choose, select.</i>	mūniō, ire, ivi, itus, <i>fortify.</i>
dēsiliō, ire, siluī, sultus, <i>leap down.</i>	nēmō, m., <i>no one, nobody (dat., nēminī; acc., nēminem; other cases lacking).</i>
	veniō, ire, vēnī, ventūrus, <i>come.</i>

197.

EXERCISES

I

- | | |
|----------------|------------------|
| 1. Impediēbās. | 9. Mūnivissēs. |
| 2. Audivisse. | 10. Dēsiluērunt. |
| 3. Mūniāmus. | 11. Dēsiluerint. |
| 4. Mūniēmus. | 12. Impedīte. |
| 5. Dēsiliunt. | 13. Audiunt. |
| 6. Dēsilire. | 14. Audiuntō. |
| 7. Audiendō. | 15. Mūnirēmus. |
| 8. Ventūrus. | 16. Vēnerant. |

II

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. We have come. | 9. We had come. |
| 2. May he come. | 10. You will fortify. |
| 3. They would hinder. | 11. To hinder. |
| 4. To have fortified. | 12. To have hindered. |
| 5. By fortifying. | 13. We should have come. |
| 6. Hearing. | 14. About to leap down. |
| 7. Of hearing. | 15. We may have come. |
| 8. He will have hindered. | 16. To be about to come. |

III

1. Nēmō celerius quam Diviciācus vēnit. 2. Eī qui in superiōre locō sunt collem mūniant! 3. Centuriō legiōnis decimae ex nāvi dēsiluit atque militēs ad barbarōs dūxit. 4. Ubi civēs hōc audivērunt, discessērunt. 5. Nā-

tūra loci iter nostrorum impediēbat. 6. Contendite agere vineās! 7. Barbari neque fossā neque mūrō castra mūnivissent. 8. E gentibus finitimis magnam classem coēgimus. 9. Eōs venientēs¹ prohibēre dēbēmus. 10. Caesar quendam hominem et callidum² dēlēgit atque eum ad vicum misit. 11. Incolae hūius oppidi propter amicitiam frumentum ad Rōmānōs mittere contendērunt.

IV

1. The enemy stationed an ambush and hindered the march of our army. 2. Will you not fortify this place with a redoubt? 3. Many envoys have already come from neighboring states. 4. We shall hasten to buy supplies. 5. All the women heard the uproar and showed great fear. 6. Let us leap down from the wall and attack the enemy! 7. Do you hear the men coming³? 8. Let no one hinder me! 9. A wise leader would have fortified his camp. 10. Will the soldiers choose a centurion?

198. READING LESSON—THE BROKEN DIKE, II

Diū et cōstanter puer praesidium servābat. Iam rigēbant membra, at parva dextra aquam semper coērcēbat. Postridiē agricolae locō appropinquant. Puer frigidus et moribundus dextrā tamen aquam coērcet. Saxis tumultum celeriter cōfirmant, et limō rimam implent. Tum umeris puerum sublevant recreantque cibō. Cimbri tantam cōstantiam saepe commemorant, narrantque suis liberis pueri factum.

¹ Eōs venientēs, *those (who are) coming.*

² Quidam hominem et callidum, *a certain (and) cunning man.*

³ Compare III, 9.

LESSON XXXIII

FOURTH CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE

199.

AUDIŌ (Continued)

Indicative Mood

SINGULAR	PRESENT TENSE <i>I am heard</i>	PLURAL
audior		audimur
audiris, or -re		audimini
auditur		audiuntur
	IMPERFECT <i>I was heard</i>	
audiēbar		audiēbāmur
audiēbāris, or -re		audiēbāmini
audiēbātur		audiēbantur
	FUTURE <i>I shall be heard</i>	
audiar		audiēmur
audiēris, or -re		audiēmini
audiētur		audientur
	PERFECT <i>I have been heard, or I was heard</i>	
auditus sum		audītī sumus
auditus es		audītī estis
auditus est		audītī sunt
	PLUPERFECT <i>I had been heard</i>	
auditus eram		audītī erāmus
auditus erās		audītī erātis
auditus erat		audītī erant
	FUTURE PERFECT <i>I shall have been heard</i>	
auditus erō		audītī erimus
auditus eris		audītī eritis
auditus erit		audītī erunt

Subjunctive Mood**SINGULAR****PLURAL****PRESENT***May I be heard, let him be heard*

audiar

audiāmur

audiāris, or -re

audiāmini

audiātur

audiantur

IMPERFECT*I should be heard, he would be heard*

audīrer

audīrēmur

audīrēris, or -re

audīrēmini

audīrētur

audīrentur

PERFECT*I may have been heard*

audītus sim

auditi simus

audītus sis

auditi sitis

audītus sit

auditi sint

PLUPERFECT*I should have been heard, he would have been heard*

audītus essem

auditi essemus

audītus essēs

auditi essētis

audītus esset

auditi essent

Imperative Mood*Pres.* audire, be thou heard

audimini, be ye heard

Fut. auditor, thou shalt be
heard

auditor, he shall be heard

audiuntor, they shall be heard

Infinitive**Participle***Pres.* audiri, to be heard*Perf.* auditus esse, to have been
heard*Fut.* auditum iri, to be about to
be heard*Perf.* auditus, heard*Gerundive* audiendus, to be
heard, deserving
to be heard

200.

NOTES ON CONJUGATION

The vowel *e* is inserted, as in the active voice, in the imperfect indicative (ē), and the gerundive (ē). The vowel *ā* is inserted as in the active voice. Otherwise the use of stems is regular, except the usual variations of the present stem vowel.

201.

EXERCISE

Repeat the exercise of 183 for this lesson.

202.

VOCABULARY

<i>apertus</i> , a, um, <i>open, unprotected.</i>	<i>opus</i> , operis, n., <i>work; pl., works, fortification.</i>
<i>circumveniō</i> , ire, <i>vēnī</i> , ventus, <i>surround.</i>	<i>pecus</i> , pecoris, n., <i>herd, flock, cattle.</i>
<i>conveniō</i> , ire, <i>vēnī</i> , ventum, <i>come together, assemble.</i>	<i>reperiō</i> , ire, <i>repperī</i> , repertus, <i>find, discover.</i>
<i>eō</i> , <i>thither, there, to that place</i> (adv.).	<i>sciō</i> , ire, <i>scivī</i> , scītus, <i>know.</i>
<i>fortūna</i> , ae, f., <i>fortune, fate.</i>	<i>sentiō</i> , ire, <i>sēnsī</i> , sēnsus, <i>perceive, learn.</i>
<i>mors</i> , mortis, f., <i>death.</i>	<i>suspiciō</i> , suspiciōnis, f., <i>suspicion.</i>
<i>nihil</i> (indeclinable), <i>nothing.</i>	<i>vulnus</i> , vulneris, n., <i>wound.</i>

203.

EXERCISES

I

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| 1. Repertus esse. | 9. Audiendus. |
| 2. Sentirēmur. | 10. Repertus. |
| 3. Audiāris. | 11. Mūnitor. |
| 4. Impediēminī. | 12. Audiminī. |
| 5. Mūnitum erit. | 13. Sēnsus esset. |
| 6. Circumventi estis. | 14. Circumventus. |
| 7. Scirētur. | 15. Sciētur. |
| 8. Sēnsus iri. | 16. Sciātur. |

II

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. We are heard. | 9. He was surrounded. |
| 2. To be heard. | 10. It is known. |
| 3. He had been hindered. | 11. It may be known. |
| 4. Deserving to be hindered. | 12. You are hindered. |
| 5. We had been discovered. | 13. Having been perceived. |
| 6. It will be discovered. | 14. It would have been found. |
| 7. It had been fortified. | 15. It is fortified. |
| 8. To be perceived. | 16. He will be surrounded. |

III

1. Nostra commeātūs inopia nōn reperta esset. 2. Nōne haec sciēbantur? 3. Barbari ab¹ latere apertō circumventi sunt et multi vulnerāti sunt. 4. Ubi hae difficultātēs sēnsae sunt, omnēs celeriter convēnērunt. 5. Propter adventum hostium pecora ex agris ab agricolis agēbantur. 6. Ubi haec audientur, venient. 7. Fortūna melior reperiātur! 8. Opus erat difficillimum et propter multās causās impediēbātur. 9. Hae suspiciōnēs ā virō callidō sēnsae essent. 10. Incolae hūius vici, nihil sentientēs, circumventi sunt. 11. Ubi eō ventum est,² centuriō ad imperātōrem nūntium misit. 12. Militēs fortēs neque vulneribus neque morte perturbantur.

IV

1. Many herds were found in the fields. 2. That town was easily surrounded by our men. 3. Let no suspicion of fear be perceived! 4. Let the town be fortified and the attack of the enemy awaited. 5. All the envoys assembled from the neighboring states when the greatness

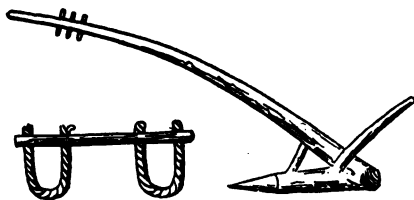
¹ Ab = on.² When it was come there; i.e. when they had come there.

of the danger was perceived. 6. No cause of his¹ death has been discovered. 7. Will his suspicions be discovered? 8. This fortification was surrounded quickly. 9. The march was hindered by the wounds of the soldiers. 10. Nothing was discovered by the scouts.

204. READING LESSON — THE PIPER'S SLAVE, I

Carolus, puer inhonestus, servus erat Clōdi, viri honesti. Clōdius erat fistulā perītus et canōris sonis amicōs saepe dēlectābat; at puer fistulam nōn amābat, sed saepe erat dominō molestus. Forte agricola, vicinus Clōdi, nūptiās filiae celebrat, vocatque et dominum et servum. Cēna erat cōpiōsa; mēnsa magnum cāseum vix sustinēbat; hic erant ōva, illic pōma; at porculus oculōs convīvārum praecipuē dēlectābat.

¹ *His death; i.e. the death of him.*



IUGUM ET ARATRUM

LESSON XXXIV

REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

205. In this lesson is given a review of the regular verbs of the four conjugations. The forms on the present stem should be compared and the differences carefully noted.

206. INFINITIVE ENDINGS

The conjugation to which a verb belongs may be told directly from the principal parts by the ending of the present infinitive, thus :

CONJUGATION I -**äre**

CONJUGATION II -**äre**

CONJUGATION III -**ere**

CONJUGATION IV -**ire**

207. EXERCISES

1. Review the present and future indicative and the present subjunctive of the four model verbs, in both voices.

2. Repeat the same exercise for the imperative, infinitives, and participles.

3. Review the meanings and principal parts of the verbs in the review list below, and determine to what conjugation each belongs.

4. Review the first and second conjugations entire, and review exercises I, II, in **147, 153, 160, 167, 173, 179.**

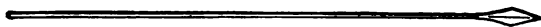
5. Review the third and fourth conjugations entire, and review exercises I, II, in **185, 191, 197, 203.**

6. Write synopses of several verbs in the review list, in both voices.

208.

REVIEW LIST OF VERBS

recūsō	arcessō	cōfirmō
mittō	contendō	collocō
armō	convocō	dēdō
augeō	circumveniō	dēligō
agō	comparō	dō
cōgō	coniūrō	dēbeō
conveniō	discēdō	dūcō
appropinquō	dēsiliō	dēfendō
dubitō	gerō	hiemō
emō	habeō	incitō
expugnō	incolō	incendō
dēserō	impediō	lateō
exspectō	laudō	mūniō
explōrō	moveō	occupō
oppugnō	obtimeō	portō
pugnō	pācō	praemittō
praebeō	prohibeō	prōvideō
prōpugnō	probō	parō
properō	postulō	perturbō
remaneō	respondeō	reperiō
reducō	spērō	sciō
superō	sentiō	temptō
transportō	vexō	vocō
vāstō	vulnerō	videō
vincō	veniō	



HASTA

LESSON XXXV

THIRD CONJUGATION — VERBS IN *ĭō*

209. 1. Verbs in *-ĭō* of the Third Conjugation have the present system like *audiō* chiefly. The following forms, however, are like *regō*:

- a. Present indicative* (except the first singular and third plural).
- b. Imperfect subjunctive.*
- c. Imperative* (except the third plural future).
- d. Present infinitive.*

2. Other forms, including the exceptions mentioned, are like *audiō*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	PERF. PARTICIPLE
<i>capĭō</i>	<i>capere</i>	<i>cēpī</i>	<i>captus</i>

Stems

Present, *capĭe-* (*cape-*) Perfect, *cēp-* Supine, *capt-*

ACTIVE VOICE

Indicative Subjunctive

PRESENT

<i>capĭō, I take</i>	<i>capĭam</i>
<i>capis, you take</i>	<i>capĭās</i>
<i>capit, he takes</i>	<i>capĭat</i>
<i>capimus</i>	<i>capĭāmus</i>
<i>capitis</i>	<i>capĭātis</i>
<i>capiunt</i>	<i>capĭant</i>

IMPERFECT

<i>capĭēbam</i>	<i>caperem</i>
-----------------	----------------

PASSIVE VOICE

Indicative Subjunctive

PRESENT

<i>capior</i>	<i>capiar</i>
<i>caperis (-re)</i>	<i>capĭāris (-re)</i>
<i>capitur</i>	<i>capĭātur</i>
<i>capimur</i>	<i>capĭāmur</i>
<i>capimini</i>	<i>capĭāmini</i>
<i>capiuntur</i>	<i>capĭantur</i>

IMPERFECT

<i>capĭēbar</i>	<i>caperer</i>
-----------------	----------------

FUTURE		FUTURE	
capiam		capiar	
capies		capieris (-re)	
capiet, etc.		capietur, etc.	
PERFECT		PERFECT	
cēpi	cēperim	captus sum	captus sim
PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
cēperam	cēpissem	captus eram	captus essem
FUTURE PERFECT		FUTURE PERFECT	
cēperō		captus erō	

Imperative

PRESENT		PRESENT	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
cape	capite	capere	capimini
FUTURE		FUTURE	
capitō	capitōte	capitor	———
capitō	capiuntō	capitor	capiuntor

Infinitive

<i>Pres.</i>	capere	capī
<i>Perf.</i>	cēpisse	captus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	captūrus esse	captum iri

Participles

<i>Pres.</i>	capiens, -ientis	<i>Perf.</i>	captus, -a, -um
<i>Fut.</i>	captūrus, -a, -um	<i>Gerundive</i>	capendus, -a, -um

Gerund

capiendī, -dō, -dum, -dō

Supine

captum, -tū

210.

NOTE ON CONJUGATION

Verbs in *-iō* of the third conjugation must be carefully distinguished from those in *-ō*. As has been noted in 209, 1, *d*, the ending of the present infinitive is the same in both. Review 206.

211.

VOCABULARY

capiō, ere, cēpī, captus, <i>take, capture, adopt.</i>	obsidiō, obsidiōnis, f., <i>siege.</i>
catēna, ae, f., <i>chain, bond.</i>	perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, <i>accomplish.</i>
coniciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, <i>throw together, hurl; put.</i>	quidem, <i>even</i> (adv.); nē . . . quidem, <i>not even.</i>
faciō, ere, fēcī, factus, <i>make, do.</i>	recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, <i>take back, receive; sē recipere, to retreat</i> (i.e. <i>take oneself back</i>).
iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus, <i>throw.</i>	suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, <i>undertake.</i>
incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, <i>begin.</i>	
lēgātiō, lēgātiōnis, f., <i>embassy.</i>	
litus, litoris, n., <i>shore.</i>	

212.

EXERCISES

I

- | | |
|------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Capere. | 11. Caperētur. |
| 2. Capī. | 12. Faciēns. |
| 3. Perficerem. | 13. Recipe. |
| 4. Iēcērunt. | 14. Susceptus esse. |
| 5. Incipiētur. | 15. Incipī. |
| 6. Mē recēpī. | 16. Caperēris. |
| 7. Tē recēpistī. | 17. Incēperās. |
| 8. Sē recēpit. | 18. Perfēcimus. |
| 9. Suscipiendī. | 19. Vōs recipite. |
| 10. Factūrus. | 20. Nōs recipiēmus. |

II

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. They undertake. | 7. You will retreat. |
| 2. Let us undertake. | 8. They had retreated. |
| 3. We have received. | 9. I shall have retreated. |
| 4. He would do. | 10. Thou mayest retreat. |
| 5. To have done. | 11. To be taken. |
| 6. We retreat. | 12. They may be taken. |

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 13. It was thrown. | 17. To have been begun. |
| 14. It will be undertaken. | 18. You would be taken. |
| 15. Having been received. | 19. About to throw. |
| 16. It has been accomplished. | 20. Deserving to be taken. |

III

1. Princeps Germānōrum lēgātōs Rōmānōs in catēnās coniēcīt. 2. Ubi explorātōrēs eō vērunt, nāvēs in apertō litore repperērunt. 3. Amicī meī litterās quās ad eōs mīsi nōn recēpērunt. 4. Tēla ē locō superiōre in nostrōs iaciēbantur. 5. Filius tuus negōtium sine difficultāte perficiet. 6. Is homō lēgatiōnem ad civitatēs finitimās suscēperat. 7. Barbari nē primum¹ quidem impetum exspectāverunt, sed statim sē recēpērunt. 8. Opus celeriter incipiātur! 9. Boni pueri nihil mali² facient. 10. Hōc oppidum ab exercitū nostrō obsidiōne longā captum est. 11. Propter suspiciōnēs magistrātuum nihil eārum rērum³ facile perfectum est. 12. Obsidiō huius oppidi sine timōre suscipiātur. 13. Vulnera hostium sunt gravissima atque sē recipiunt.

IV

1. This work will be very quickly accomplished. 2. Galba's letter was received before the arrival of his son-in-law. 3. That embassy would have been undertaken by my brother. 4. Let us begin the siege and capture the town. 5. Meanwhile our allies have begun to desert. 6. No one has accomplished this without great danger of death. 7. The enemy begin to throw

¹ The emphatic word is placed between *nē* and *quidem*.

² *Nihil malī*, nothing (of) evil.

³ *Nihil eārum rērum*, none of these things.

their javelins, and are defending themselves bravely. 8. I shall do this easily and quickly. 9. Let us throw the captives into chains. 10. Our men retreated to the shore.

213. READING LESSON—THE PIPER'S SLAVE, II

Convivae epulās cupidē expectant; mox splendide cēnābunt. Intereā saltant et dominus Caroli fistulā cantat. At puer avidis oculis mēnsam lūstrat et porculum videt. Raptim dextrā praedam tenet et frūstrā fugam tentat. Nam Clōdīus fugitīvum occupat; praedam recuperat; baculō tergum malī servī verberat. Inde Carolus maestus et ieiūnus malī facti poenās dat.



FOSSA ET VALLI

LESSON XXXVI

DEPONENT VERBS

214. 1. Deponent verbs are verbs that have *passive* forms and *active* meanings. They have, however, the following active forms :

- a. *The future infinitive* (in place of the passive).
- b. *The present and future participles.*
- c. *The gerund and supine.*

2. The meanings are regularly active, except the gerundive, which is always passive.

3. Deponent verbs of all conjugations are conjugated as regular passive verbs with the exception of the active forms noted above. The conjugation to which a verb belongs may be told by the ending of the present infinitive, thus :

CONJUGATION	I	-ārī
CONJUGATION	II	-ērī
CONJUGATION	III	-ī
CONJUGATION	IV	-irī

4. Below is given a synopsis of **vereor** (second conjugation); and of **sequor** (third conjugation). These verbs will serve as models for the conjugation of any deponent verb. Observe carefully the differences between a deponent verb as noted above and an ordinary passive verb, and give orally the complete forms for each tense where only the synopsis is given.

PRIN. PARTS: vereor, verēri, veritus sum

STEMS: ¹	Pres. verē-			Sup. verit-		
TENSES	Indic.	Subj.	Imper.	Infin.	Part.	Gerund(ive)
<i>Pres.</i>	vereor	verear	verēre ²	verēri	verēns	verendi ³
<i>Imp.</i>	verēbar	verērer				verendus ⁴
<i>Fut.</i>	verēbor		verētor ²	veritūrus esse	veritūrus	(Supine) veritum
<i>Perf.</i>	veritus sum	veritus sim		veritus esse	veritus	
<i>Plup.</i>	veritus eram	veritus essem				
<i>Fut. P.</i>	veritus erō		.			

PRIN. PARTS: sequor, sequi, secūtus sum

STEMS: ¹	Pres. seque-			Sup. secūt-		
TENSES	Indic.	Subj.	Imper.	Infin.	Part.	Gerund(ive)
<i>Pres.</i>	sequor	sequar	sequere ²	sequi	sequēns	sequendi ³
<i>Imp.</i>	sequēbar	sequerer				sequendus ⁴
<i>Fut.</i>	sequar		sequitor ²	secūtūrus esse	secūtūrus	(Supine) secūtum
<i>Perf.</i>	secūtus sum	secūtus sim		secūtus esse	secūtus	
<i>Plup.</i>	secūtus eram	secūtus essem				
<i>Fut. P.</i>	secūtus erō					

¹ Deponents, like regular passives, use no perfect stem. ² Second person.
³ Gerund. ⁴ Gerundive.

215.

EXERCISE

Determine the conjugation and stems of the verbs in the vocabulary, and write synopses of two of different conjugations.

216. ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENTS

RULE: *The deponents ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vescor govern the ablative.*

Scūt^r suō ūtitur, he uses his shield.

1. Note that the English equivalents of these verbs are transitive verbs, and govern a direct object.

217. VOCABULARY

cōnor, āri, ātus sum, *try, attempt.*

ēgredior, gredi, gressus sum,
march out, go out.

expellō, ere, puli, pulsus, *drive
out, expel.*

hortor, āri, ātus sum, *urge, en-
courage.*

lapis, lapidis, m., *stone.*

mōtus, ūs, m., *revolt.*

paulum, *a little (adv.).*

potior, iri, itus sum, *get posses-
sion of, obtain.*

proficiscor, i, fectus sum, *set out,
depart.*

sequor, i, secūtus sum, *follow ;
pursue.*

ūtor, i, ūsus sum, *use, employ.*

vereor, ēri, itus sum, *fear, be
afraid of.*

218. EXERCISES

I

1. Cōnāberis.

2. Potiri.

3. Verēbāmur.

4. Ūtimini.

5. Proficiscētur.

6. Ūsūrus esse.

7. Secūtus.

8. Sequendō.

9. Ēgredientur.

10. Hortāns.

11. Hortāti essent.

12. Secūtum.

13. Vereāmur.

14. Cōnābimini.

15. Ūsus esse.

16. Ēgrederēmur.

II

1. He got possession of.

2. To have attempted.

3. Let us pursue.

4. You will follow.

5. To set out.

6. Of fearing.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 7. Having urged. | 12. To be about to depart. |
| 8. About to encourage. | 13. To have obtained. |
| 9. We shall try. | 14. You may set out. |
| 10. They would have gone out. | 15. By pursuing. |
| 11. I should have used. | 16. You had used. |

III

1. Hostēs castris nostris potiri iam cōnāti erant.
 2. Ēgrediāmur ex arce et nōs dēdāmus. 3. Nostrī insidiās verēbantur atque dux eōs hortāri cōnābātur. 4. Germānī equis parvis ūtuntur. 5. Omnēs militēs nostrī magnitudinem silvārum verēbantur. 6. Hostēs ē castris suis, quae ad ripam Rhēni sunt, ēgredientur. 7. Hanc ob causam in finēs nostrōs proficiscāmur! 8. Eisdem condiōnibus ūtēmur. 9. Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, prōvinciā nostrā potiri spērābat. 10. Explōrātōrēs sē recipere cōnābantur sed altitudō flūminis eōs prohibēbat. 11. Incolae hūius regiōnis ē finibus suis expulsi erant. 12. Litora hūius flūminis explōrāre suscepissem. 13. Difficultātēs hūius negōti celeriter sentiēs. 14. Ubi ē prōvinciā tuā discessisti, officium tuum dēseruisti. 15. Litterae amīci mei mē magnopere hortantur.

IV

1. Set out from the village and we will follow you.
 2. Let this plan be adopted. 3. The embassy did not accomplish even this.¹ 4. Your allies are beginning to make a revolt. 5. The soldiers marched out a little from the redoubt. 6. Hope of great rewards encourages the citizens of that village. 7. All the inhabitants of the

¹ accomplished not this even.

town were throwing stones from the wall. 8. The grain which we were using has not been carried into camp. 9. Let that man who is following us be thrown into chains! 10. I shall try to set out at once.

219. READING LESSON—EARLY ITALY—AENEAS¹

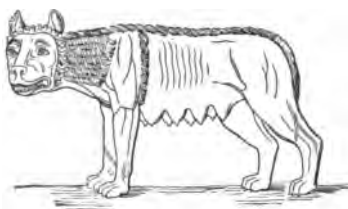
Antiquissimīs temporibus² Sāturnus in Ītaliā vēnit. Ibi haud procul ā Iāniculō arcem condidit. Haec urbs erat Sāturnia. In hōc locō Ītali agrī cultūram cognōvērunt.

Posteā Latinus in illis regiōnibus imperāvit. Sub hōc rēge, Trōia, urbs Asiae, ēversa est. Hinc Aenēās,³ cum multis Trōiānis in Ītaliā vēnit.

¹ In this and the following reading lessons, a brief account is given of legendary Rome. The notes following each selection will give such assistance as the pupil may require. New words will be found in the general vocabulary.

² Ablative; *in*.

³ First declension, nominative, ending in *-ās*, from the Greek.



LUPA

LESSON XXXVII

SYNTAX: THE GENITIVE CASE

220.

SYNTAX: MEANINGS

1. In studying the syntax, or grammatical use of the different cases and moods, it will be found that the meanings of the forms differ in some instances from the meanings learned in the paradigms. The usual meaning of the genitive case is *of*, but it is sometimes better translated by *for*. Such variations are shown in the translations of examples.

2. In translating the Latin exercises the pupil should classify the different constructions of syntax according to the rules given in the lessons.

221.

THE GENITIVE OF POSSESSION

RULE: *The genitive is used to denote the person or thing to which an object, action, or feeling belongs.*

Hortus rēgis, the king's garden (the garden of the king).

Imperium populi Rōmānī, the rule of the Roman people.

Orātiō Caesaris, Caesar's speech.

222.

PREDICATE GENITIVE OF POSSESSION

RULE: *The genitive of possession is often used to complete the predicate of a sentence, particularly with the verb sum.*

Hortus est rēgis, the garden is the king's.

223.

THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE (GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE)

RULE: *The genitive is used to denote the whole of which a part is taken.*

Pars equitum, part of the horsemen.

a. This genitive is very common with neuter pronouns and adjectives, such as **quid**, **quantum**, etc., and with **nihil** and **mīlia**.

Quid cōsiliī, *what plan?* (literally, *what of a plan?*)

Quantum pecūniae, *how much (of) money?*

Erat nihil reliquī, *there was nothing left* (literally, *nothing of a remainder*).

Duo mīlia passuum, *two thousand(s of) paces; two miles.*

224.

VOCABULARY

agger, aggeris, m., *rampart, embankment, dike.*

aquila, ae, f., *eagle; standard* (an eagle on a staff was the standard of the Roman legion).

beneficium, ī, n., *kindness, favor.*

cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus, *ascertain, learn, find out.*

conkursus, ūs, m., *running together, charge, attack.*

māter, mātris, f., *mother.*

passus, ūs, m., *pace* (about five feet).

pecūnia, ae, f., *money.*

pendō, ere, **pependī**, **pēnsus**, *pay.*

quantus, a, um, *how much?*

relinquō, ere, **liquī**, **lictus**, *leave, leave behind, abandon.*

repellō, ere, **reppulī**, **repulsus**, *drive back, repulse.*

satis, *enough* (adv. or indeclinable noun).

stipendium, ī, n., *tribute, tax.*

225.

EXERCISES

I

1. **Ūnus** pāgus **Helvētiōrum** **satis** stipendī **nōn** pendit.
2. **Hostēs** concursū militum nostrōrum repulsī sunt atque omnēs in partēs sē recēpērunt.
3. **Haec** pecūnia est mātris tuae.
4. **Quantum** frūmenti explorātōrēs repperērunt?
5. **Germānī** ad aggerem castrōrum lapidēs tēlaque iaciēbant.
6. **Tria** mīlia captivōrum in catēnās ā **Caesare** coniecta sunt.
7. **Cōsiliāne** amicōrum vestrōrum cognōvistis?
8. **Nihil** malī verēminī atque fortūnam meli-

orem spērāte ! 9. Quantum impedimentōrum est decimae legiōnis? 10. In amicitīā hārum nātiōnum remaneāmus ! 11. Beneficiō civium meōrum ūtar. 12. In litore maris nāvēs onerāriās relinquāmus. 13. Hī finēs sunt Helvētiōrum. 14. Lēgātiō Gallōrum pācem facere coācta esset. 15. Lēgāti ūnius gentis nihil eārum rērum fēcērunt.

II

1. Those roses are the little girl's. 2. The leader does not await the aid of even¹ his allies. 3. Two thousand horsemen are in the village. 4. What plan have you? 5. We have accomplished nothing good² by this siege. 6. Let us adopt the plan of Diviciacus and undertake the task. 7. Let no one of you³ reply! 8. Six thousand of the enemy were easily conquered. 9. Those ships are the enemy's. 10. How much tribute shall we be compelled to pay?

226. READING LESSON—AENEAS; ASCANIUS

Ibi Latīnus rēx eum benignē recēpit, atque ei filiam Lāviniam in mātirimōnium dedit. Aenēas urbem condidit, quae in honōrem coniugis appellāta est Lāvinium.

Post Aenēae mortem Ascanius, Aenēae filius, rēgnum accēpit. Hic sēdem rēgnī in alium locum mōvit, urbemque condidit in monte Albānō, eamque⁴ Albam Longam⁴ nūncupāvit.⁴

¹ See 212, III, 7, footnote. What is the emphatic word?

² Cf. I, 8.

³ *Vestrum*. The genitive plural of *ego* and *tū* ending in *-um* is used as a partitive genitive; the form in *-ī* is used as an objective genitive (see 228).

⁴ and called it *Alba Longa*.

LESSON XXXVIII

THE GENITIVE CASE (Continued)

227. THE GENITIVE OF QUALITY

RULE: *The genitive of a noun, when modified by an adjective, is used to express quality.*

Vir summae virtūtis, a man of the greatest valor.

a. With a numeral adjective the genitive of quality expresses measure.

Mūrus decem pedum, a wall of ten feet (in height).

228. THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

RULE: *The genitive is used to express the object of an action or feeling, implied or expressed.*

Timor Caesaris, fear of Caesar (the fear felt by some one toward Caesar).

Memoria hārum rērum, the memory of these things.

229. THE GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

RULE: *Adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, memory, fulness, power, sharing, guilt, and their opposites govern the genitive.*

Cupidus rēgni, desirous of the throne:

Imperitus iūris, inexperienced in law.

230. THE GENITIVE WITH CAUSĀ AND GRĀTIĀ

RULE: *The ablatives causā and grātiā, meaning "for the sake of," govern the genitive. The genitive precedes the ablative.*

Honōris causā, for the sake of honor.

231.

VOCABULARY

alacer, alacris, alacre, <i>eager.</i>	imperitus, a, um, <i>inexperienced,</i>
animus, i, m., <i>mind, heart,</i>	ignorant.
<i>courage.</i>	insignis, insigne, <i>prominent, re-</i>
causā, abl., <i>for the sake of.</i>	markable, unusual.
commūtātiō, commūtātiōnis, f.,	lacus, ¹ ūs, m., <i>lake.</i>
<i>change.</i>	peritus, a, um, <i>experienced,</i>
contumēlia, ae, f., <i>insult.</i>	skilled, having knowledge of.
deinde, <i>then, thereupon (adv.).</i>	pēs, pedis, m., <i>foot.</i>
grātiā, abl., <i>for the sake of.</i>	ūsus, ūs, m., <i>experience; advan-</i>
honor, honōris, m., <i>honor.</i>	tage, use.

232.

EXERCISES

I

1. Civēs hāc fortūnae commūtātiōne magnopere mōti sunt. 2. Mōns est mille passuum in altitūdinem. 3. Cōpia ex eā regiōne ēgredi cōnātae sunt, sed collibus magnae altitūdinis impeditae sunt. 4. Hic dux rei militāris peritissimus habēbatur. 5. Memoria hārum contumēliārum nōs perturbat. 6. Beneficia hūius modi laudāre dēbēmus. 7. Hostēs, cupidī victōriae, aquilā nostrā potiri fortiter cōnābantur. 8. Pācis grātiā vōbis satis stipendi pendēmus. 9. Haec rēs nōn minus ex ūsū² Galliae quam populī Rōmāni erat. 10. Multi viri pecūniae cupidī sunt. 11. Deinde militēs, hostēs paulum secūtī, in vicum sē recēpērunt, atque eum mūrō maximae altitūdinis mūnivērunt. 12. Patriae honōrisque causā hōc negōtium insigne suscipiēmus. 13. Mulier maximī animī erat māter vestra. 14. Nūllam nostrī³ memoriam habet.

¹ Dat. and abl. plural, lacubus. ² Ex ūsū, *of advantage, to the advantage (of).*

³ See 225, II, 7, footnote.

II

1. We have long feared a revolt of this kind. 2. Near the lake was a wall ten feet in height.¹ 3. These tribes were ignorant of war and were easily driven out from² their territory. 4. The hope of victory encouraged the eager soldiers. 5. We shall learn the cause of this difficulty. 6. Those soldiers who had set out for the sake of grain were left behind by the others. 7. The embankment of the camp is seven feet in height. 8. Dumnorix, brother of Diviciacus, was desirous of power. 9. Diviciacus was a man of the highest³ honor. 10. You have made a great change of affairs.

233. READING LESSON—THE ALBAN KINGS

Eum secūtus est Silvius quī post Aenēae mortem genitus erat. Eius⁴ posterī omnēs ūsque ad Rōmam conditam⁵ rēgnāvērunt.

Silvius Proca, rēx⁶ Albānōrum, duōs filiōs reliquit, Numitōrem⁶ et Amūlium. Ūnus ex hīs, Amūlius, frātrī suō Numitōrī paterna bona dedit et ipse rēgnum obtinuit.

¹ Cf. I, 2.² Use no preposition.³ *summus*, a, um.⁴ 221.⁵ *ad Rōmam conditam*, to Rome founded, i.e. until the founding of Rome. *Conditam* is the perfect participle.⁶ 17, 2.

CIRCUS ROMANUS

LESSON XXXIX

REVIEW OF THE GENITIVE; THE VERB *POSSUM*

234. EXERCISES

1. Review carefully the rules and examples of the genitive case.
2. Review vocabularies, 224, 231.
3. Review the conjugation of *sum*, 132, 136.

235. THE IRREGULAR VERB, *POSSUM*

The verb *possum*, *be able*, *can*, and a few other verbs, given in later lessons, are irregular, and belong to no conjugation.

PRINCIPAL PARTS

	PRES. INDIC.		PRES. INFIN.		PERF. INDIC.	
	possum		posse		potuī	
	Indicative		Subjunctive			
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL		
<i>Pres.</i>	possum	possumus	possim	possīmus		
	potes	potestis	possis	possītis		
	potest	possunt	possit	possint		
<i>Imp.</i>	poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus		
<i>Fut.</i>	poterō	poterimus	—	—		
<i>Perf.</i>	potuī	potuimus	potuerim	potuerīmus		
<i>Plup.</i>	potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus		
<i>Fut. P.</i>	potuerō	potuerimus	—	—		
	Infinitive					
	<i>Pres.</i>	posse	<i>Perf.</i>	potuisse		
	Participle					
	<i>Pres.</i>	potēns (adjective), <i>powerful.</i>				

236. NOTES ON CONJUGATION

This verb is a compound of **pot-** (for **potis**, *able*) and **sum**, and is mostly like **sum**. Note, however, the following changes :

1. The letter **t** becomes **s** before **s** ; as, **possum** for **potsum**.
2. The perfect tenses drop **f**, having **potui** for **potfui**.
3. The imperfect subjunctive and present infinitive are contract forms of **potessem**, **potesse**.
4. The verb lacks the imperative, future infinitive, and future participle.

237. VOCABULARY

absum , ¹ esse , āfui , āfutūrus , <i>be absent, distant.</i>	opportūnus , a , um , <i>fit, suitable.</i>
adsum , esse , fui , futūrus , <i>be present.</i>	oppugnātiō , oppugnātiōnis , f. , <i>assault.</i>
ascendō , ere , scendi , scēnsus , <i>ascend.</i>	plērique , aeque , aque , <i>most, most people, most things.</i>
fluō , ere , fluxi , fluxus , <i>flow.</i>	possum , posse , potui , <i>be able, can.</i>
Labiēnus , i , m. , <i>Labienus</i> , a <i>lieutenant of Caesar.</i>	retineō , ēre , ui , tentus , <i>retain ; maintain.</i>
opera , ae , f. , <i>assistance, aid.</i>	verbum , i , n. , <i>word.</i>
opiniō , opiniōnis , f. , <i>opinion, reputation.</i>	vōx , vōcis , f. , <i>voice.</i>

238. EXERCISES

I

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. Poterō. | 6. Āfuissent. |
| 2. Potuerint. | 7. Āfuerint. |
| 3. Potuisse. | 8. Aderās. |
| 4. Potuissem. | 9. Adesse. |
| 5. Poterunt. | 10. Posse. |

¹ This verb has a present participle **absēns**, *absent*.

- | | |
|----------------|---------------|
| 11. Potuerō. | 16. Āfutūrus. |
| 12. Potuerās. | 17. Aduisti. |
| 13. Possem. | 18. Aberō. |
| 14. Potuērunt. | 19. Aderam. |
| 15. Possim. | 20. Āfuisse. |

II

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Powerful. | 11. You are absent. |
| 2. You would be able. | 12. Absent. |
| 3. You would have been able. | 13. About to be absent. |
| 4. He may be able. | 14. You may be present. |
| 5. I had been able. | 15. He would be absent. |
| 6. We may be able. | 16. To be able. |
| 7. Let us be able. | 17. I should be able. |
| 8. He will be present. | 18. You will be able. |
| 9. To have been present. | 19. To have been able. |
| 10. Be thou present. | 20. May he be able! |

III

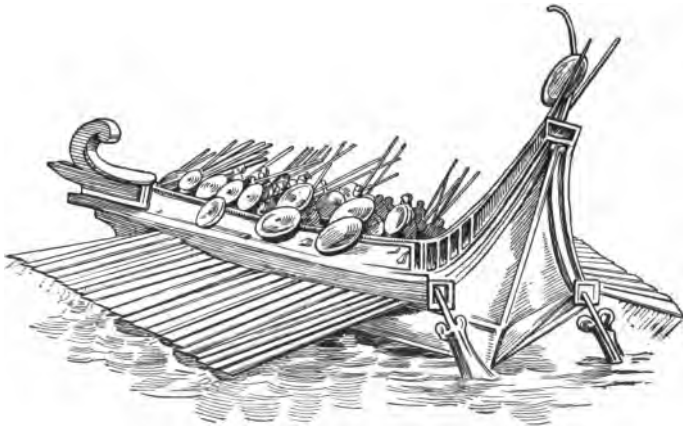
1. Summum iugum montis Labiēnus ascendere nōn potuisset. 2. Tempus oppugnātiōnī¹ arcis opportunissimum fuit. 3. Patriae causā hōc facere poterō. 4. Ā ripis Rhēnī longē absumus. 5. Propter hanc fortūnae commutātiōnem omnēs sunt miserī. 6. Haec pecora sunt Mārci, agricolae. 7. Mūrus ā quō barbarus dēsiliit erat magnae altitudinis. 8. Quid cōsili capere² poterimus? 9. Ūnum verbum cōsili satis est. 10. Hī virī sunt imperitī bellī, sed alacrēs. 11. Plērique memoriam hārum contumēliārum retinuissent. 12. Deinde hostēs superātī sē dēdidērunt. 13. Ei barbarī rei militāris perītī sunt atque magnam opiniōnem virtūtis habent.

¹ Dative; *for*.² *adopt*.

IV

1. Many of you were present. 2. Will you not be able to accomplish this for my sake?¹ 3. The voice of the commander summons us to the camp. 4. We were not able to foresee this unusual calamity. 5. A river nine feet deep² flows into this lake. 6. Let us maintain the honor of our state. 7. Part of the soldiers were present when we chose the leader. 8. We have been able to fortify this place with a rampart ten feet high. 9. A disaster of that kind cannot disturb us. 10. You have not sufficient experience.

¹ For my sake = for the sake of me. ² Nine feet deep = of nine feet in depth.



NAVIS BELLICA

LESSON XL

THE DATIVE CASE

239. THE SIMPLE INDIRECT OBJECT

RULE: *The dative of the indirect object is used with transitive verbs, in connection with the direct object, to denote the person to whom something is given, said, or done.*

Librum puerō dat, he gives a book to the boy.

240. INDIRECT OBJECT WITH SPECIAL VERBS

Some verbs, which in English are transitive and govern a direct object, in Latin are intransitive, and govern the dative of the indirect object.

RULE: *Many verbs meaning to favor, help, please, trust, and their opposites; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, govern the dative of the indirect object.*

Mihi cōnfidit, he trusts (to) me.

Tibi persuāsi, I persuaded you.

241. INDIRECT OBJECT WITH COMPOUNDS

RULE: *Many verbs compounded with the prepositions ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, and sometimes circum, govern the dative of the indirect object.*

Hostibus appropinquāmus, we are approaching the enemy.

1. Some of these verbs are transitive, and govern a direct object, along with the indirect.

Legiōni lēgātum praefēcit, he placed the lieutenant in command of the legion.

242. THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE

RULE: *The dative may be used to denote the purpose of an action, or that for which a thing serves.*

Equitēs subsidio mittit, he sends the cavalry as (literally, for) an aid.

NOTE: With this dative there often occurs another dative of the person affected.

Equitēs nobis subsidio mittit, he sends the cavalry as an aid to us.

Hoc nobis magno usui est, this is of (literally, for) great use to us.

243. VOCABULARY

cōfidō, ere, fīsus sum, trust *ōrdō, ordinis, m., rank, line, (semi-deponent¹). order.*

etiam, also, even (conj.). *persuādēō, ēre, suāsī, suāsus, persuade.*

faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautūrus, favor, be favorable to. *praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, place in command.*

noceō, ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, harm, injure. *praesum, esse, fui, be in command, in charge.*

novus, a, um, new; superlative, novissimus, last, rear; hence, resistō, ere, restitī, resist.

novissimum agmen, rear guard. *studeō, ēre, uī, be eager for, desire, favor.*

novae res, change of affairs, revolution. *supersum, esse, fui, futūrus, survive, remain.*

244. EXERCISES

I

1. Imperator ē vicō profectus est et incolis Labienū praefecit.
2. Equitēs impetui hostium resistere nōn potuissent.
3. Galba, fortis centuriō, ordinī primō praeerat.
4. Sociis nostris operam dēmus!
5. Obsidēs retinēbimus

¹ This verb is deponent in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses only.

et illi nōbis praesidiō erunt. 6. Collem ascendāmus atque castellō appropinquēmus! 7. Locum proeliō dēlēgimus atque hostēs statim circumvēnimus. 8. Plērique huic calamitāti nōn superfuissent. 9. Dumnorix hostibus nostris fāvit et novis rēbus studuit. 10. Amicis nostris, quōs amāmus, cōfidere poterimus. 11. Hae cōpiae etiam novissimō agminī erunt praesidiō. 12. Hostēs mulieribus liberisque nōn nocuērunt. 13. Cīvibus meis persuādere nōn potui. 14. Opiniō virtūtis sociōrum nostrōrum nōbis magnō ūsui est.

II

1. The barbarians are approaching the camp and the commander is not present. 2. The river flows very swiftly and its speed is of¹ great hindrance to ships. 3. To whom have you reported the words which you heard? 4. On account of our old friendship I will trust you. 5. How much grain will you give to each man? 6. I place Marcus in command of the cohort. 7. I attempted to persuade my friends, but they do not favor the plan. 8. I have reported the cause of this difficulty to your leader. 9. The leader was absent and was of¹ no assistance to us. 10. A good man is in charge of this task.

245. READING LESSON—THE CRIME OF AMULIUS

Amūlius rēgnum firmissimē possidēre cupīvit et Numitōris² filium igitur per insidiās interēmit et filiam frātris, Rheam Silviam, Vestālem virginem fēcit.³ Nam hae Vestae sacerdōtēs nūbere nōn poterant. Sed haec ā Mārte geminōs filiōs, Rōmulum et Remum, peperit. Hōc ubi Amūlius comperit, mātrem in vincula coniēcit, puerōs autem in Tiberim abiēcit.

¹ Not the genitive.² 221.³ . . . he made a Vestal virgin.

LESSON XLI

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS ; THE DATIVE (Continued)

246. THE ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

The first, or active periphrastic¹ conjugation is composed of the future active participle and various forms of the verb **sum**. It has the meaning *about to, going to, intend to ; as,*

Amātūrus est, he is about to love, he intends to love.

A synopsis of the complete conjugation is as follows :

Indicative

Pres. **amātūrus (-a, -um) sum, I am about to love.**

Imp. **amātūrus eram, I was about to love.**

Fut. **amātūrus erō, I shall be about to love.**

Perf. **amātūrus fui, I have been (was) about to love.**

Plup. **amātūrus fueram, I had been about to love.**

Fut. P. **amātūrus fuerō, I shall have been about to love.**

Subjunctive

Pres. **amātūrus sim, may I be about to love.**

Imp. **amātūrus essem, I should be about to love.**

Perf. **amātūrus fuerim, I may have been about to love.**

Plup. **amātūrus fuissem, I should have been about to love.**

Infinitive

Pres. **amātūrus esse, to be about to love.**

Perf. **amātūrus fuisse, to have been about to love.**

¹ The word *periphrastic* means *roundabout* ; hence a periphrastic expression is a roundabout way of saying a thing.

247. THE PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

The second, or passive, periphrastic conjugation is composed of the gerundive and various forms of the verb *sum*. It expresses the idea of necessity; as,

Monendus est, *he is to be advised, he must be advised* (literally, *he is deserving to be advised*).

A synopsis of the complete conjugation is as follows:

Indicative

Pres. **monendus** (-a, -um) **sum**, *I am to be advised, must be advised.*

Imp. **monendus eram**, *I was to be advised.*

Fut. **monendus erō**, *I shall deserve to be advised.*

Perf. **monendus fui**, *I was to be advised.*

Plup. **monendus fueram**, *I had deserved to be advised.*

Fut. P. **monendus fuerō**, *I shall have deserved to be advised.*

Subjunctive

Pres. **monendus sim**, *may I deserve to be advised.*

Imp. **monendus essem**, *I should deserve to be advised.*

Perf. **monendus fuerim**, *I may have deserved to be advised.*

Plup. **monendus fuissem**, *I should have deserved to be advised.*

Infinitive

Pres. **monendus esse**, *to deserve to be advised.*

Perf. **monendus fuisse**, *to have deserved to be advised.*

248. THE DATIVE OF AGENCY

RULE: *With the passive periphrastic, the agent is expressed by the dative.*

Mihi pugnandum est, *I must fight* (literally, *it must be fought by me, it is for me to fight*).

1. The literal translation of this construction is so awkward, that it is usually better to turn the whole expression into the active in English.

249. THE DATIVE OF POSSESSION

RULE: *With the verb sum, the dative is used to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject.*

Agricolae est servus, the farmer has a slave (literally, to the farmer is a slave).

250. THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

RULE: *Adjectives meaning fit, near, like, friendly, equal, pleasing, and the like, with their opposites, govern the dative.*

Germānis proximī sunt, they are nearest to the Germans.

Hic collis castellō idōneus est, this hill is suitable for a fort.

251. VOCABULARY

aestus, ūs, m., <i>tide.</i>	pār, pār, gen. paris, <i>equal, a match for.</i>
āmittō, ere, misi, missus, <i>lose; let go.</i>	pōnō, ere, posui, positus, <i>put, place, establish.</i>
aptus, a, um, <i>fit, suitable, adapted.</i>	praesertim, <i>especially (adv.).</i>
conventus, ūs, m., <i>meeting, assembly.</i>	praeter, prep. gov. acc., <i>besides, except.</i>
nāvigō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>sail, navigate.</i>	quod, <i>because (conj.).</i>
Ōceanus, ī, m., <i>the ocean (Atlantic).</i>	revocō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>recall.</i>
	solum, ī, n., <i>soil, ground.</i>
	trādō, ere, trādidī, trāditus, <i>deliver, give up, hand over.</i>

252. EXERCISES

I

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. Missūrus est.</p> <p>2. Laudanda est.</p> <p>3. Visūrī fuimus.</p> <p>4. Mūnitūrus esse.</p> <p>5. Factūrus fuisset.</p> | <p>6. Resistendum est.</p> <p>7. Dūcendī erant.</p> <p>8. Actūrus fuerat.</p> <p>9. Dēditūrī sumus.</p> <p>10. Capiendum erat.</p> |
|--|--|

II

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. I was about to deliver. | 6. She must be advised. |
| 2. It must be delivered. | 7. I am about to establish. |
| 3. They must be called. | 8. To deserve to be loved. |
| 4. We had been about to sur-
render. | 9. You were about to advise. |
| 5. You were about to sail. | 10. They have been about to
hand over. |

III

1. Caesarī signum tubā dandum erat. 2. Barbari etiam his sociis populi Rōmāni amicī sunt. 3. Nōne hōs captivōs āmissūrī estis? 4. Obsidēs hostibus trādendī sunt. 5. Haeduīs praeter solum agrī erat nihil reliquī. 6. Mārcō sunt duae filiae. 7. Militēs duci revocandī sunt. 8. Hostēs collem ascēnsūrī erant, sed concursus militum eōs repellēbat. 9. Hōc oppidum praesertim aptum conventuī sociōrum nostrōrum est. 10. Trāns Ōceanum ad Britanniam nāvigātūrī fuerāmus. 11. Cōpiās nostrās in castra reductūrī sumus, quod is locus proeliō nōn aptus est. 12. Hostēs exercituī nostrō parēs paene esse potuērunt. 13. Ad hōc flūmen Caesar castellum positūrus fuit. 14. Aestūs Ōceani nāvibus nostris apti nōn sunt. 15. Huic agricolae sunt agrī feracēs. 16. Nōbis in vicum conveniendum fuit.

IV

1. I am about to persuade that man. 2. A good man has many friends.¹ 3. These buildings must not be burned by the barbarians. 4. These nations dwell in hither Gaul, and are very near (to) the province. 5. All things were to be done by Caesar immediately. 6. This harbor is adapted to our ships. 7. This tribe has vil-

¹ What is the exact English equivalent of the Latin ?

lages on each bank¹ of the Rhine.² 8. The leader must station the line of battle.² 9. The cavalry are about to follow the enemy. 10. You must accomplish this task quickly, because it is not difficult.²

253. READING LESSON—RESCUE OF ROMULUS AND REMUS

Forte Tiberis aqua ultrā ripam sē effūderat et, quod³ pueri in vadō erant positi, aqua refluēns⁴ eōs in siccō reliquit. Ad eōrum vāgītum lupa accurrit, eōsque ūberibus suis aluit. Quod⁵ vidēns Faustus quidam, pāstor illius regiōnis, puerōs sustulit,⁶ et uxōrī⁷ suae dedit.

¹ On each bank, *ad utramque ripam*.

² What is the exact English equivalent of the Latin ?

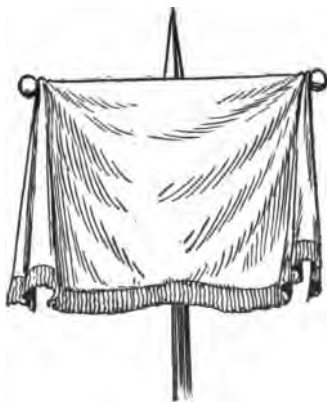
³ Not the relative, but the conjunction; *because*.

⁴ Present participle.

⁵ *This*. A relative standing first in the sentence often has the force of a demonstrative in English.

⁶ From *tollō*.

⁷ 239.



VEXILLUM

LESSON XLII

THE ACCUSATIVE CASE

254. DIRECT OBJECT AND PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE

The accusative, as has been learned, is the case of the direct object. After certain verbs, there is often found a second accusative, referring to the same person or thing as the direct object, but not in apposition to it. This second accusative is known as the *predicate accusative*. It may be either a noun or an adjective.

RULE: *Verbs of making, choosing, calling, naming, and the like may take a predicate accusative, along with the direct object.*

Caesarem cōnsulem creant, they elect Caesar consul.

Eum certiōrem faciunt, they inform him (literally, they make him more certain).

1. This construction may be changed to the passive voice; in that case, *the object becomes the subject, and the predicate accusative becomes a predicate nominative.*

Caesar cōsul creātur, Caesar is elected consul.

255. THE ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE

RULE: *The accusative is used to express duration of time and extent of space.*

Trēs diēs morātur, he delays three days.

Decem milia passuum secūti sunt, they followed ten miles (literally, ten thousands of paces).

256. SUBJECT OF THE INFINITIVE

RULE: *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative case.*

Lēgātōs discēdere iubet, he orders the envoys to depart.

257.

VOCABULARY

annus, i, m., <i>year.</i>	<i>command.</i>
appellō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>call, name.</i>	maneō, ēre, mānsi, mānsurus,
certus, a, um, <i>certain, sure.</i>	<i>stay, remain.</i>
cōstituō, ere, uī, ūtus, <i>resolve,</i>	mēnsis, mēnsis, m., <i>month.</i>
<i>decide.</i>	moror, āri, ātus sum, <i>delay,</i>
creō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>elect, choose.</i>	<i>linger.</i>
Genava, ae, f., <i>Geneva.</i>	teneō, ēre, uī, tentus, <i>hold,</i>
hōra, ae, f., <i>hour.</i>	<i>keep.</i>
iubeō, ēre, iussi, iussus, <i>order,</i>	vetō, āre, vetui, vetitus, <i>forbid.</i>

258.

EXERCISES

I

1. Imperātor iussit militēs ē castris ēgredi. 2. In Britannīā trēs mēnsis manēre cōstituimus. 3. Verba principis barbarōs ad proelium alacrēs faciunt. 4. Helvētiī hōc oppidum Genavam appellāvērunt. 5. Hōc oppidum ab Helvētiis Genava appellātum est. 6. Hōc flūmen per Galliam centum milia passuum fluit. 7. Imperātor militēs oppugnātiōnem facere vetuit. 8. Quem populus Rōmānus cōsulem creābit? 9. Fortūna mala nōs in vicō multās hōrās morārī coēgit. 10. Mārcus ē prōvinciā revocābitur, atque cōsul creābitur. 11. Labiēnus Caesarem certiōrem dē his rēbus fēcit. 12. Castellum quattuor hōrās tenuimus, sed hostēs nōs discēdere coēgērunt. 13. Caesar in Galliā paene decem annōs manēbat. 14. Nōnne eōs certiōrēs dē hōc negōtiō faciētis? 15. Haec fossa fuit lāta decem pedēs.

II

1. The senate ordered the commander to retain the hostages. 2. I have awaited you two hours. 3. I shall

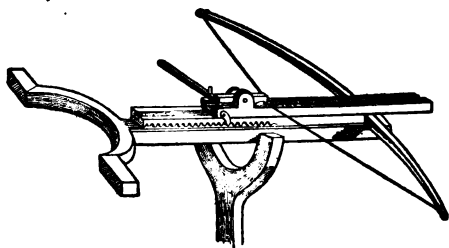
inform you concerning those tribes of barbarians. 4. The soldiers will choose Galba (as) commander. 5. The camp of the enemy was distant two miles. 6. Who will be elected consul by the Roman people?¹ 7. Caesar ordered the cavalry to sail to Britain. 8. Is not this boy named Marcus? 9. This rampart is six feet high.² 10. The envoys are present and will remain a few days.

259. READING LESSON—THE FOUNDING OF ROME

Sic Rōmulus et Remus pueritiam inter pāstōrēs trānsēgērunt. Ubi adolēvērunt et forte dē avō suō et dē mātrem comperērunt, Amūlium interfēcērunt et Numitōri³ avō rēgnum restituērunt. Tum urbem condidērunt in monte Aventinō, quam⁴ Rōmulus ā suō nōmine Rōmam⁴ vocāvit. Haec ubi moenibus circumdata est, Remus occisus est quod, frātre irridēns,⁵ moenia trānsiluit.

¹ Cf. I, 8. ² Cf. I, 15. ³ 239. ⁴ 254.

⁵ Present participle, modifying *Remus*.



SCORPIO

LESSON XLIII

REVIEW OF THE DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE; *FIŌ*

260.

EXERCISE

1. Review the rules and examples of the dative and accusative cases in the last three lessons.
2. Review the periphrastic conjugations, 246, 247.

261.

CONJUGATION OF *FIŌ*

FIŌ, be made, be done, happen, occur

PRINCIPAL PARTS

	PRES. INDIC.		PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	
	<i>fiŏ</i>		<i>fieri</i>	<i>factus sum</i>	
	Indicative		Subjunctive	Imperative	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL		SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>fiŏ</i>	—	<i>fiam</i>	<i>fi</i>	<i>fite</i>
	<i>fīs</i>	—			
	<i>fit</i>	<i>fiunt</i>			
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>fiēbam</i>		<i>fierem</i>		
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>fiam, fiēs, etc.</i>		—		
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>factus sum</i>		<i>factus sim</i>		
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>factus eram</i>		<i>factus essem</i>		
<i>Fut. P.</i>	<i>factus erō</i>				
	Infinitive		Participles		
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>fieri</i>		<i>Ger. faciendus</i>		
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>factus esse</i>		<i>Perf. factus</i>		
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>factum iri</i>				

262.**NOTES ON CONJUGATION**

1. **Fiō** supplies the passive of **faciō**, which has no regular passive.

2. Note that the first three tenses, except the infinitive, are active in form.

263.**EXERCISES**

1. Observe the active and passive forms of the following expression :

ACTIVE : *Caesarem certiōrem faciunt, they inform Caesar* (literally, *make Caesar more certain*).

PASSIVE : *Caesar certior fit, Caesar is informed* (literally, *is made more certain*).

This change follows the regular rule, **254**, 1. Explain it.

2. Learn the meaning of **fiō**, and review vocabularies, **243**, **251**, **257**.

264.**EXERCISES****I**

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. Factum erat. | 6. Facta essent. |
| 2. Fieri. | 7. Fiunt. |
| 3. Fierem. | 8. Fiet. |
| 4. Faciendus. | 9. Factum sit. |
| 5. Fite. | 10. Factus esse. |

II

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. It has happened. | 7. It may happen. |
| 2. To be about to occur. | 8. To occur. |
| 3. Having been done. | 9. It will have been done. |
| 4. You will be made leader. | 10. These things have happened. |
| 5. It would have occurred. | |
| 6. You ought to be made leader. | |

III

1. Tibi multōs annōs cōfidere nōn potui. 2. Solum hōrum agrōrum frūmentō aptum est. 3. Nōne tū dux fiēs? 4. Populus tē cōsulem creātūrus est. 5. Hostibus hī captivī nōbis nōn trādendī sunt. 6. In Britannīa paucōs mēnsis morātūrī sumus, praesertim quod tempus anni est opportūnum. 7. Primō ordinī est fortis centuriō, quī omnibus militibus praeest. 8. Omnēs nāvēs praeter ūnam proeliō superfuērunt. 9. Hanc ob causam conventus fiet atque vōcēs omnium audientur. 10. Novis rēbus studēmus, sed incolīs nōn nocēbimus. 11. Ūnam cohortem tenēre montem iussit. 12. Hīs barbaris fortibus nē deī quidem parēs esse possunt. 13. Locus castris nostrīs nōbis dēligendus est. 14. Incolae hūius regiōnis Caesarem certiōrem dē aestū Oceanī facient. 15. Iubeāmus militēs in illō colle castellum pōnere.

IV

1. The chief of these tribes was not informed concerning this difficulty. 2. This river is six miles away from our territory. 3. We have decided to forbid him to remain one hour in this village. 4. Most people would have attempted to persuade me. 5. You have been made leader, and we shall place you in command of the whole army. 6. These conditions are adapted to our customs. 7. The Roman people call all the inhabitants of this region Gauls. 8. This opportunity we must¹ not lose. 9. On account of their loyalty we intend² to give rewards to these allies. 10. All men have good friends. 11. These auxiliaries will be of great assistance to us.

¹ Express by the passive periphrastic.

² Express by the active periphrastic.

LESSON XLIV

THE ABLATIVE CASE

265. THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

RULE: *Words denoting separation, privation, and the like, govern the ablative, with or without a preposition.*

Rhēnus Galliam à Germāniā dividit, the Rhine divides Gaul from Germany.

Eōs commeātū prohibuit, he kept them from supplies.

266. THE ABLATIVE OF AGENT

This construction has already been given; review 158.

267. THE ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

RULE: *The ablative is often used with comparatives in the sense of than.*

Turris altior est mūrō, the tower is higher than the wall.

NOTE: This construction is used only when the first of the things compared is in the nominative or accusative. Otherwise the construction with *quam, than*, must be used. Review 77, 2.

268. THE ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

RULE: *After comparatives and words suggesting comparison, the ablative is used to express the amount, or degree, of difference.*

Turris altior centum pedibus est mūrō, the tower is a hundred feet higher (literally, higher by a hundred feet) than the wall.

NOTE: Be careful to distinguish this use of the ablative and the ablative of comparison.

269.

VOCABULARY

aliquot, <i>some, several</i> (indeclinable adjective).	<i>cut off, shut off.</i>
ante, <i>before</i> (adv.).	interficiō, ere, feci, fectus, <i>kill.</i>
dēfēnsor, dēfēnsōris, m., <i>defender.</i>	maleficium, i, n., <i>mischievous, harm.</i>
dēsistō, ere, dēstiti, <i>cease, stop, leave off.</i>	multō, <i>by much, much</i> (abl. of multus).
dividō, ere, visi, visus, <i>divide, separate.</i>	nox, noctis, f., <i>night.</i>
expeditus, a, um, <i>easy, practicable.</i>	nūdō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>make bare, strip, leave unprotected.</i>
intercludō, ere, clūsi, clūsus,	Rōma, ae, f., <i>Rome.</i>
	temperō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>refrain, keep from.</i>

270.

EXERCISES

I

1. Alterum iter est multō facilius et expeditius. 2. Rē frumentariā nōs intercludere nōn poterunt. 3. Num Galli Germānis fortiōrēs sunt? 4. Rōma multō māior est Genavā. 5. Caesar dē his proeliis equestribus ā Labiēnō certior factus est. 6. Imperātōri nostrō multa ab explorātōribus nūntiāta sunt. 7. Hōc oppidum milibus passuum tribus abest. 8. Hōc negotiō multō¹ ante dēstitimus. 9. Lapidēs ā nostris iaciēbantur et mūrus dēfēnsōribus celerrimē nūdātus est. 10. Hī viri ab iniuriā et maleficiō temperābunt. 11. Mūrus oppidi altior est vāllō castrōrum. 12. Oppidum mūrō altiōri quam hōc vāllō mūnīre dēbēmus. 13. Nōne hī barbari finibus nostris ā militibus rei pūblicae prohibēri possunt? 14. Aliquot ante mēnsibus in Britannia fuerat. 15. Flūmen Rhēnus agrōs Helvētiōrum ā Germānis dividit. 16. Nōne noctēs longiōrēs sunt diēbus?

¹ Before by much; i.e. a long while ago.

II

1. Ariovistus, the king of the Germans, had expelled many Gauls from their territory. 2. A river longer than the Rhine¹ divides that province from the barbarians. 3. All the hostages will be killed by the enemy. 4. On account of lack of grain peace will be made by the chiefs of those tribes. 5. This road is much shorter than that.¹ 6. Several years before these nations had conspired against us. 7. We shall cut the scouts off from their camp. 8. These men are more powerful² than the magistrates¹ themselves. 9. The fields of Italy are more fertile than those.¹ 10. That disaster occurred many years before.

271. READING LESSON—THE ROMANS SECURE WIVES

Rōmulus cīvium numerum augēre cupivit et asȳlum igitur patefēcit, ad quod multī ex civitatibus suis pulsī³ accurrērunt. Sed novae urbis civibus⁴ coniugēs deerant. Fēstum itaque Neptūnī et lūdōs instituit. Ad hōs multi ex finitimis populis cum mulieribus et liberis vērērunt, et tum inter ipsōs lūdōs spectantēs⁵ virginēs Rōmānī rapuērunt.

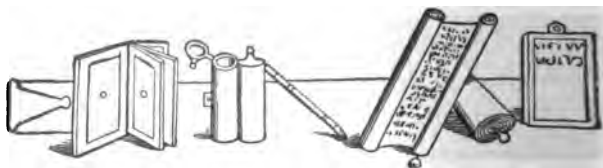
¹ Translate in two ways.

² *Are more powerful, plūs possunt.*

³ *pulsī* = perfect participle, modifying *multi*.

⁴ *civibus* = dative; see 249.

⁵ *spectantēs* = present participle, modifying *virginēs*.



ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS

LESSON XLV

THE ABLATIVE CASE (Continued)

272. THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

RULE: *The ablative is used to express cause.*

Periculi timōre discessērunt, they departed because of (from) fear of danger.

273. THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS

RULE: *The ablative is used to express the means or instrument of an action.*

Oppidum mūrō mūniunt, they fortify the town by means of a wall (literally, with a wall).

274. THE ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENTS

This construction has already been given ; review 216.

275. THE ABLATIVE OF MANNER

RULE: *The ablative with cum is used to express the manner of an action. Cum may be omitted if the ablative is modified by an adjective.*

Cum celeritāte vēnit, he came with speed.

Magnā (cum) celeritāte vēnit, he came with great speed.

276. THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

RULE: *The ablative with cum is used to express accompaniment. Cum may be omitted in military expressions when the ablative is modified by an adjective (except numeral adjectives).*

Cum cōpiis vēnit, he came with the troops.

Omnibus cōpiis vēnit, he came with all the troops.

Cum tribus legiōnibus, with three legions.

277.

VOCABULARY

afficiō, ere, fēci, fectus, affect,	<i>draw up, arrange; equip, fit out.</i>
<i>afflict.</i>	
aqua, ae, f., water.	iuvō, āre, iūvi, iūtus, help, aid.
colloquor, loqui, locūtus sum,	perterreō, ēre, ui, itus, frighten,
<i>speak with, confer.</i>	<i>terrify.</i>
cupiditās, cupiditātis, f., desire.	revertō, ere, verti, versus, return,
discessus, ūs, m., departure.	<i>go back. (Usually deponent</i>
fugiō, ere, fugi, fugitūrus, flee.	<i>in the present, imperfect,</i>
inducō, ere, dūxi, ductus, lead on,	<i>and future.)</i>
<i>influence, induce.</i>	supplicium, i, n., punishment.
instruō, ere, struxi, strūctus,	<i>torture.</i>

278.

EXERCISES

I

1. Imperātor nāvēs suās omnibus rēbus instruet.
2. Dumnorix, rēgni cupiditāte inductus, novis rēbus studuit.
3. Germāni ferī Rōmā potiri spērāvērunt.
4. Multae rēs pecūniā obtinēri possunt.
5. Itinere expeditō Caesar cum equitātū profectus est.
6. Summā difficultāte hōc negōtium perfēci.
7. Haec summō cum studiō facta sunt.
8. Obsidēs magnō suppliciō affecti sunt.
9. Hominēs ūnius pāgi, timōre perterriti, ad Rhēnum contendērunt.
10. Hostēs discessū lēgātōrum Rōmānōrum perturbāti erant.
11. Caesar vetuit hās gentēs frūmentō hostēs iuvāre.
12. Aliquot annis ante nāvibus hūius modi ūtēbāmur.
13. Helvētii repentinō ēius adventū perterrēbantur et aciem instruere nōn poterant.
14. Cum quārtā legiōne Labiēnus montem ascendit.

II

1. Let us confer with our friends concerning this difficulty.
2. Those captives were influenced by hope.

safety and fled with¹ great speed. 3. Because of lack of water and supplies, the enemy returned to their (own) territory. 4. Let us fortify the camp by means of a rampart and a trench. 5. With¹ all the soldiers they attacked the town. 6. By the aid of our allies we hope to cut off the Helvetians from supplies. 7. The cavalry followed the enemy with¹ great eagerness (during) the whole night. 8. We have ceased to use that fleet. 9. The defenders of the redoubt were conferring with the envoys of the Romans. 10. The enemy set out with¹ no definite² order, and many were killed.

279. READING LESSON—THE STORY OF TARPEIA

Populi illi, quōrum virginēs raptāe erant, bellum adversus raptōrēs suscēpērunt. Virgō, Tarpēia, eīs³ viam in arcem mōnstrāvīt, sed mūnus sibi⁴ poposcit. Petiit ab eīs quod⁵ in sinistris manibus gerēbant, ānulōs aureōs et armillās significāns⁶. At hostēs, in arcem ab eā⁷ perductī,⁸ scūtīs⁹ Tarpēiam obruērunt; nam et¹⁰ haec in sinistris manibus gerēbant.

¹ Is **cum** necessary?

² **certus**, a, um.

³ 239.

⁴ **sibi** = for herself.

⁵ **quod**, relative, object of **gerēbant** = what.

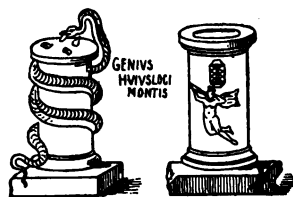
⁶ Participle, agreeing with the subject.

⁷ 266.

⁸ Participle, modifying **hostēs**.

⁹ 273.

¹⁰ **et** = also.



ARAE

LESSON XLVI

THE ABLATIVE CASE (Continued)

280. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

RULE: *The ablative is used to express in what respect something is true.*

Gallōs virtūte superāmus, *we surpass the Gauls in (respect to) valor.*

281. THE ABLATIVE OF QUALITY

RULE: *The ablative, modified by an adjective, is used to express quality.*

Vir summā virtūte, *a man of the greatest valor.*

NOTE: Compare this ablative with the genitive of quality, 227. In this use, the ablative is more common than the genitive.

282. THE ABLATIVE OF TIME

RULE: *The ablative is used to express the time at which, or within which.*

Nocte proficiācēmur, *we shall set out at night.*

Tribus annis hostēs nostrōs superābimus, *within three years we shall overcome our enemies.*

NOTE: Distinguish carefully the ablative of *time within which*, and the accusative of *duration of time*. Review 255.

283. VOCABULARY

aestās, aestātis, f., *summer.*

auctus, a, um, *strong, rich.*

Bellovacī, ōrum, m., *the Bel-
lovaci, a Belgian tribe.*

Bibrax, Bibractis, f., *Bibrax, a
town of the Remi.*

biduum, ī, n., *two days, two
days' time.*

cōficiō, ere, fēci, fectus, accom-
plish, finish, complete.

extrēmus, a, um, end of, last
(part of).

ingēns, ingēns, gen. ingentis,
huge, enormous.

lūx, lūcis, f., light.

medius, a, um, middle of, middle.

nōndum, not yet (adv.).

plēbs, plēbis, f., the common peo-
ple, populace.

superō, āre, āvi, ātus, surpass,
excel.

valeō, ēre, uī, itūrus, be strong,
powerful.

284.

EXERCISES

I

1. Helvētīi oppida omnia sua numerō ad decem incendē-
runt. 2. Dumnorix erat homō magnā apud plēbem
auctōritāte. 3. Hominēs amīcō animō ab iniuriā et male-
ficiō temperābunt. 4. Bellovacī plūrimum¹ inter Belgās
virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valent.¹ 5. Ex-
trēmā aestāte Caesar in Morinōs iter fēcīt. 6. Oppidum
Rēmōrum, nōmine Bibrax, nōn longē abest. 7. Haec
gēns nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum est.
8. Hae rēs biduō cōficiēntur. 9. In prōvinciā Galliā
biduum morābāmur. 10. Socii nostri grātiā et auctōritāte
auctiōrēs sint! 11. Primā lūce² castellum oppugnābi-
mus. 12. Nōne vir est maximā grātiā? 13. Germāni
sunt ingenti magnitūdine.

II

1. At daybreak the mountain was held by Labienus.
2. This hill is not of great height. 3. In the middle of
the night they went out of the camp³ and returned to
their territory. 4. They fought sharply the whole day.

¹ Plūrimum valent, are very strong.

² Primā lūce, at the first light; i.e. at daybreak.

³ ē castris.

5. All the cavalry, five thousand in number, were terrified and fled immediately. 6. These nations are very strong¹ in cavalry. 7. A man of friendly mind would have helped us. 8. At the end of summer, the commander set out to² his province. 9. This hostage is a man of great influence and authority. 10. The Germans surpass all the other barbarians in size.

285. READING LESSON — THE SABINE WAR

Tum Rōmulus cum hoste,³ qui montem Tarpēium tenēbat, pugnam cōseruit in eō locō, ubi nunc forum Rōmānum est. In mediā caede raptae⁴ prōcessērunt, et hinc patrēs, hinc coniugēs et socerōs complectēbantur, atque ita finem caedis fēcērunt. Tum Rōmulus foedus icit, et Sabinōs⁵ in urbem recēpit.

¹ Cf. I, 4.

² in, and the accusative.

³ 276.

⁴ raptae (virginēs). ⁵ The "virginēs" were Sabines.



VESTAE SACERDOS

LESSON XLVII

THE PARTICIPLES ; THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

286. THE PARTICIPLES

1. Review the participles in the different paradigms, and learn again their meanings and declension.

2. The participle is a *verbal adjective*.

a. As an adjective, it agrees with the noun limited in gender, number, and case ; as,

Miles vulnerātus, the wounded soldier.

b. As a verb it may, if transitive and active, take an object ; as,

Militem id facientem vidi, I saw the soldier doing this.

3. TENSES

The tenses of the participle do not express time absolutely, but relatively to the time designated by the verb on which the participle depends.

a. The present participle represents an act as taking place *at the same time* as that expressed by the verb on which it depends.

Cōpiās pugnantes vidēbō, I shall see the troops fighting ; i.e. they will be fighting, and I shall see them.

b. The perfect participle represents an act as having taken place *at a time before* that expressed by the verb on which it depends.

Militem vulnerātum vidi, I saw the (having been) wounded soldier.

c. The future participle represents an act that is to take place *at a time later* than that expressed by the verb on which it depends. Its use, however, is confined chiefly to the active periphrastic.

4.

USES OF THE PARTICIPLE

The Latin frequently uses the present or perfect participle where the English employs a dependent clause of *time, cause, condition*, etc., introduced by *when, after, since, because, if, although, who*, etc. In translating it is usually better to avoid the literal meaning and employ such a clause. Note the following:

Militem vulnerātum vidi, *I saw the soldier who had been wounded.*

Morātus¹ trēs diēs discessit, *after he had delayed three days, he departed* (literally, *having delayed three days, he departed*).

Militēs mūrū mūnientēs oppugnāti sunt, *the soldiers were attacked, while they were fortifying the wall* (literally, *the soldiers, fortifying the wall, were attacked*).

287.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

1. In English we occasionally use such an expression as,
"The weather being disagreeable, we stayed at home."

This construction is called the *nominative absolute*, because it in no way depends on any other word in the sentence, but is entirely independent, or absolute.

2. In Latin, this construction is extremely common ; but the absolute or independent words stand in the *ablative* instead of in the *nominative*, and the construction is called the *ablative absolute*. In its commonest form, it consists of a *noun*, and either a present or perfect participle ; as,

Gallīs superātis, Caesar pācem cōfirmāvit, *the Gauls having been conquered, Caesar established peace.*

¹ Note that the perfect participle of a deponent verb is usually active in meaning.

3. Like other participle constructions, the ablative absolute is usually better translated by a dependent clause (286, 4, above).

Hōc factō, discessit, after this had been done, he went away (literally, *this having been done*, etc.).

Omnibus rēbus parātis, lēgātōs arcessēmus, since everything has been prepared, we shall summon the envoys (literally, *everything having been prepared*, etc.).

Rōmānis nihil timentibus, hostēs impetum fecērunt, when the Romans were fearing nothing, the enemy made the attack (literally, *the Romans fearing nothing*, etc.).

4. Sometimes a second noun or an adjective takes the place of the participle.

Caesare cōsule, Caesar (being) consul, i.e. in the consulship of Caesar.

Tempestāte idōneā, nāvem solvit, the weather (being) suitable, he set sail, i.e. since the weather was suitable, he set sail.

288.

VOCABULARY

<i>accipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, receive.</i>	<i>mora, ae, f., delay.</i>
<i>Catilīna, ae, m., Catiline.</i>	<i>nunc, now (adv.).</i>
<i>Cicerō, Cicerōnis, m., Cicero.</i>	<i>orior, irī, ortus sum, arise.</i>
<i>cohortor, āri, ātus sum, encourage.</i>	<i>petō, ere, ivi or ii, itus, seek.</i>
<i>coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis, f., conspiracy.</i>	<i>prōgredior, i, gressus sum, advance.</i>
<i>dolor, doloris, m., grief.</i>	<i>removeō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus, remove.</i>
<i>habeō, ēre, uī, itus, deliver (a speech).</i>	<i>move.</i>

289.

EXERCISES

I

1. *Hōc periculō remōtō, omnēs incolae vicī nunc sunt tūtī.* 2. *Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, omnēs qui aderant auxilium*

ā Caesare petiērunt. 3. Orgetorīx, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus, coniūrātiōnem fēcit. 4. Equitēs, decem milia passuum hostis secūtī, magnum eōrum numerum interfēcērunt. 5. Ortā lūce,¹ sine morā castra movēbimus. 6. Cicerōne cōnsule, coniūrātiō Catilinae facta est. 7. Cōpiās nostrās, castra oppugnantēs, hostēs reppulērunt. 8. Hostibus fortiter resistentibus, nōbis ācrius pugnandum est. 9. Arma trādita in fossam, quae ante oppidum erat, iacta sunt. 10. Armīs trāditīs, Bellovacōs in dēditiōnem accipiēmus. 11. Militibus alacribus, victōria fuit facilis celerisque. 12. Ducem in primā aciē pugnantem vulnerāvi. 13. Barbarōs commeātūs trāns flūmen portāre cōnantēs reppulimus. 14. Hīs rēbus perturbātī, cīvēs condiciōnēs pācis accipere recūsāvērunt. 15. Captivī, nūllam spem habentēs, magnō dolōre affecti sunt.

II

1. (Since) the wall (was) stripped of defenders,² the town was easily captured. 2. (After) these things (had been) accomplished, Caesar led the legions into winter quarters. 3. In the middle of the night, the captives, hoping for safety, attempted to flee. 4. The commander decided to attack this town, (although it was) fortified by a wall. 5. (Since) the approach (is) very difficult, this city will not be captured quickly. 6. (As) the soldiers (were) delaying, the commander hastened into the first line. 7. (When) the hostages (have been) received, we shall establish peace. 8. We shall attack this town (after we have) surrounded (it). 9. (With) Galba (as) leader, we

¹ Ortā lūce, *the light having arisen*; i.e. *at daybreak*.

² Express all dependent clauses by means of the participle. Omit words in parentheses.

shall conquer all these tribes. 10. Our commander, after encouraging¹ his men, ordered them to advance.

290. READING LESSON—ROMULUS COMPLETES HIS WORK

Posteā civitātem dēscripsit. Centum senātōrēs lēgit, eōsque cum ob aetātem tum ob reverentiam eīs dēbitam² patrēs³ appellāvit. Plēbem in trīgintā cūriās distribuit, eāsque raptārum nōminibus nūcupāvit.

Annō⁴ rēgnī tricēsīmō septimō, inter tempestātem or- tam² repente oculis⁵ hōminum⁶ subductus est atque (sic trāditur) ad deōs sublātus est.

¹ *After encouraging, i.e. having encouraged.* ² 286, 4. ³ 254.
⁴ 282. ⁵ 265. ⁶ 221.



JULIUS CAESAR

LESSON XLVIII

REVIEW OF THE ABLATIVE; *EŌ*

291.

EXERCISE

Review the rules of syntax and examples in the last four lessons.

292.

CONJUGATION OF *EŌ*

EŌ, 8^o

PRINCIPAL PARTS

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	FUT. PART.
<i>eŌ</i>	<i>ire</i>	<i>ivī (ii)</i>	<i>itūrus</i>

Indicative Mood

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>eŌ, īs, it</i>	<i>īmus, ītis, eunt</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>ībam</i>	<i>ībāmus</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>ībō</i>	<i>ībimus</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>ivī (ii)</i>	<i>ivimus (iimus)</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>īveram (ieram)</i>	<i>īverāmus (ierāmus)</i>
<i>Fut. P.</i>	<i>īverō (ierō)</i>	<i>īverimus (ierimus)</i>

Subjunctive

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>eāmus</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>īrem</i>	<i>īrēmus</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>īverim (ierim)</i>	<i>īverīmus (ierīmus)</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>īvissem (iissem, issem)</i>	<i>īvissēmus (iissēmus, issēmus)</i>

Imperative

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ī</i>	<i>īte</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>ītō</i>	<i>ītōte</i>
	<i>ītō</i>	<i>euntō</i>

Infinitive**Participle**

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>īre</i>	<i>Pres. iēns</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>īvisse (iisse, īsse)</i>	<i>(Gen. euntis)</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>itūrus esse</i>	<i>Fut. itūrus</i>

Gerund**Supine**

<i>eundī, -dō, -dum, -dō.</i>	<i>itum, itū</i>
-------------------------------	------------------

293. NOTE ON CONJUGATION

Note that in the present system, *i* becomes *e* before a vowel.

294. EXERCISE

Learn the meaning of *eō*, and review the vocabularies, **269, 277, 283, 288.**

295. EXERCISES**I**

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Ierās.</i> | 9. <i>Itūrus esse.</i> |
| 2. <i>Īverātis.</i> | 10. <i>Itō.</i> |
| 3. <i>Eundī.</i> | 11. <i>Eātis.</i> |
| 4. <i>Iēns.</i> | 12. <i>Īrēmus.</i> |
| 5. <i>Euntem.</i> | 13. <i>Ieris.</i> |
| 6. <i>Euntēs.</i> | 14. <i>Īveritis.</i> |
| 7. <i>Ībunt.</i> | 15. <i>Ieritis.</i> |
| 8. <i>Īsse.</i> | 16. <i>Ībitis.</i> |

II

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------|
| 1. By going. | 9. We should have gone. |
| 2. Go thou. | 10. He had gone. |
| 3. We go. | 11. Let him go. |
| 4. Let us go. | 12. They shall go. |
| 5. He has gone. | 13. They will go. |
| 6. You will go. | 14. To have gone. |
| 7. Ye shall go. | 15. For going. |
| 8. To go. | 16. You went. |

III

1. Omni spē remōtā, incolae hūius oppidi summō dolōre afficiēbantur. 2. Hōc iter tribus milibus passuum brevis est. 3. Montēs altissimi Helvētiōs ab aliis gentibus dividunt. 4. Lēgātis auxilium petentibus, Caesar id recūsavit. 5. Militēs, discessū hostium incitātōs, dux cohortātus est. 6. Extrēmā aestāte, dux in hiberna cum legiōnibus suis nōndum ierat. 7. Plēbe incitātā, ingēns erat lēgātōrum periculum. 8. Paucis ante annis hōc oppidō potiri cōnāti erāmus. 9. Apud plēbem hīc vir est magnā grātiā. 10. Sitis potestāte et auctōritāte auctiōrēs! 11. Inopiā aquae castra ex hāc valle movēbimus. 12. Haec via multō longior est illā. 13. Quae nātiōnēs plūrimū numerō hominum valent? 14. Mulierēs in silvās magnā cum celeritāte iērunť. 15. Ortā lūce aciem instruēmus.

IV

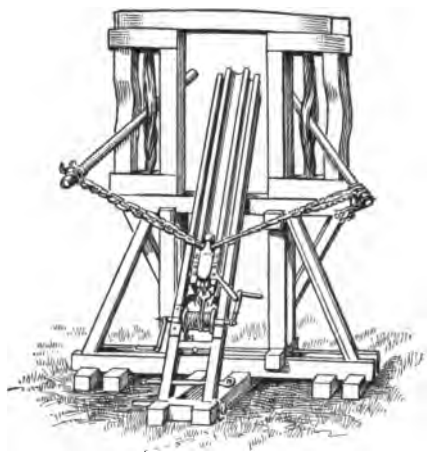
1. Since this oration has been delivered,¹ the soldiers will now go into the camp. 2. Led on by the desire of power, Dumnorix favored a revolution. 3. A few hours before, the enemy went into the village with great speed.

¹ Express this clause by the ablative absolute.

4. That girl is more beautiful than the queen. 5. These barbarians ought to be driven out of the territory of the Gauls. 6. This tribe surpasses all the nations of Gaul in valor. 7. The commander was attacked (while) conferring with Ariovistus. 8. Since this conspiracy has been discovered,¹ we shall confer concerning the punishment of these men within two days. 9. Having advanced a few miles, we saw a hill of great height. 10. Was Catiline punished² by Cicero?

¹ Express this clause by the ablative absolute.

² Cf. III, 1.



BALLISTA

LESSON XLIX

EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE ; *DOMUS*

296. EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE

Expressions of Place are of three kinds: place *to which*; place *from which*; and place *where*.

RULES: 1. *Place to which is expressed by the accusative with ad or in :*

Ad Ītaliām iit, he went to Italy.

2. *Place from which is expressed by the ablative with ab, dē, or ex :*

Ab Ītaliā vēnit, he came from Italy.

3. *Place where is expressed by the ablative with in :*

In Ītaliā, in Italy.

297. SPECIAL EXCEPTIONS

With names of *towns* and *small islands*, and with *domus*, *home*, and *rūs*, *the country*, place is expressed as follows :

1. PLACE TO WHICH, *by the accusative, without a preposition :*

Rōmam iit, he went to Rome.

Domum iit, he went home.

2. PLACE FROM WHICH, *by the ablative without a preposition :*

Rōmā vēnit, he came from Rome.

Rūre vēnit, he came from the country.

3. PLACE WHERE, *by the locative case (which has the same form as the dative, except in the singular of the second declension, where it has the same form as the genitive) :*

Rōmae, at Rome.

Domī, at home.

298.

DECLENSION OF *DOMUS*

Domus, in addition to the regular terminations of the fourth declension, has the following forms of the second declension in common use: *domī*, at home (genitive or locative); *domum*, to one's home (accusative); *domō*, from home (ablative); *domōs*, to (their, etc.) homes, homewards (accusative plural).

299.

VOCABULARY

<i>Aquilēia</i> , ae, f., <i>Aquileia</i> , a	<i>hiems</i> , <i>hiemis</i> , f., <i>winter</i> .
Roman town.	<i>pervenīō</i> , ire, <i>vēnī</i> , <i>ventus</i> , <i>reach</i> ,
<i>cōnscribō</i> , ere, <i>scripsi</i> , <i>scriptus</i> ,	<i>come to</i> , <i>arrive</i> .
<i>enroll</i> .	<i>redeō</i> , ire, <i>ii</i> , <i>itūrus</i> , <i>go back</i> , <i>re-</i>
<i>dē</i> , prep. gov. abl., <i>from</i> , <i>out of</i> .	<i>turn</i> .
<i>domus</i> , ūs, or ī, f., <i>home</i> , <i>house</i> .	<i>rūs</i> , <i>rūris</i> , n., <i>the country</i> .
<i>ēducō</i> , ere, <i>dūxī</i> , <i>ductus</i> , <i>lead</i>	<i>trānseō</i> , ire, <i>ii</i> , <i>itus</i> , <i>cross</i> .
<i>out</i> .	<i>tum</i> , <i>then</i> , <i>at that time</i> ; <i>there-</i>
<i>exeō</i> , ire, <i>ii</i> , <i>itus</i> , <i>go out</i> , <i>depart</i>	<i>upon</i> , <i>next</i> (adv.).
<i>from</i> .	<i>vivō</i> , ere, <i>vixī</i> , <i>victus</i> , <i>live</i> .

300.

EXERCISES

I

1. Caesar in *Italiam* magnis itineribus contendit.
2. *Ūnam* legiōnem novam cōnscribam et duās ex hibernis ēducam.
3. *Rōmae* sunt multa milia incolārum.
4. *Rōmā* profectus sum et flūmen trānsīi et rūs contēdī.
5. Lēgātī ā *Galliā* *Rōmam* extrēmā hieme vērunt.
6. *Helvētiis* domī nihil praeter solum agrī erat.
7. In finēs *Helvētiōrum* diē septimō pervēnit.
8. Multi explōrātōrēs rūre in castra venient.
9. Paucōs diēs *Genavae* manēbimus et domum tum redibimus.
10. Multitūdō hominū rūre veniunt.
11. Dē finibus nostris statim exeāmus!
12. Propter calamitātem recentem erat in oppidō fremitus magnus.

II

1. We have a large number of horses at home. 2. We shall send the women and children into the fortification. 3. The Belgians were in a narrow pass of the mountains. 4. In a few days we shall return from Rome to the country. 5. At Aquileia are two legions in winter quarters. 6. Caesar hastened to go into farther Gaul with three legions. 7. We shall set out from home in a short time. 8. Labienus ordered the centurion to lead one cohort out of camp. 9. Let us hasten to return to Rome! 10. The commander sent the captives whom he had to Italy.

301. READING LESSON — NUMA POMPILIUS

Post Rōmulī mortem ūnīus annī¹ interrēgnum fuit. Quō exāctō,² Numa Pompilius Curibus,³ urbe in agrō⁴ Sabīnōrum, nātus,⁵ rēx⁶ creātus est. Hic vir bellum quidem nūllum gessit; nec minus tamen civitatī⁷ prōfuit. Nam et lēgēs dedit, et sacra plūrima instituit, atque ita populum barbarum et bellicōsōs mōrēs mollivit. Omnia autem, quae faciēbat, nymphae Ēgeriae,⁸ coniugis suae. iussū⁹ fēcit. Morbō⁹ dēcessit, quadrāgēsīmō tertio in perīi annō.¹⁰

¹ 227.
⁶ 254, 1.

² 227, 2.
⁷ 241.

³ 227, 3.
⁸ 221.

⁴ 226, 3.
⁹ 272.

⁵ 226.
¹⁰ 222.



LITUUS

LESSON L

INDEPENDENT USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

302. THE HORTATORY¹ SUBJUNCTIVE

RULE: *The present subjunctive may be used to express an exhortation or mild command. The negative is nē.*

Hōc fiat, *let this be done!*

Hōc cōnsilium nē capiāmus, *let us not adopt this plan!*

303. THE OPTATIVE² SUBJUNCTIVE

RULE: *The optative subjunctive expresses a wish, and may be used in the present, imperfect, and pluperfect tenses. Utinam, would that, may be used with the present, and is regularly used with the imperfect and pluperfect. The negative is nē.*

1. The present expresses a wish possible in *future* time.

Hostēs nostrōs superēmus, *may we overcome our enemies!*

2. The imperfect expresses a wish unfulfilled in *present* time.

Utinam haec ita essent, *would that these things were so!*

3. The pluperfect expresses a wish unfulfilled in *past* time.

Utinam socii nostrī adfuissent, *would that our allies had been present!*

304. TRANSLATION OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

The meanings of the subjunctive mood, as previously given in the conjugation of verbs, cannot always be used. The English subjunctive is passing out of use, and the Latin subjunctive

¹ From **hortor**, *I urge*.

² From **optō**, *I desire*.

is often best translated by the English indicative, or by the use of various auxiliaries. The student should note the translation of the examples given, and use them as models for the translation of similar constructions.

305.

VOCABULARY

aggredior, i, gressus sum, <i>attack.</i>	ita, thus, so (adv.).
committō, ere, misi, missus, <i>bring together; in the phrase,</i>	reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus, <i>give back, return.</i>
proellum committere, <i>to join or commence battle.</i>	singulī, ae, a, <i>one at a time, singly.</i>
cōnscondō, ere, scendī, scēnsus, <i>embark, go on board.</i>	ulciscor, i, ultus sum, <i>avenge, punish.</i>
ēruptiō, ēruptiōnis, f., <i>a sortie, rushing forth.</i>	utinam, <i>would that</i> (introductory particle).
impeditus, a, um (participle of impediō, as adjective); <i>hindered, burdened; under baggage.</i>	vigilia, ae, f., <i>watch</i> (of the night).

306.

EXERCISES

I

1. Proellum statim committāmus! 2. Utinam hostēs nōs impeditōs nē aggressi essent! 3. Extrēmā hieme rūs eāmus! 4. Secundā vigiliā ēruptiō ex castris fiat! 5. Utinam nāvēs cōnscondissēmus et domum rediissēmus! 6. Utinam iniuriās rei publicae ulciscāmur! 7. Per angustias singuli carri dūcantur. 8. Utinam imperātor novās legiōnēs nunc cōscriberet! 9. Utinam hōc negotium ita nē perfēcissēs! 10. Obsidēs quōs habēmus reddāmus atque Rōmam redeāmus. 11. Diū et fēliciter vivāmus!

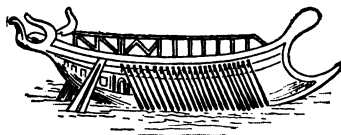
II

1. Would that we had crossed the river and attacked the barbarians under baggage! 2. Let us receive these tribes and make them our allies. 3. Let us not order the soldiers to commence battle! 4. Let these things be done with the greatest speed! 5. May our allies furnish us assistance! 6. Would that you were able to come to Rome! 7. Would that you had gone to the province, and had not returned to Aquileia! 8. Would that I had discovered this difficulty before! 9. At the third watch let the soldiers make a sortie. 10. Would that the Germans had led their troops out of our territory!

307. READING LESSON—TULLUS HOSTILIUS

Numae¹ successit Tullus Hostilius, cūius² avus sē in bellō adversus Sabinōs fortem et strēnuum virum³ praestiterat. Rēx creātus⁴ bellum Albānis¹ indixit, idque triginōrum Horātiōrum et Cūriātiōrum certāmine finivit. Albam propter perfidiam Mettī Fūfetiī diruit. Postquam trīgintā duōs annōs⁵ rēgnāvit, fulmine ictus⁴ cum domō suā ārsit.

¹ 241. ² 221. ³ 254. ⁴ 286, 4. ⁵ 255.



NAVIS

LESSON LI

INDIRECT QUESTIONS; SEQUENCE OF TENSES; PURPOSE

308.

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

1. A direct question, asking for information, usually has its verb in the indicative.

Quid facis, what are you doing?

2. Such a question may be put in a dependent clause, and made the object or subject of a verb of *asking*. It is then called an indirect question.

RULE: *An indirect question has its verb in the subjunctive mood.*

Rogō quid faciās, I ask what you are doing.

3. Any dependent clause introduced by an interrogative word, and used as subject or object of the principal verb, is to be classed as an indirect question.

Sciō ubi sis, I know where you are.

309.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

1. In all dependent clauses employing the subjunctive, the tense of the dependent verb depends on the tense of the principal verb of the sentence. This principle is called the Sequence¹ of Tenses.

A. PRIMARY SEQUENCE

If the principal verb is *present, future, or future perfect*, the dependent verb must be

- (1) *present*, to express *incomplete action*;
- (2) *perfect*, to express *completed action*.

¹ From *sequor, follow*, the "follow" of tenses.

B. SECONDARY SEQUENCE

If the principal verb is *imperfect*, *perfect*,¹ or *pluperfect*, the dependent verb must be

- (1) *imperfect*, to express *incomplete action* ;
- (2) *pluperfect*, to express *completed action*.

Examples : PRIMARY SEQUENCE

Sciō, <i>I know</i>	}	quid faciās, <i>what you are doing.</i>
Sciam, <i>I shall know.</i>		quid fēceris, <i>what you did, what you</i>
Sciverō, <i>I shall have known</i>		<i>have done.</i>

SECONDARY SEQUENCE

Sciēbam, <i>I knew</i>	}	quid facerēs, <i>what you were doing.</i>
Scivi, <i>I knew</i>		quid fēcissēs, <i>what you had done.</i>
Sciveram, <i>I had known</i>		

2. The Sequence of Tenses is conveniently shown in the following table :

Principal Verb		Dependent Verb	
PRIMARY		PRIMARY	
<i>Present</i>	}	are followed by	<i>Present</i> , for incomplete action
<i>Future</i>			<i>Perfect</i> , for completed action
<i>Future Perfect</i>			
SECONDARY		SECONDARY	
<i>Imperfect</i>	}	are followed by	<i>Imperfect</i> , for incomplete action
<i>Perfect</i>			<i>Pluperfect</i> , for completed action
<i>Pluperfect</i>			

¹ The perfect is sometimes regarded as a primary tense when it has the meaning "have"; thus, *misi*, *I have sent*, may be primary, while *misi*, *I sent*, is regularly secondary.

310. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE

1. RULE: *The subjunctive mood is used in dependent clauses expressing the purpose of the action of the principal verb. Such clauses are introduced by ut, that, in order that, and nē, in order that . . . not, lest.*

Vēnit Rōmam ut cōsul creārētur, *he came to Rome that he might be elected consul.*

Fūgit nē caperētur, *he fled lest he should be captured, in order not to be captured.*

2. In English, the infinitive is frequently used to express purpose; as,

"He came *to see* the town."

In Latin, the infinitive must not be so used. In rendering such an English sentence into Latin, it must be put into the form

"He came *that he might see* the town."

311. VOCABULARY

circuitus, ūs, m., <i>circuit, round-about way.</i>	nē, <i>lest, that . . . not</i> (negative conj.).
cliēns, clientis, m. and f., <i>dependent, retainer.</i>	quaerō, ere, quaesivī, sītus, <i>inquire.</i>
doceō, ēre, uī, doctus, <i>show, tell.</i>	rescindō, ere, rescidī, scissus, <i>tear down.</i>
ēvādō, ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsūrus, <i>escape.</i>	rogō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>ask.</i>
impetrō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>obtain one's request.</i>	Sēquanī, ōrum, m., <i>the Sequani, a Gallic tribe.</i>
iūdicium, ī, n., <i>place of judgment, trial.</i>	sī, <i>whether</i> (conj.).
iūdicō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>judge.</i>	ut, <i>that, in order that</i> (conj.).

312.

EXERCISES

I

1. Labiēnus montem circuitū ascendit nē explōrātōrēs eum vidērent. 2. Nēmō potest iūdicāre in utram partem flūmen fluat. 3. Caesar iussit equitēs nāvem cōnscendere ut ortā lūce ex portū proficiscerentur. 4. Explōrātōrēs Caesarem certiōrem faciunt quid in castris hostium gerātur. 5. Helvētīi Dumnorigem lēgātum dēlēgērunt ut ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. 6. Docēbō ex quibus periculīs hī servī ēvāserint. 7. Orgetorix ad iūdicium omnēs clientēs coēgit nē magistrātūs eum ulciscerentur. 8. Hostēs cōnābantur si ē castris ēvādere possent. 9. Dux iubēbit pontem rescindī nē hostēs flūmen trānsire possint. 10. Rogāvi quī virī in vicum tertiā vigiliā pervēnissent atque quae cōpiae eōdem tempore exissent.

II

1. Our troops will set out at once in order to attack the enemy under baggage. 2. Try to discover in what direction the enemy have gone. 3. The envoys asked on what day we returned the hostages to the Gauls. 4. I sent scouts ahead that a suitable place for camp might be chosen. 5. Labienus joined battle immediately lest the enemy should escape from the ambush. 6. Let us tear down the bridge in order to hinder the Helvetians. 7. I inquire who is the messenger of the senate. 8. The commander orders the transports to be prepared that he may carry the horses across. 9. The inhabitants of the village inquired what these men had discovered. 10. The captives tried (to see) whether they could¹ escape from the village.

¹ could; i.e. were able (to).

313. READING LESSON—ANCUS MARCIUS

Post hunc Ancus Mārcius, Numae¹ ex filiā nepōs, sus-
cēpit imperium. Hic vir aequitāte² et religiōne² avō³
similis Latinōs bellō⁴ domuit, urbem ampliāvit, et nova
eī⁵ moenia circumdedit. Carcerem primus aedificāvit.
Ad Tiberis ōstia urbem condidit, Ōstiamque⁶ vocāvit.
Vicēsimo quārtō annō⁷ imperii morbō⁸ obiit.

¹ 221.² 280.³ 250.⁴ 273.⁵ 241.⁶ 254.⁷ 282.⁸ 272.

LEGATUS

LESSON LII

RESULT; CHARACTERISTIC; RELATIVE PURPOSE CLAUSES

314. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT

RULE: *The subjunctive is used in dependent clauses expressing the result of the action of the principal verb. Such clauses are introduced by ut, that, so that, and ut . . . nōn, so that . . . not.*

Hostēs tam perterriti sunt ut statim fugerent, the enemy were so terrified that they fled immediately.

Periculum erat tam magnum ut ē castris ēgredi nōn audērēmus, the danger was so great that we did not dare go out of the camp.

NOTE: Distinguish carefully purpose and result clauses. Negative clauses may be distinguished by the conjunction used, — *nē*, for purpose; *ut . . . nōn*, for result. Affirmative clauses can usually be distinguished by attention to the meaning of the sentence as a whole.

315. CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

RULE: *A relative clause used to describe or characterize an antecedent of indefinite meaning is called a characteristic clause, and has its verb in the subjunctive.*

Nēmō est quī haec nōn intellegat, there is no one who does not understand this.

316. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

RULE: *Clauses of Purpose may be introduced by the relative pronoun quī.*

Misī lēgātum quī hanc difficultātem nūntiāret, I sent an envoy to (who should) report this difficulty.

NOTE: *Quī* is used commonly in this construction as subject of the dependent verb, where its antecedent is object of the principal verb.

317.

VOCABULARY

audeō, ēre, ausus sum, ¹ dare.	nōnnūllus, a, um, some.
contineō, ēre, uī, tentus, confine, hem in.	Rhodanus, ī, m., the Rhone.
dicō, ere, dixi, dictus, say, tell; appoint.	subitus, a, um, sudden.
intellegō, ere, lēxi, lēctus, under- stand, know.	tālis, tāle, such.
inveniō, ire, vēni, ventus, come upon, find.	tam, so (adv.).
	tantus, a, um, such, so great.
	ut, that, so that (conj.).
	vix, hardly, scarcely (adv.).

318.

EXERCISES

I

1. Tālis erat loci nātūra ut Helvētīi undique continērentur. 2. Quis est quī id facere audeat? 3. Collem mūniēmus nē hostēs eum capere possint. 4. Hic collis ita mūnitus est ut hostēs eum capere nōn possent. 5. Multa dicuntur quae vix intellegam. 6. Helvētīi lēgātōs misērunt quī ā Sēquanis impetrārent. 7. Nōn-nūllī sunt quī apud plēbem plūrimum valeant. 8. Tam subitus fuit impetus ut nostrī maximē perterrērentur. 9. Hostēs virōs fortēs dēlēgērunt quī pontem rescinderent. 10. Diem dicēmus quā diē omnēs ad rīpam Rhodanī conveniāmus. 11. Tanta erat altitūdō flūminis ut vadum invenire nōn possēmus. 12. Caesar paucōs diēs morābitur ut militēs ex prōvinciā conveniant.

II

1. So sharp was the attack that few (of the) Gauls escaped. 2. The commander sent scouts to² discover the march of the enemy. 3. There were two roads by which

¹ Semi-deponent.² to; i.e. who should.

the Helvetians could depart from home. 4. One road was so narrow that a few (men) could easily stop them. 5. The time is so short that we do not dare to delay. 6. We shall advance by a roundabout way in order not to be seen by the enemy. 7. That man is the only one¹ who would attempt to accomplish this task. 8. The commander sent a lieutenant into the first line to² encourage the soldiers. 9. So great was the number of the enemy that our men were greatly terrified. 10. Caesar sent ahead the cavalry to attack the rear line.

319. READING LESSON — TARQUINIUS PRISCUS, I

Deinde rēgnum Lūcius Tarquinius Priscus accēpit, Dēmarātī filiū³ qui tyrannōs patriae Corinthī⁴ fugiēns, in Etrūriam⁴ vēnerat. Ipse Tarquinius, quī nōmen ab urbe Tarquiniis accēpit, aliquandō Rōmam⁵ profectus erat. In hōc itinere, aquila pilleum abstulit,⁶ et, postquam altē ēvolāvit reposuit. Hinc Tanaquil coniūnx, mulier auguriorū⁷ perita, rēgnum ei⁸ portendit.

¹ only one, sōlus.

² to; i.e. who should.

³ 17, 2.

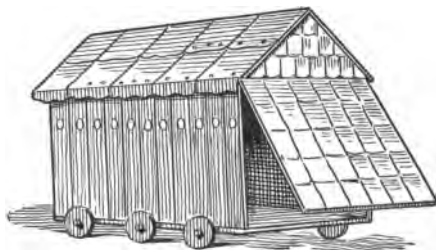
⁴ 296, 1.

⁵ 297, 1.

⁶ abstulit = took away, took off.

⁷ 229.

⁸ 239.



VINEA

LESSON LIII

CUM CLAUSES

320.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

RULE: *Cum temporal*, meaning *when*, is usually followed by the subjunctive if the tense is imperfect or pluperfect; with other tenses, the indicative is used.

Cum id nūntiātum esset, profectus est, when this had been reported, he set out.

Cum Rōmam veniēs, tē vidēbō, when you (shall) come to Rome, I shall see you.

1. The imperfect or pluperfect indicative may be used, however, to emphasize the particular time of the action.

Eō diē cum Rōmae eram, Cicerōnem vidī, on that day when I was at Rome, I saw Cicero.

321.

CAUSAL CLAUSES

RULE: *Cum causal*, meaning *since*, is followed by the subjunctive.

Cum dux vēnerit, prōgrediēmur, since the leader has come, we shall advance.

322.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

RULE: *Cum concessive*, meaning *although*, is followed by the subjunctive.

Cum ea ita sint, tamen pācem faciam, although these things are so, nevertheless I shall make peace.

323.

VOCABULARY

adorior, irī, ortus sum, *attack.*comperiō, ire, perī, pertus, *find out, discover.*cōnspectus, ūs, m., *sight, view.*cum, *when; since; although*
(conj.).mātūrus, a, um, *early.*proximē, *last, recently* (adv.).sub, prep. gov. acc., *under,*
*toward; gov. abl., under.*succēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *ap-*
*proach, come up.*sustineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *with-*
*stand.*tergum, ī, n., *back.*vertō, ere, vertī, versus, *turn;*
tergum vertere, *to turn one's*
*back, flee.*vesper, erī, m., *evening.*videor, ērī, visus sum, *seem; be*
seen (passive of videō).

324.

EXERCISES

I

1. Cum hostēs impetum nostrōrum diūtius sustinēre nōn possent, terga vertērunt. 2. Cum mōns esset altissimus, hostēs tamen sub nostram primam aciem fortiter successērunt. 3. Quae cum ita essent, ē prōvinciā profecti sumus. 4. Cum omnēs socii eōs dēseruissent, hostēs domum sē recipere cōstituērunt atque castra Rōmāna adoriri recūsāvērunt. 5. Cum dux in cōnspectum castrōrum hostium vēnisset, aciem in mediō colle¹ instrūxit. 6. Eō annō cum proximē Aquilēiae praeeram, duae legiōnēs in hibernis erant. 7. Cum Rōmāni timōre perterriti² esse vidērentur, Helvētiī, itinere versō, eōs sequēbantur. 8. Cum hiemēs sint mātūrae, in Britanniam tamen Caesar proficisci contendit. 9. Cum Rōmam veniēs, haec comperiēs. 10. Hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, nēmō tergum vertit.

¹ in mediō colle = *half way up the hill.*² perterriti, participle as adjective; *terrified.*

II

1. The Haedui, since they could not defend themselves, sent envoys to us. 2. Although the road is narrow, wagons can be drawn¹ one by one. 3. When the commander inquired from the scouts, he found out the cause of the sudden flight. 4. Since the enemy do not dare to attack us, let us confine them in camp. 5. Although some allies are not present, nevertheless let us attempt to capture the town. 6. Since there is a ford over² the Rhone, let us cross immediately. 7. When we (shall) understand the causes of this war, we will prepare troops. 8. On that day when the trial was taking place,³ Orgetorix gathered many dependents to the place. 9. Although so great a multitude was killed that the soldiers were terrified, nevertheless, (during) the whole day, they did not hesitate to fight. 10. When the leader asked the causes of this revolt, the envoys told⁴ them.

325. READING LESSON — TARQUINIUS PRISCUS, II.

Cum Rōmae⁵ commorārētur,⁶ Ancī rēgis familiāritātem cōsecūtus est, quī eum filiōrum suōrum tūtōrem⁷ reliquit. Sed is rēgnum occupāvit. Senātōribus,⁸ quōs Rōmulus creāverat, centum aliōs addidit. Plūra bella fēliciter gessit, nec paucōs agrōs urbis territōriō⁸ adiūnxit. Prīmus triumphāns urbem intrāvit. Cloācās fēcit; Capitōlium incohāvit. Tricēsīmō octāvō imperiī annō per Ancī filiōs occīsus est.

¹ draw = dūcō.² over = in, with the ablative.³ take place = fiō.⁴ tell = doceō.⁵ 297, 3.⁶ 320.⁷ 254.⁸ 241.

LESSON LIV

REVIEW OF LESSONS XLIX-LIII; *VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ*; COMMANDS; PROHIBITIONS

326.

EXERCISE

Review the rules of syntax in the last five lessons.

327.

CONJUGATION OF *VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.
volō	velle	voluī, <i>wish, be willing.</i>
nōlō	nōlle	nōluī, <i>be unwilling.</i>
mālō	mālle	māluī, <i>prefer.</i>

Indicative Mood

<i>Pres.</i>	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nolumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
<i>Imp.</i>	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
<i>Fut.</i>	volam	nōlam	mālam
<i>Perf.</i>	voluī	nōluī	māluī
<i>Plup.</i>	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
<i>Fut. P.</i>	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

Subjunctive

<i>Pres.</i>	velim, -īs, -it, etc.	nōlim	mālim
<i>Imp.</i>	vellem, -ēs, -et, etc.	nōllem	māllem
<i>Perf.</i>	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
<i>Plup.</i>	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

Imperative

<i>Pres.</i>	nōlī, nōlīte
<i>Fut.</i>	nōlitō, nōlitō ; nōlitōte, nōluntō

Infinitive

<i>Pres.</i>	velle	nōlle	mālle
<i>Perf.</i>	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

Participle

<i>Pres.</i>	volēns	nōlēns
--------------	--------	--------

328. NOTE ON CONJUGATION

The present tenses show many irregularities for which no definite rule can be given.

329. COMMANDS

The imperative mood is used to express a command.

Urberem vestram, civēs, dēfendite, defend your city, O citizens !

330. NEGATIVE COMMANDS, OR PROHIBITIONS

Nē is the regular negative of the imperative ; but in standard prose a negative command or prohibition is commonly expressed by **nōlī** with the infinitive.

Nōlīte abire, do not go away (literally, *be unwilling to go away*).

331. EXERCISE

Learn the meaning of **volō, nōlō, mālō**, and review vocabularies **299, 305, 311, 317, 323**.

332. EXERCISES**I**

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1. Māvultis. | 4. Mälle. |
| 2. Nōluit. | 5. Nōluerit. |
| 3. Vellēs. | 6. Māluisse. |

- | | |
|--------------|-----------------|
| 7. Nōlēns. | 12. Nōluissēs. |
| 8. Volentem. | 13. Mālint. |
| 9. Nōllēmus. | 14. Nōlītōte. |
| 10. Velle. | 15. Māvīs. |
| 11. Velitis. | 16. Nōn vultis. |

II

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. He does not wish. | 9. They may wish. |
| 2. You are willing. | 10. He is unwilling. |
| 3. He would have preferred. | 11. Unwilling. |
| 4. To be unwilling. | 12. We are unwilling. |
| 5. To have wished. | 13. You would have wished. |
| 6. Be ye unwilling. | 14. Be thou unwilling. |
| 7. Willing. | 15. Do not do this. |
| 8. He would be willing. | 16. Do not fight. |

III

1. Rōmam statim eāmus! 2. Paucī sunt quī prō patriā pugnāre nōlint. 3. Cum Aquilēiae imperātor essem, Rōmam misi centuriōnem quī senātui captivōs trāderet. 4. Utinam impetum sustinuissēmus atque terga nē vertissēmus! 5. Eō tempore tāle et tantum erat periculum ut omnēs virōs verērēmur. 6. Ēruptiōnem ex oppidō summā cum celeritāte facere cōnēmur! 7. Nōlite hostēs certiōrēs facere quid in castrīs nostrīs gerātur. 8. Illā hōrā cum hostēs castra nostra adoriēbantur, decima legiō in cōspectum vix vēnerat. 9. Multi esse potentēs quam bonī malle videntur. 10. Volō quaerere quae hī virī tibi dixerint. 11. Succēdite, militēs, sub aciem, adrimini hostēs, capite signa, ut virī fortēs iūdicēmini! 12. Cum dux causam fugae hostium comperisset, ad vesperum tamen in castrīs remānsit.

IV

1. Let us remain at home; do not go to the city.
2. Toward evening we set out from camp in order to find out what was the shortest road to town. 3. Many farmers wish to live in the city. 4. Would that we had sent a lieutenant into hither Gaul to enroll new legions. 5. Live well that you may be happy! 6. There are few (men) who are willing to live in this place. 7. Since you prefer to return home, let us set out. 8. When the enemy approach, we shall tear down the bridge. 9. Although I understand the difficulty, I have not been able to show it to you. 10. Since the road is very difficult, let us set out at daybreak.



CATAPULT

LESSON LV

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

333. 1. A substantive clause is a clause which, as a whole, is used as a noun. Note the following examples :

- (1) I fear *a calamity*.
- (2) I fear *that he will not recover*.
- (3) *Defeat* seems certain.
- (4) *That it will rain* seems certain.

In (1) the object of the verb is *calamity*. In (2) *calamity* is replaced by the clause *that he will not recover*, which is used as object of the verb, like a noun, and is therefore a *noun* or *substantive* clause.

In (3) the subject of the verb is *defeat*. In (4) *defeat* is replaced by the clause *that it will rain*, which is used as subject of the verb, like a noun, and is therefore a *noun* or *substantive* clause.

2. In Latin, substantive clauses are commonly used as subject or object of the verb. Below are given several important kinds which require the subjunctive.

A.

PURPOSE CLAUSES

Substantive clauses of purpose, introduced by *ut*, *that*, *nē*, *that . . . not*, are used as subject or object with verbs meaning *admonish*, *request*, *command*, *decide*, *urge*, *wish*, *desire*, *grant*, and the like.

Monet ut omnēs suspiciōnēs vītet, *he advises (him) to avoid all suspicions* (literally, *that he avoid all suspicions*).

Nōbīs imperat nē eāmus, *he commands us not to go* (literally, *that we may not go*).

B.

RESULT CLAUSES

Substantive clauses of result, introduced by *ut*, *that*, *ut . . . nōn*, *that . . . not*, are used :

1. As subject or object of verbs meaning *do*, *accomplish*, and the like.

Efficiam ut intellegātis, *I will make you understand* (literally, *I will bring about that you understand*).

2. As subject of verbs meaning *it happens*, *it remains*, *it is necessary*, *it follows*, *it is added*, etc.

Accidit ut esset lūna plēna, *it happened that the moon was full*.

C. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH VERBS OF FEARING

Substantive clauses, introduced by *nē*, *that*, *lest*, *ut*, *that . . . not*, are used as subject or object of verbs meaning *fear*.

Timeō ut veniat, *I fear that he may not come*.

1. Note carefully the translation of *ut* and *nē* in clauses of this kind.

D.

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

This clause, already given in 308, is a substantive clause used as subject or object of verbs meaning *ask*, *tell*, etc.

Rogō quid faciās, *I ask what you are doing*.

334.

VOCABULARY

accidit , ere, accidit , impersonal verb, <i>it happens</i> , <i>it occurs</i> .	cōpiae , ārum, f., <i>resources</i> , <i>possession</i> s.
admoneō , ēre, uī, itus, <i>warn</i> , <i>urge</i> .	efficiō , ere, fēcī , fectus , <i>make</i> , <i>cause</i> , <i>render</i> , <i>bring about</i> .
Allobrogēs , Allobrogum , m., <i>a Gallic tribe</i> .	ēveniō , ire, vēni , ventūrus , <i>turn out</i> , <i>result</i> .
cōnātus , ūs, m., <i>attempt</i> , <i>effort</i> .	imperō , āre, āvī , ātus , <i>command</i> .

liberō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>free, set free.</i>	poscō, ere, poposci, <i>demand, require.</i>
Liscus, ī, m., <i>Liscus, a magistrate of the Haedui.</i>	praecipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus, <i>command, direct.</i>
lūna, ae, f., <i>moon.</i>	timeō, ēre, uī, <i>fear.</i>
optō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>desire.</i>	vītō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>avoid.</i>
plēnus, a, um, <i>full.</i>	

335.

EXERCISES

I

(Avoid literal translation. Use the best English possible.)

1. Imperātor suōs¹ admonuit ut fortiter pugnārent et omnem suspiciōnem timōris vitārent. 2. Optō nē amici mei certiōrēs dē his rēbus fiant. 3. Mūnitiō effēcit ut sine magnā difficultāte oppidum capī nōn posset. 4. His rēbus fiēbat ut obsidēs ā barbaris interficerentur. 5. Timeō nē impetū subitō urbs expugnētur. 6. Vereor ut hic cōnātus fēliciter ēveniat. 7. Nōn compertum est quid hostēs exspectārent. 8. Efficiam ut tū fēlix sis. 9. Helvētii Allobrogēs¹ coēgērunt ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur. 10. Caesar suīs¹ praecēpit ut pontem trāns Rhēnum facerent. 11. Cum lūna esset nōn plēna, accidit ut Germānī eā nocte iter facere nōllent. 12. Lēgātī hostium timuērunt ut eās ob causās liberārentur. 13. Caesar ā Liscō quaesīvit quid in conventū dīxisset. 14. Labiēnō praeceptum erat ā Caesare² nē proelium committeret. 15. Captivī verēbantur nē arma poscerentur.

¹ With substantive purpose clauses there is frequently another object of the person, or a dative of the indirect object.

² It had been commanded (to) Labienus by Caesar; i.e. Caesar had commanded Labienus.

II

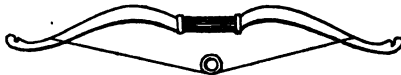
1. Orgetorix¹ persuaded the Helvetians to go out of their territory with all their possessions. 2. Dumnorix¹ made these nations give each other hostages. 3. Caesar¹ warned Dumnorix to avoid all suspicions in the future.² 4. I desire¹ these nations to remain in the friendship of the Roman people. 5. For this reason it happened that the barbarians did not withstand even the first attack. 6. Many were fearing that there would not be a supply of grain. 7. The Gauls asked what the Roman's name was. 8. I fear that you will be unwilling to undertake this task. 9. It was ordered³ that the scouts should set out immediately. 10. It happened that no one of the enemy perceived the approach of the tenth legion.

336. READING LESSON — SERVIUS TULLIUS, I

Post hunc Servius Tullius suscepit imperium, genitus ex nōbili fēminā, captivā⁴ tamen et famulā. Cum in domō Tarquinii educārētur,⁵ flamma in eiūs capite vīsa est. Hōc prōdigio⁶ Tanaquil ei summam dignitatem portendit, et coniugi⁷ persuāsit ut eum sicuti liberōs suōs educāret.⁸ Cum adolēvisset, rēx ei filiam in mātirimōnium dedit.

¹ Before translating consider what the exact English equivalent of the Latin would be. ² *In the future, in reliquum tempus.* ³ Cf. I, 14. ⁴ 17, 2.

⁵ 320. ⁶ 272. ⁷ 240. ⁸ 333, 2, A.



ARCUS

LESSON LVI

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

337. DIRECT AND INDIRECT DISCOURSE

The words or thoughts of a person may be quoted :

1. *Directly*, giving the person's exact words ; as,

He said, "I will come."

2. *Indirectly*, giving the substance, but not the exact words ; as,

He said that he would come.

The former method is called "*direct discourse*," and the latter "*indirect discourse*."

338. INDIRECT DISCOURSE IN LATIN

Study the following examples :

DIRECT

Galli vincunt, *the Gauls are conquering.*

INDIRECT

Dicit Gallōs vincere, *he says the Gauls to be conquering, he says (that) the Gauls are conquering.*

1. Note that, when quoted indirectly after a verb of saying, the principal verb of a declarative sentence has become *infinitive*, with the subject in the accusative case.

2. Note that the exact translation, "*He says the Gauls to be conquering*" is very awkward. Good English requires the second form of translation, with or without *that*. There is no Latin equivalent of *that*.

RULE: *A principal verb of a declarative sentence in direct discourse, when made indirect after a verb of saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, etc., becomes infinitive with subject accusative.*

339. TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE

The tenses of the infinitive, like those of the participle (286, 3), do not express time absolutely, but relatively to the time designated by the verb on which the infinitive depends, thus :

AFTER A PRIMARY TENSE

Dicit Gallōs, he says the Gauls	vincere, are conquering.
	victūrōs ¹ esse, will conquer.
	viciſſe, have conquered.

AFTER A SECONDARY TENSE

Dixit Gallōs, he said the Gauls	vincere, were conquering.
	victūrōs esse, would conquer.
	viciſſe, had conquered.

Note that

(1) The present infinitive represents an act as taking place *at the same time* as that expressed by the verb on which it depends.

(2) The future infinitive represents an act that is to take place *at a time later* than that expressed by the verb on which it depends.

(3) The perfect infinitive represents an act as having taken place *at a time before* that expressed by the verb on which it depends.

Observe carefully the differences in translation of the infinitive after a primary and secondary tense.

¹ Accusative, to agree with the subject. Gallōs.

340. DEPENDENT CLAUSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

RULE: *In indirect discourse, all dependent clauses take the subjunctive, the tense depending on the verb of saying,¹ etc., according to the regular rules for the sequence of tenses.*

Dicit Gallōs victūrōs esse sī pugnent, he says the Gauls will conquer if they fight.

Dixit Gallōs victūrōs esse sī pugnārent, he said the Gauls would conquer if they fought.

.341.

VOCABULARY

circum, prep. gov. acc., <i>around, about, in the vicinity of.</i>	existimō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>think, believe.</i>
cis, prep. gov. acc., <i>on this side of.</i>	mīrus, a, um, <i>wonderful, surprising.</i>
coniungō, ere, iūnxī, iūctus, <i>join.</i>	praedicō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>say, declare.</i>
cōnsidō, ere, sēdi, sessus, <i>camp, settle.</i>	putō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>think, suppose, consider.</i>
dēspērō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>despair.</i>	semper, <i>always (adv.).</i>

342.

EXERCISES

I

1. Cum Gallis bellum nōn gessi. 2. Ariovistus praedicāvit sē cum Gallis bellum nōn gessisse. 3. Galli facile vincent. 4. Putō Gallōs facile victūrōs esse. 5. Dumnorix dē grātiā quam habet dēspērat. 6. Caesar cognōvit Dumnorigem dē grātiā quam habēret dēspērāre. 7. Rēmi dicunt Germānōs quī cis Rhēnum incolant sēsē cum Belgis coniūnxisse. 8. Ariovistus respondit, "Id mihi mīrum vidētur." 9. Ariovistus respondit id sibi

¹ It will be convenient to refer to the verb of *saying*, etc., as the *governing* verb, and to the infinitive as the *principal* verb.

mīrum vidēri. 10. Caesar dicit sē optāre ut lūnā plēnā Germānī impetum faciant. 11. Allobrogēs Caesarem certiōrem faciunt Germānōs obsidēs poscere et arma parāre. 12. Liscus dixit Dumnorigem magnum numerum ēquitātūs circum sē semper habuisse. 13. Helvētīi existimāvērunt Rōmānōs timōre perterritōs ā sē discessūrōs esse. 14. Eōdem diē Caesar ab explōrātōribus certior factus est hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse. 15. Imperātor dicit sē lēgātō praeceptūrum esse ut captīvōs liberāret.

II

1. We are not able to use the grain which is in the fields. 2. The Gauls say they are not able to use the grain which is in the fields. 3. The Gauls said they were not able to use the grain which was in the fields. 4. Messengers will come from all parts of the region which we have conquered. 5. The Gauls inform Caesar that messengers will come from all parts of the region which we have conquered. 6. Caesar was informed that messengers would come from all parts of the region which we had conquered. 7. Caesar learned that Dumnorix was the man¹ who had done these things. 8. Scouts report that the enemy moved camp at day-break. 9. I hear that the horses which have been carrying grain and other supplies were terrified by the fire. 10. Ariovistus said he had crossed the Rhine in order to seize the fields which had been given to him.

343. READING LESSON—SERVIUS TULLIUS, II

Cum Priscus Tarquinius occisus esset,² Tanaquil dē superiōre parte domūs populum allocūta est, dicēns rēgem³

¹ Use the accusative; why?² 320.³ 256.

grave quidem sed nōn lētāle vulnus accēpisse;¹ eum² petere,¹ ut populus, dum convaluisset,³ Serviō⁴ Tulliō oboediret.⁵ Sic Servius rēgnāre coepit, sed bene imperium administrāvit. Montēs trēs urbī⁶ adiūnxit. Prīmus omnium⁷ cēsum ordināvit. Sub eō Rōma habuit capitum⁸ octōgintā tria milia cīvium Rōmānōrum cum hīs, quī in agrīs erant.

¹ 338, 2; 339.² 256.³ 340.⁴ 240.⁵ 333, 2, A.⁶ 241.⁷ 228.⁸ 223; of heads. Cf. "head of cattle." Omit in translating.

GALLI

LESSON LVII

THE INFINITIVE

344. The infinitive is a *verbal noun*. As a noun, it may be used either as subject or object of a verb. As a verb, it may have a subject, or an object, or both. The subject of the infinitive, however, is in the *accusative*. (See **256**.)

345. THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT

The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be used as the subject of *est*, and other verbs used impersonally.

1. WITHOUT SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE.

Errāre est hūmānum,¹ *to err is human*.

2. WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE.

Equitēs accēdere nūntiātur, *it is reported that the horsemen are approaching* (literally, *the horsemen to be approaching is reported*).

346. THE INFINITIVE AS OBJECT

1. Without a subject accusative the infinitive is used as object of verbs meaning *dare*, *desire*, *determine*, *begin*, *continue*, *end*, *ought*, *be able*, *be accustomed*, etc.

Īre dēbeō, *I ought to go*.

Prōgredi nōn audent, *they do not dare to advance*.

2. With subject accusative, the infinitive is used as object of verbs of *saying*, *thinking*, *knowing*, and *perceiving*,² of *iubeō*, *order*, *vetō*, *forbid*, and frequently of *sinō* and *patior*, *permit*.

Dicit Gallōs victūrōs esse, *he says (that) the Gauls will conquer*.

Iubeō tē ire, *I order you to go*.

¹ Neuter, singular, nominative, predicate adjective, limiting *errāre*.

² This is the regular construction of indirect discourse; cf. **330**.

347.

VOCABULARY

accēdō, ere, cēssī, cessūrus, <i>ap-</i> <i>proach.</i>	mētior, irī, mēnsus sum, <i>measure</i> <i>out, distribute.</i>
alō, ere, aluī, altus, <i>support,</i> <i>maintain.</i>	moriōr, ī, mortuus sum, <i>die.</i>
cōnstat, <i>it is evident.</i>	oportet, ēre, uit, <i>it behooves, is</i> <i>fitting.</i>
errō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>err, be mis-</i> <i>taken.</i>	sinō, ere, sīvī, sītus, <i>permit,</i> <i>allow.</i>
hūmānus, a, um, <i>human; civ-</i> <i>ilized, cultivated.</i>	sūmptus, ūs, m., <i>expense.</i>
licet, licēre, licuit, <i>it is permitted.</i>	Ubī, ōrum, m., <i>the Ubī, a Ger-</i> <i>man tribe.</i>

348.

EXERCISES

I

1. Cum Rōmānī vicō appropinquārent, incolae flūmen trānsire parābant. 2. Difficile est pericula bellī vitāre. 3. Putātur virtūs magna prō patriā morī. 4. Imperātor iussit militēs, nunc dē salūte dēspērantes, esse bonō animō. 5. Caesarī nūntiātum est Ariovistum in Galliā cōnsēdisse. 6. Lēgātī petivērunt ut sibi id facere liceret. 7. Nē sināmus hās gentēs cum Belgīs sē coniungere. 8. Accidit ut eō diē Helvētīi castra movēre cōstituissent. 9. Existimō tē dē causā hūius morae errāre. 10. Nōs militibus frūmentum mētiri oportet. 11. Cōnātum facere cōstituimus atque imperābimus cīvibus ut omnēs cōpiās suās in ūnum locum cōgant. 12. Cōnstat Dumnorigem magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere. 13. Ariovistō praedicātum est Caesarem eum in Galliā manēre pati nōn posse. 14. Ubī dicuntur esse hūmāniōrēs aliīs Germānis. 15. Ad oppidum accēdere est facile; sed difficillimum est id capere.

II

1. The commander had decided to place four legions in winter quarters in the vicinity of Aquileia. 2. It is said that the Germans are wintering on this side of the Rhine. 3. Caesar is informed by Labienus that all the Belgians are conspiring against the Roman people. 4. We¹ ought to cross the river at once. 5. It is not easy to overcome a powerful enemy. 6. We did not dare to trust those envoys. 7. The scout said that Labienus had taken the enemy's largest town. 8. It will not be safe to make a march through the narrow pass. 9. It is believed that two legions have been taken by the barbarians. 10. It will not be difficult to accomplish this task.

349. READING LESSON—SERVIUS TULLIUS, III

Hic rēx interfectus est scelere filiae, Tulliae, et Tarquiniū Superbi, filii ēius rēgis cui² Servius successerat. Nam ab ipsō Tarquiniō³ dē gradibus cūriāe dēiectus, cum domum⁴ fugeret,⁵ interfectus est. Tullia in forum properāvit, et prīma coniugem rēgem⁶ salūtāvit. Cum domum rediret, aurigam⁷ super patris corpus in viā iacēns⁸ carpentum agere⁹ iussit.

¹ Cf. I, 10. ² 241. ³ 266. ⁴ 297, 1. ⁵ 320. ⁶ 254 ; as king.
⁷ 256. ⁸ Neuter, sing. acc., agreeing with corpus. ⁹ 346, 2.



ANULUS

LESSON LVIII

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

350. A conditional sentence consists of two clauses, a *condition*, usually introduced by *if* or *unless*, and a *conclusion*,—thus :

If he goes, I shall stay home.

The condition or “*if*” clause is known as the *protasis*, and the conclusion is known as the *apodosis*.

351. CLASSES OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN LATIN

Conditions in Latin may be conveniently divided into three classes, as follows :

I. SIMPLE CONDITIONS

Si *pācem faciunt*, *obsidēs dant*, *if they make peace, they give hostages.*

Si *pācem facient*, *obsidēs dabunt*, *if they (shall) make peace, they will give hostages.*

Si *pācem fecerunt*, *obsidēs dedērunt*, *if they made peace, they gave hostages.*

Notice that the above examples are merely suppositions in present, future, or past time. There is nothing to indicate whether or not the *protasis* is true.

RULE: *In simple conditions, not indicating the truth or falsity of the protasis, both clauses take the indicative.*

II. FUTURE DOUBTFUL CONDITIONS

Si *pācem faciant*, *obsidēs dent*, *if they should make peace, they would give hostages.*

Notice that this is a supposition in future time, but that the use of the present subjunctive (translated by *should . . . would*) indicates doubt as to whether the protasis will come true.

RULE: *In future conditions, indicating doubt of the truth of the protasis, both clauses take the present subjunctive, translated by should . . . would.*

III. CONTRARY TO FACT CONDITIONS

Sī pācem facerent, obsidēs darent, *if they were making peace, they would be giving hostages.*

Sī pācem fēcissent, obsidēs dedissent, *if they had made peace, they would have given hostages.*

Notice that the protasis of these conditions is evidently untrue or *contrary to the facts* of the case. In the first example, the imperfect subjunctive is used in both clauses, and expresses present time. In the second example, the pluperfect subjunctive is used, and expresses past time.

RULE: *In contrary to fact conditions, indicating that the protasis is untrue, both clauses take the subjunctive, the imperfect to express present time, the pluperfect to express past time.*

352.

VOCABULARY

aliēnus, a, um, *foreign, strange.*

beātus, a, um, *happy.*

bellicōsus, a, um, *warlike.*

cūra, ae, f., *care, attention.*

cūstōdiō, ire, ivi, itus, *guard.*

effugiō, ere, fugi, fugitūrus,
escape.

fidēlis, fidēle, *faithful.*

finitimus, i, m., *neighbor.*

inimicus, a, um, *unfriendly, hostile.*

nisi, unless, if . . . not (conj.).

numquam, *never (adv.).*

pāreō, ēre, pāruī, pāritūrus, *obey.*

persequor, i, secūtus sum,
follow up, pursue.

sī, if (conj.).

victor, victōris, m., *victor.*

353.

EXERCISES

I

1. Si hostēs persequēmur, magnum eōrum numerum capiēmus. 2. Si hostēs persequāmur, magnum eōrum numerum capiēmus. 3. Si equitēs hostēs persecūti essent, magnus numerus captus esset. 4. Si vincēmur, imperiō victōrum pārēbimus. 5. Nisi incolae arma sua trādidērunt, Caesar eōs in dēditiōnem nōn accēpit. 6. Nisi incolae arma sua trādidissent, Caesar eōs in dēditiōnem nōn accēpisset. 7. Si in Germāniā es, multōs mōrēs aliēnōs vidēs. 8. Si in Germaniam eās, multōs mōrēs aliēnōs videās. 9. Si per prōvinciam iter facere cōnābiminī, vōs prohibēbō. 10. Si id fiat, prōvincia hominēs bellicōsōs, populi Rōmāni inimicōs finitimōs habeat. 11. Si hī liberī sunt bonī, sunt beāti. 12. Si hī liberī fuissent bonī, eis dōna dedissem. 13. Si socii vestri essent viri fortēs, eis auxilium nunc darētis. 14. Si captivī effūgērunt, magnā cum cūrā nōn cūstōdiēbantur. 15. Nisi socii nostrī essent fidēlēs, hostēs nōn nunc vincerēmus. 16. Si Rōmam eam, discēdere numquam velim.

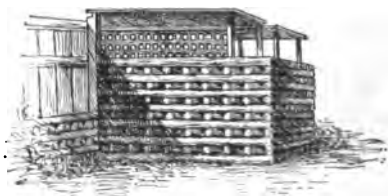
II

1. If the Ubii settle on this side of the river, the Romans will drive them out. 2. If you should urge me, I would do those things which you wish me to do. 3. The valor of the soldiers would have rendered the war easy, if the best commander had not died. 4. Rome would seem wonderful to us, if it were a foreign city. 5. Unless I am greatly mistaken, your friends are in the vicinity of Geneva. 6. If you will come with me, I will distribute presents to the children. 7. Unless I wished to do these

things, I would not do them. 8. If you were happy, your friends would be happier. 9. Unless the road should be easy, we should not be able to go with heavy baggage. 10. If our neighbors had not been hostile, we should never have attacked them.

354. READING LESSON—TARQUINIUS SUPERBUS, I

Tarquinius Superbus cognōmen mōribus¹ meruit. Bellō² tamen strēnuus plūrēs finitimōrum populōrum³ vicit. Templum Iovis in Capitōliō aedificāvit. Postea, cum Ardeam oppugnāret,⁴ urbem Latii, imperium perdidit. Nam cum filius eius Lucrētiaē,⁵ nōbilissimae fēminae, coniugī Tarquiniū Collātini, vim⁶ fēcisset, haec sē ipsa occīdit in cōspectū mariti, patris, et amicōrum, postquam eōs obtestāta est, ut hanc iniūriam ulciscerentur.⁷

¹ 272.² 282.³ 223.⁴ 320.⁵ 239.⁶ vim fēcisset, *had made a violent attack.*⁷ 333, 2, A.

AGGER

LESSON LIX

THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE ; THE SUPINE

355.

THE GERUND

The gerund is a *verbal noun*. As a noun, its four cases, genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative, are used in various case relations, while, as a verb, it may take an object.

EXAMPLES

Genitive : Amor pugnandi, *love of fighting.*

Cōsiliū bellū gerendi, *a plan of waging war.*

Dative : Dixit diē colloquendō, *he appointed a day for conferring.*

Accusative : Parātus ad proficiscendū, *ready for setting out.*

Ablative : Bellū gerendō, *by waging war.*

NOTE: The gerund with an object is used only in the genitive, and in the ablative without a preposition.

356.

THE GERUNDIVE

The gerundive is a *verbal adjective*. It is chiefly used as follows :

1. In the passive periphrastic conjugation.
2. In what is called the *gerundive construction*, to avoid the use of a direct object with the gerund. Note the following examples :

GERUND WITH DIRECT OBJECT :

Cōsiliū pācem faciendī, *a plan of making peace.*

GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION :

Cōsiliū pācis faciendae, *a plan of making peace (literally, of peace to be made).*

(a) Notice that in the second example the noun *pācis* is in the same case as the gerund in the first example, and that the gerundive *faciendae* agrees with *pācis*.

(b) The gerundive construction is much more common than the gerund with an object.

(c) The gerundive construction is frequently used with *ad* to express purpose ; as,

Vēnerunt ad pācem petendam, they came to seek peace (literally, *for peace to be sought*).

357.

EXERCISE

Following the suggestion in 356, 2 (a), change the following to the gerundive construction :

1. Bellum gerendi.
2. Patriam amandi.
3. Librōs scribendō.

358.

THE SUPINE

1. RULE: *The supine in -um is used with verbs of motion to express purpose.*

Vēnerunt rogātum auxilium, they came to ask aid.

2. RULE: *The supine in -ū is used with facilia, difficilia, optimus, and a few other adjectives as an ablative of specification.*

Hae rēs sunt facilēs factū, these things are easy to do (literally, *in respect to doing*).

359.

VOCABULARY

amor, amōris, m., *love*.

ars, artis, f., *art, science*.

Athēnae, ārum, f. pl., *Athens*.

celeber, celebris, celebre, celebratus, *celebrated, famous*.

cōsuēscō, ere, suēvi, suētus, *be accustomed*.

cōsūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmptus, *use up, consume*.

discō, ere, didici, *learn*.

ineō, ire, ii, itus, *enter; form (a* sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *take,*
plan). *get, gather.*
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, *read.* trecentī, ae, a, *three hundred.*
scribō, ere, scripsī, scriptus, *write.*

360.

EXERCISES

I

1. Equitēs ad persequendum parātī sunt. 2. Hanc
occāsionem effugiendī sūmāmus. 3. Librōs scribendō
multī viri fiunt celebrēs. 4. Ars legendī est nōn difficilis
cognitū. 5. Trecentōs equitēs ad hostēs persequendōs
praemīsī. 6. Praemīsī trecentōs equitēs persecūtum
hostēs. 7. Trecentōs equitēs quī hostēs persequerentur
praemīsī. 8. Amor patriae cupiditātem pugnandī auget.
9. Multī Rōmānī discendī causā Athēnās ire cōsuēvērunt.
10. Hic collis ad castra pōnenda est locus idōneus.
11. Omnēs barbarī cōnsilia dē bellō gerendō iniērunt.
12. Paucī viri ad frūmentum ex agris sūmendū rūs pro-
fectī sunt. 13. Paucī viri rūs profectī sunt sūmptum
frūmentum ex agrīs. 14. Cōnsilium urbis expugnandae
ineāmus. 15. In his rēbus cōficiendis duo anni cōn-
sūptī sunt.

II

1. Our warlike neighbors are skilled in¹ fighting.
2. By pursuing the conquered enemy, our allies gave us
great help. 3. If you should have an opportunity of
escaping, you would be fortunate. 4. By supporting
cavalry at his (own) expense, Dumnorix made himself
powerful. 5. Let us choose a mountain suitable for
making a fortification. 6. Caesar sent envoys to the

¹ What case? See 229.

Allobroges to seek peace.¹ 7. If they overcome us by fighting, we shall never obey the victor. 8. The leader said this was the best thing to do. 9. Labienus remained a few days for the sake of guarding the captives. 10. These tribes are ignorant of fighting and know nothing of² waging war.

361. READING LESSON—TARQUINIUS SUPERBUS, II

Hanc ob causam L. Brūtus, Collātīnus, alique nōnnūlli in exitium rēgis coniūrāvērunt, populōque³ persuāsērunt, ut ei⁴ portās urbis clauderet.⁵ Exercitus quoque, quī civitātem Ardeam cum rēge⁶ oppugnābat, eum reliquit. Fūgit itaque cum uxōre⁶ et liberis suis.

Ita Rōmae⁷ rēgnātum est per septem rēgēs, annōs⁸ ducentōs quadrāgintā trēs.

¹ Express in three ways.

² of = concerning.

³ 240.

⁴ 239.

⁵ 333, 2, A.

⁶ 276.

⁷ 297, 3.

⁸ 255.



CASTELLUM

LESSON LX

REVIEW OF LESSONS LV-LIX; *FERŌ*

362. EXERCISE

Review the rules of syntax in the last five lessons.

363. CONJUGATION OF *FERŌ*

Ferō, bear, carry

PRINCIPAL PARTS

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	PERF. PART.
ferō	ferre	tuli	lātus

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

Indicative

<i>Pres.</i>	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris (-re)	ferimini
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
<i>Imp.</i>	ferēbam		ferēbar	
<i>Fut.</i>	feram		ferar	
<i>Perf.</i>	tuli		lātus sum	
<i>Plup.</i>	tuleram		lātus eram	
<i>Fut. P.</i>	tulerō		lātus erō	

Subjunctive

<i>Pres.</i>	feram	ferar
<i>Imp.</i>	ferrem	ferrer
<i>Perf.</i>	tulerim	lātus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	tulissem	lātus essem

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	Imperative			
<i>Pres.</i>	fer	forte	ferre	feriminī
<i>Fut.</i>	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor
	Infinitive			
<i>Pres.</i>	ferre		ferri	
<i>Perf.</i>	tulisse		lātus esse	
<i>Fut.</i>	lāturus esse		lātum irī	
	Participles			
<i>Pres.</i>	ferēns, -entis		<i>Perf.</i>	lātus
<i>Fut.</i>	lāturus		<i>Gerundive</i>	ferendus
	Gerund		Supine	
	ferendī, -dō, -dum, -dō		lātum, lātū	

364. NOTE ON CONJUGATION

The irregularity of *ferō* consists of dropping the vowel preceding the ending in certain forms of the present indicative, of the imperative, and in the imperfect subjunctive and present infinitive. Otherwise it is a regular verb of the third conjugation.

365. EXERCISE

Learn the meaning of *ferō*, and of the compounds given below, and review vocabularies 334, 341, 347, 352, 359.

366. IMPORTANT COMPOUNDS OF FERŌ

afferō, ferre, attuli, allātus, bring.

auferō, ferre, abstuli, ablātus, take away.

inferō, ferre, intuli, illātus, bring upon, bring against.

perferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, carry through, endure.

referō, ferre, rettuli, relātus, bring back.

367.

EXERCISES

I

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. Ferēs. | 9. Ferendō. |
| 2. Ferrēs. | 10. Īferrētur. |
| 3. Ferre. | 11. Relātum sit. |
| 4. Tulerim. | 12. Allātus esse. |
| 5. Perferendi. | 13. Lātum īrī. |
| 6. Afferēbātur. | 14. Ablātū. |
| 7. Auferiminī. | 15. Perferēns. |
| 8. Attulisse. | 16. Auferātur. |

II

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. To bring. | 9. To be carried. |
| 2. To have endured. | 10. To be about to endure. |
| 3. Of bringing. | 11. I may take away. |
| 4. He would carry. | 12. You would have brought. |
| 5. He may bring. | 13. About to bear. |
| 6. They shall bring. | 14. Of taking away. |
| 7. You will endure. | 15. He had brought. |
| 8. You shall endure. | 16. To have been carried. |

III

1. Intellegimus multās nātiōnēs aliēnās ā Rōmānīs superātās esse. 2. Cōstat Athēnās fuisse urbem celebrem. 3. Contumēliās nātiōnum inimicārum diūtius perferre nōn possumus. 4. Cōpiās hārum gentium cōnsūmī nōn oportet. 5. Librīs legendīs hominēs discendi cupidi fiunt. 6. Si negōtium facile factū sit, idne faciās? 7. Si tuus patriae amor māior fuisset, fortius pugnāvissēs. 8. Vereor ut satis fortis ad calamitātēs perferendās sis. 9. Factum est ut militēs ad iter faciendum parātī essent. 10. Caesar dixit sē diem ad eās rēs cōficiendās sūmptūrum esse.

11. Nōne putās eōs quī bonī sint esse beatōs? 12. Nōn licet hās rēs ex urbe auferre. 13. Socii nostrī sunt tam fidēlēs ut hostibus bellum sine timōre inferāmus. 14. Līberī Rōmānī trecentōs annōs haec discere consuēvērunt.

IV

1. If you had wished to go to Rome, you would have been able to. 2. The farmer's son went into the field to find the horse. 3. I think that this island which we can see will be easy to capture. 4. By reading you will make your memory better. 5. I fear that the barbarians are forming a plan for (the purpose of) tearing down the bridge. 6. To prepare for waging war is difficult, but to wage war is more difficult. 7. If this happens, I shall command my men to make the attempt at once. 8. He brought (it) about that these things turned out well. 9. It is not fitting for a boy to demand such things. 10. Bring your book to me.



CARRUS

THE STORY OF THE HELVETIAN WAR

TO THE PUPIL:—In the following pages is given an account, largely in Caesar's own words, of his war against the Helvetians, the first people he subdued in Gaul.

I. GAUL AND ITS INHABITANTS

Gallia est omnis¹ divisa² in partēs trēs. Hārum³ ūnam⁴ incolunt Belgae,⁵ aliam Aquitāni, tertiam Celtae, quī linguā⁶ nostrā Galli⁷ appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā,⁸ institūtis, lēgibus inter sē⁹ differunt. Garumna flūmen Gallōs ab Aquitānis¹⁰ dividit, atque Mātrona et Sēquana Gallōs ā Belgis dividunt.

Hōrum⁸ omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitātē prōvinciae longissimē absunt, et mercātōrēs ea,⁴ quae¹¹ ad effēminandōs¹² animōs pertinent, nōn important; proximique sunt Germānis,¹³ quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte⁸ praecēdunt, quod ferē cotidiānis proeliis⁶ cum Germānis¹⁴ contendunt, cum aut suis finibus¹⁰ eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum¹⁵ finibus¹⁶ bellum gerunt.

¹ as a whole. ² 4, 2, note. ³ 223. ⁴ 10, 1. ⁵ 4, 1. ⁶ 273. ⁷ 254, 1.
⁸ 280. ⁹ from each other. ¹⁰ 265. ¹¹ 113, 2. ¹² 356, 2. ¹³ 250. ¹⁴ 276.
¹⁵ 221. ¹⁶ 296, 3.

II. ORGETORIX ROUSES THE HELVETIANS

Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus¹ fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix.² Is, M. Messālā³ et M. Pisōne³ cōsulibus,³ rēgni⁴ cupiditātē⁵ inductus⁶ coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit.

Civitatī⁷ persuāsit ut de finibus⁸ suis cum omnibus cōpiis⁹ exirent.¹⁰ Eis facilius persuāsit, quod undique loci nātūrā¹¹ Helvētīi continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō¹² atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānis¹³ dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dividit. Prō¹⁴ multitudīne hominū Helvētīi angustōs sē¹⁵ finēs¹⁶ habēre¹⁷ arbitrabantur. Finēs eōrum¹⁸ in longitūdinem milia¹⁹ passuum²⁰ CCXL, in lātitudinem CLXXX patēbant.

¹ 4, 2, note. ² 4, 1. ³ 287, 4; *M. Messala and M. Piso (being) consuls; i.e. in the consulship of . . . , etc.* ⁴ 228. ⁵ 272. ⁶ 286, 2, a. With what does inductus agree? ⁷ 240. ⁸ 296, 2. ⁹ 276. ¹⁰ 333, 2, A. ¹¹ 273. ¹² 77, 1. ¹³ 265. ¹⁴ in proportion to, considering. ¹⁵ 256. ¹⁶ 10, 1. ¹⁷ 338, 2, Rule. ¹⁸ 221. ¹⁹ 255. ²⁰ 223.

III. PREPARATIONS OF THE HELVETIANS; THE SCHEME OF ORGETORIX

Helvētīi, his rēbus¹ adducti² et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōti, cōstituērunt ea,³ quae⁴ ad proficiscendum⁵ pertinērent⁶ comparāre.⁷ Cōstituērunt iūmentōrum⁸ et carrōrum quam maximum⁹ numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmenti suppeteret,¹⁰ cum proximīs civitatibus¹¹ pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāre.

Ad eās rēs cōficiendās¹² Orgetorix dux¹³ dēligitur¹⁴ atque lēgatiōnem ad civitatēs suscipit.¹⁴ In eō itinere persuādet¹⁴ Casticō,¹⁵ duci¹⁶ Sēquanōrum, ut rēgnū in civitatē suā occupāret¹⁷; itemque Dumnorigi, duci Haeduōrum, ut idem cōnārētur, persuādet.¹⁴ Illis¹⁸ probat¹⁴ id¹⁹ esse²⁰ perfacile²¹ factū,²² quod ipse suae civitatīs imperium obtentūrus esset,²³ quae tōtius Galliae plūrimū posset.²⁴ Cōnfirmit¹⁴ sē¹⁹ suō exercitū²⁵ illis¹⁸ auxilium datūrum²⁰ esse.

Hāc orātiōne adducti,²⁶ inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum²⁷ dant.¹⁴ Rēgnō²⁸ occupātō, imperiō²⁹ tōtius Galliae sēsē¹⁹ potitūrōs²⁰ esse spērant.¹⁴

¹ 272. ² 286, 2, a. ³ 10, 1; object of comparāre. ⁴ 113, 2. ⁵ 355.
⁶ Translate by indicative. ⁷ 346, 1. ⁸ 223. ⁹ 77, 2, b. ¹⁰ 310.
¹¹ 276. ¹² 356, 2, c. ¹³ 254, 1. ¹⁴ In rapid narrative, the present tense is often used in speaking of past actions, and may be followed by the secondary sequence. Translate by the English past tense. ¹⁵ 240. ¹⁶ 17, 2. ¹⁷ 333, 2, A. ¹⁸ 239. ¹⁹ 256. ²⁰ 338, 2, rule. ²¹ 4, 2, note; agrees with id; what case? ²² 358, 2. ²³ 340. ²⁴ plūrimū posset, was able the most, i.e. was the most powerful. ²⁵ 273. ²⁶ Agrees with the subject. ²⁷ fidem et iūs iūrandum, a pledge of good faith. ²⁸ 287, 3. ²⁹ 274.

IV. TRIAL AND DEATH OF ORGETORIX

Ea rēs Helvētiis¹ per indicium² ēnūntiāta est et Orgetorigem³ ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt. Diē⁴ cōnstitūtā causae⁵ dictiōnis Orgetorix ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum⁶ milia decem, undique coēgit et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit. Per eōs sē ēripuit. Cīvītās, ob eam rem incitāta,⁷ armīs⁸ iūs suum exsequi⁹ cōnāta est. Cum autem magistrātūs multitudinem hominum cōgerent,¹⁰ Orgetorix mortuus est. Helvētii arbitrantur ipsum¹¹ sibi¹¹ mortem¹¹ cōnscivisse.¹¹

¹ 239. ² through information, i.e. through informers. ³ 256. ⁴ 287, 2. ⁵ 228. ⁶ 223. ⁷ 286, 2, a. ⁸ 273. ⁹ 346, 1. ¹⁰ 320. ¹¹ 338, 1, 2; that he decreed death to himself, i.e. that he committed suicide.

V. PREPARATIONS OF THE HELVETIANS

Post eiūs mortem nihilō¹ minus,² Helvētii ē finibus³ suis exire cōstituērunt. Ubi iam sē⁴ ad eam rem parātōs⁵ esse arbitrāti sunt, oppida sua omnia numerō⁶ ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs incendunt. Ita domum⁷ redi-

tiōnis⁸ spem sustulērunt ut parātiōrēs⁹ ad omnia pericula subeunda¹⁰ essent.¹¹

Persuādent Rauracis¹² et Tulingis et Latobrigis finitimis¹³ utī eōdem cōsiliō¹⁴ ūtantur¹⁵ et ūnā cum eis proficiscantur.¹⁶ Bōiōs,¹⁶ quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant, sociōs¹⁷ recēpērunt.

¹ 268. ² less by nothing (nihilō), i.e. nevertheless. ³ 296, 2. ⁴ 256. ⁵ 4, 2, note; why accusative? ⁶ 280. ⁷ 297, 1. ⁸ 228. ⁹ 4, 2, note. ¹⁰ 356, 2; to undergo all dangers. ¹¹ 310. ¹² 240. ¹³ 17, 2. ¹⁴ 274. ¹⁵ 333, 2, A. ¹⁶ 10, 1. ¹⁷ In apposition with Bōiōs: They received the Boii as comrades.

VI. THE TWO ROUTES OF DEPARTURE

Erant omninō itinera duo, quibus¹ itineribus² domō³ exire possent.⁴ Ūnum erat per Sēquanōs, angustum⁵ et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum quō¹ vix singuli carri dūcerentur⁶; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat ut facile perpaucī eōs prohibēre possent.⁷ Alterum erat per prōvinciam nostram, multō⁸ facilius,⁹ proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācāti erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōnnūllis locis¹⁰ vadō trānsitur. Allobrogēs, quī proximī Helvētiis¹¹ sunt, nōndum bonō animō¹² in populum Rōmānum erant. Helvētiī igitur existimābant Allobrogibus¹³ sēsē persuāsūrōs esse ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur. Omnibus rēbus¹⁴ ad profectiōnem comparātis, diem dīcunt quā diē¹⁵ ad ripam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant.¹⁶

¹ 273. ² Omit in translating. ³ 297, 2. ⁴ 315. ⁵ angustum: in agreement with ūnum (iter). ⁶ 315; quō . . . dūcerentur, by which carts could scarcely be drawn in single file. ⁷ 314. ⁸ 268; multō facilius, easier by much, i.e. much easier. ⁹ facilius agrees with alterum (iter). ¹⁰ nōnnūllis locis, in some places; locus may omit the preposition in expressing place where. ¹¹ 250. ¹² 281. ¹³ 240. ¹⁴ 287, 3. ¹⁵ 282; on which (day). ¹⁶ 316.

VII. CAESAR PREPARES TO CHECK THE HELVETIANS

Cum Caesar cognōvisset ¹ eōs ² per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, ³ mātūrat ⁴ ab urbe proficisci, ⁵ et quam maximis ⁶ itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem cōtendit et ad ⁷ Genavam pervenit. Erat omninō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna. In prōvinciā igitur quam maximum numerum militum cōscribit, et pontem, ² quī erat ad Genavam, iubet rescindi. ⁸ Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs ⁹ facti sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, nōbilissimōs civitātis, cūius lēgatiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant. Hi lēgātī dixērunt sē velle ¹⁰ iter per prōvinciam facere propterea quod aliud iter habērent ¹¹ nūllum. Rogāvērunt ut ēius voluntāte id ¹² sibi ¹³ facere ¹⁴ liceret. ¹⁵

Caesar autem nōn existimābat hominēs inimicō animō, ¹⁶ facultāte ¹⁷ datā per prōvinciam itineris faciendī, ¹⁸ temperātūrōs esse ab iniuriā. Tamen, quod omnēs militēs nōndum convēnerant, respondit sē diem ad dēliberandum ¹⁹ sūmptūrum esse. Praecēpit lēgātis ut paucis post diēbus ²⁰ reverterentur. ²¹

¹ 320. ² 256. ³ 338, 2, Rule. ⁴ mātūrat; see note (14) on dēligitur, III. This use of the present tense is very common, and occurs several times in this section. It is called the *historical present*, and may be followed by either the primary or secondary tenses. ⁵ 346, 1. ⁶ 77, 2, b. ⁷ in the vicinity of. ⁸ 346, 2. ⁹ 254, 1; 263. ¹⁰ sē velle, 338, 2, Rule. ¹¹ 340. ¹² id, object of facere. ¹³ 239; after liceret. ¹⁴ 345, 1. ¹⁵ 333, 2, A. ¹⁶ 281, 17 287, 3. ¹⁸ itineris faciendī, 356, 2. ¹⁹ 355. ²⁰ 266. ²¹ 333, 2, A.

VIII. CAESAR FORTIFIES THE RHONE

Interea ā lacū ¹ Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem ² Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis ³ dividit, mūrum fossamque perdūcit. ⁴ Hic mūrus erat in altitudinem sēdecim pedum. ⁵ Eō opere ⁶ perfectō prae-

sidia dispōnit et castella commūnit quibus⁷ hostēs prohibēre posset.⁸

Ubi ea diēs quam⁹ cōstituerat cum lēgātis vēnit, et lēgāti ad eum revertērunt, negat sē¹⁰ iter per prōvinciam ūlli¹¹ dare posse,¹⁰ et dixit, "Si vim facere cōnābimini,¹² vōs prohibēbō."¹² Helvētiī, eā spē¹³ dēiectī, nāvibus¹⁴ ratibusque et vadis Rhodanī perrumpere cōnāti sunt. Mūnitiōne et militum concursū et tēlis repulsī hōc cōnātū¹⁵ dēstitērunt.

¹ 296, 2. ² 296, 1. ³ 265. ⁴ Historical present. ⁵ 227, a. ⁶ 237, 2, 3. ⁷ 273. ⁸ 316. ⁹ 113, 2. ¹⁰ sē posse, 333, 2, Rule. ¹¹ 239. ¹² 351, 1. ¹³ eā spē dēiectī, cast down from this hope, i.e. disappointed in this hope; spē, 265. ¹⁴ 273.

IX. THE HELVETIANS ARRANGE TO TAKE THE OTHER ROUTE

Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā,¹ Sēquanis² invītis, propter angustias ire nōn poterant. His³ cum ipsī persuādere nōn possent,⁴ Dumnorigem Haeduum mittunt⁵ quī ā Sēquanis impetrāret.⁶ Dumnorix apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat⁷ et Helvētiīs⁸ erat amicus, quod ex eā civitate Orgetorigis filiam in mātirimōnium dūxerat.⁹ Is, cupiditate¹⁰ rēgnī¹¹ adductus, novis rēbus¹² studēbat et quam plūrimās civitatēs sibi¹³ amicās¹⁴ esse volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanis impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur.¹⁵

¹ 273. ² Sēquanis invītis, 237, 4. ³ 240. ⁴ 321. ⁵ Historical present. ⁶ 316. ⁷ plūrimum poterat, was able very much, i.e. was very powerful. ⁸ 250. ⁹ in mātirimōnium dūxerat, had led into matrimony, i.e. had married. ¹⁰ 272. ¹¹ 228. ¹² 240. ¹³ Compare with Helvētiīs, above. ¹⁴ 4, 2, Note; agreeing with civitatēs. ¹⁵ 333, 2, B.

X. CAESAR MAKES FURTHER PREPARATIONS

Caesar cognōvit Helvētiis¹ esse² in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere.³ Santonēs nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae civitās⁴ est in prōvinciā. Caesar nōlēbat prōvinciam⁵ hominēs⁶ bellicōsōs, populi Rōmānī inimicōs finitimōs⁷ habēre. Ob eās causās ei mūnitiōnī⁸ quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum⁹ lēgātum praeficit. Ipse in Ītaliā magnis itineribus¹⁰ contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōscribit, et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hibernis ēdūcit et quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliā per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus¹¹ ire contendit. Paucis diēbus¹² exercitum dūcit in Segusiāvōs, quī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum nātiō prima.

¹ Helvētiis esse in animō . . . iter . . . facere, (*that*) to make a march was in mind to the Helvetians, i.e. (*that*) the Helvetians had in mind to make a march. Helvētiis, 249. ² 338, 2, Rule. ³ 345, 1; facere is subject of esse, taking the place of the subject accusative. ⁴ quae civitās, which state, i.e. a state which. The antecedent is here, as often, in the relative clause. ⁵ 256. ⁶ Object of habēre. ⁷ In apposition with hominēs; (*as*) neighbors. ⁸ 241. ⁹ 10, 1. ¹⁰ magnis itineribus, by forced marches. ¹¹ 276. ¹² 282.

XI. THE HAEDUI AND OTHERS ASK FOR AID

Helvētiī iam per angustias et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaeque¹ ab eis dēfendere nōn possent,² lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum³ auxilium. Dixerunt paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī eōrum agrōs⁴ vāstārī,⁵ liberōs⁴ in servitūtem abdūcī,⁵ oppida⁴ expugnārī⁵ nōn dēbuisse.⁶ Eōdem tempore,⁷ Ambarri, necessariī et cōsanguinei Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiorē⁸ faciunt sēsē nōn facile ab oppidis⁹ vim hostiū prohibēre. Itēm Allobrogēs, quī trāns

Rhodanum vicōs possessionēque habēbant, querēbantur. Quibus rēbus adductus, Caesar nōn diūtius exspectandum ¹⁰ esse sibi ¹¹ statuit.

¹ *sua, their (things), i.e. their property.* ² 321. ³ 358, 1. ⁴ Subjects of *dēbuisse*. ⁵ Objects of *dēbuisse*. ⁶ 338, 1, 2; translate: *their lands ought not to have been laid waste*, etc. ⁷ 282. ⁸ 254; *certiorem faciunt* is followed by the construction of indirect discourse. ⁹ 265. ¹⁰ *nōn diūtius . . . statuit, decided (it) ought not to be waited by him any longer, i.e. decided he ought not to wait any longer.* *Exspectandum esse*, 247. ¹¹ 248.

XII.

DESTRUCTION OF THE TIGURINI

Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incredibili lēnitātē,¹ ita ut oculis, in utram partem fluat,² iūdicārī nōn possit.³ Id Helvētī ratibus⁴ ac lintribus iūctis trānsibant. Per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior⁵ factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiārum id flūmen trānsiisse,⁶ quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam⁷ esse.⁶ Dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus⁸ tribus ē castris profectus,⁹ ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impeditōs et inopīnantēs aggressus,⁹ magnam partem eōrum concidit; reliquī sēsē fuae¹⁰ mandāvērunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt.¹¹

Omnis civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs divisā est. Hic pāgus ūnus, quī appellābātur Tigurinus,¹² patrum nostrōrum memoriā,¹³ L. Cassium cōsulem interfēcerať et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sive cāsū¹⁴ sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortalīum, ea pars civitātis Helvētiāe quae insignem calamitātem populō¹⁵ Rōmānō intulerat, princeps¹⁶ poenās persolvit.

¹ 275. ² 333, 2, D; the clause *in utram partem fluat* is subject of *possit*. ³ 314. ⁴ 287, 2; *ratibus . . . iūctis, by joining rafts*, etc. ⁵ 254, 1. ⁶ 338, 1, 2. ⁷ 4, 2, note. ⁸ 276. ⁹ Participle, nominative, agreeing with the subject. ¹⁰ 239. ¹¹ *in proximās silvās abdidērunt, hid in the nearest woods.* *Silvās* is the accusative because the idea is *they went into the woods and hid*. ¹² 254, 1. ¹³ 282; *within the memory*. ¹⁴ 272. ¹⁵ 241. ¹⁶ *princeps*, adj. agreeing with *para*.

XIII. THE HELVETIAN EMBASSY; A CAVALRY BATTLE

Hōc proeliō¹ factō, ut reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum cōnsequi posset,² Caesar pontem in Ararī facit³ atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētīi, repentinō ēius⁴ adventū⁵ commōti,⁶ lēgātōs ad eum mittunt. Hi lēgāti eum perterrere cōnantur, et multa⁷ dē virtūte suā atque dē calamitāte vetere, quam Tigurinī Cassiō⁸ intulerant, dicunt. Caesar autem postulat ut Helvētīi domum⁹ revertantur,¹⁰ et aliās pācis condiciōnēs accipere nōn vult.

Posterō diē¹¹ castra ex eō locō movent. Idem Caesar facit, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium,¹² quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduis atque eōrum sociis coēgerat, praemittit quī videant¹³ quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant.¹⁴ Quī,¹⁵ cupidius novissimum agmen insecuti, aliēnō locō¹⁶ cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et pauci dē nostrīs cadunt.

¹ 287, 2, 3. ² 310. ³ Historical present. ⁴ 221. ⁵ 272. ⁶ 286, 2, a.
⁷ many things. ⁸ 241. ⁹ 297, 1. ¹⁰ 333, 2, A. ¹¹ 232. ¹² 227, a. ¹³ 316.
¹⁴ 333, 2, D. ¹⁵ Quī, *these*; relative with demonstrative force. ¹⁶ See VI, note 10.

XIV. CAESAR FOLLOWS THE HELVETIANS. TROUBLE OVER THE SUPPLY OF GRAIN

Quō proeliō¹ sublāti Helvētīi, quod quīngentis equitibus² tantam multitudinem equitum³ prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam⁴ et novissimō agmine⁵ proeliō⁶ nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac hostem rapinīs⁶ populātiōnibusque prohibere cōnābātur. Ita diēs⁷ circiter XV iter fēcērunt uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum⁸ nōn amplius quīnis aut sēnis milibus⁹ passuum interesset.¹⁰

Interim Haeduī cōpiam frūmentī, quam polliciti erant, nōn praebēbant. Caesar dē hāc rē quaerit¹¹ et reperit

Dumnorigem esse virum¹² qui Haeduōs dēterreat,¹³ nē frūmentum cōferant.¹⁴ (Dumnorix haec faciēbat quod Helvētiis¹⁵ amicus erat.) Caesar igitur Dumnorigī¹⁶ cūstōdēs pōnit¹¹ et post haec Haedui rem frūmentāriam prōvident.

¹ 272. ² 273. ³ 223. ⁴ non numquam, not never, i.e. sometimes.
⁵ 273; agmine is instrument; proellō is means. ⁶ 265. ⁷ 255. ⁸ primum (agmen), the first (part of the column), i.e. the advance guard, the van. ⁹ 267.
¹⁰ 314. ¹¹ Historical present. ¹² Why accusative? ¹³ 340. ¹⁴ qui . . . cōferant, who was hindering the Haedui from gathering the grain (literally, lest they should gather the grain; nē . . . cōferant is a substantive purpose clause, object of dēterreat. ¹⁵ 250. ¹⁶ 239.

XV.

CAESAR PREPARES TO ATTACK

Paucis post diēbus¹ Caesar ab explōrātōribus² certior³ factus hostēs sub monte cōsēdisse⁴ milia⁵ passuum ab ipsius⁶ castris octō, quālis esset⁷ nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēsus, qui cognōscerent,⁸ misit. Renūntiātum est facilem⁹ esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum,¹⁰ lēgātum prō praetōre,¹¹ cum duābus legiōnibus¹² et eis ducibus¹³ qui iter cognōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere¹⁴ iubet; quid sui cōsili¹⁵ sit,¹⁶ ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere¹⁷ quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, qui rei¹⁸ militāris peritissimus¹⁹ habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

¹ 268. ² 266. ³ 254, 1. ⁴ Main verb in indirect discourse governed by certior factus. ⁵ 255. ⁶ 221. ⁷ 333, 2, D; quālis . . . esset . . . ascēsus is object of cognōscerent. ⁸ 316; qui cognōscerent misit, sent (men) to find out (literally, who should find out). ⁹ In agreement with ascēsum, understood, as subject of esse. ¹⁰ 256. ¹¹ prō praetōre, with the power of a praetor. ¹² 276. ¹³ eis ducibus, with those (men) as guides; ducibus, 17, 2. ¹⁴ 346, 2; the subject accusative is Labiēnum. ¹⁵ 223; quid sui cōsili sit, what (of) his plan (there) was. ¹⁶ 333, 2, D; the clause is object of ostendit. ¹⁷ 273. ¹⁸ rei . . . peritissimus, most skilful in warfare; rei, 229. ¹⁹ 4, 2, note; 254, 1.

XVI.

THE ERROR OF CONSIDIUS

Primā lūce,¹ cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō² tenērētur,⁸ ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quingentis passibus⁴ abesset,³ neque aut ipsius⁵ adventus aut Labiēni cognitus esset,⁸ Cōnsidius equō⁶ admissō ad eum accurrit; dicit montem, quem⁷ ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit,⁸ ab hostibus tenērī; id⁹ sē¹⁰ ā Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labiēnus, monte occupātō, nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat, quod Caesar ei¹¹ praeceperat nē ante adventum ipsius proelium committeret¹² ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret.¹³ Multō dēnique diē¹⁴ per explorātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suis tenērī¹⁵ et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium, timōre¹⁶ perterritum, id¹⁷ quod nōn vidisset prō visō sibi renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuēverat intervāllō¹⁸ hostēs sequitur et milia¹⁹ passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra pōnit.

¹ Why ablative? ² 266. ³ 320. ⁴ 267. ⁵ 221. ⁶ 287, 2; at full speed. What is the exact meaning? ⁷ Subject of occupārī. ⁸ Why subjunctive? ⁹ Object of cognōvisse. ¹⁰ Subject of cognōvisse. Why is cognōvisse infinitive? ¹¹ Why dative? ¹² nē . . . committeret; what kind of a clause? ¹³ Why subjunctive? ¹⁴ Multō diē, late in the day; why ablative? ¹⁵ Why infinitive? ¹⁶ 272. ¹⁷ Object of renūntiāvisse; id . . . renūntiāvisse, had reported that which he had not seen, as (if he had) seen (it). Visō, is the perfect participle, used substantively. ¹⁸ 275; quō . . . intervāllō, at the usual distance. ¹⁹ Why accusative?

XVII. THE HELVETIANS FOLLOW CAESAR TOWARD BIBRACTE

Posterō diē,¹ quod omninō biduum supererat, cum exercitui² frūmentum mētiri³ oportēret,⁴ et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius milibus⁵ passuum XVIII aberat, iter ab Helvētiis

āvertit ac Bibracte⁶ ire contendit. Ea rēs per fugitivōs L. Aemili, decuriōnis⁷ equitum Gallōrum, hostibus⁸ nūntiātur. Helvēti existimāvērunt Rōmānōs, timōre perterritōs,⁹ ā sē discēdere, atque igitur, commūtātō cōnsiliō¹⁰ atque itinere conversō, nostrōs ā novissimō agmine insequi ac lacessere coepērunt.

¹ Why ablative ? ² Why dative ? ³ 345, i. ⁴ Why subjunctive ? *cum . . . oportēret, when it would be necessary to distribute, etc.* ⁵ Why ablative ? ⁶ Accusative ; why ? ⁷ Why genitive ? ⁸ Case ? why ? ⁹ With what does this participle agree ? ¹⁰ Case ? why ?

XVIII.

PREPARATIONS FOR BATTLE

Postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque, qui sustinēret¹ hostium² impetum, misit. Ipse interim in colle mediō³ triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum ; in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripserat, et omnia auxilia collocārī, ac tōtum montem hominibus⁴ complēri, et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōferri, et eum ab eis,⁵ qui in superioriōre aciē cōstiterant, mūniri iussit.⁶ Helvētii, cum omnibus suis carrīs secūti, impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt ; ipsi cōfertissimā aciē,⁷ rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub primam nostram aciem successērunt.

¹ 316. ² Case ? why ? ³ in colle mediō, in the middle of the hill, i.e. half way up the hill. ⁴ Case ? why ? ⁵ Case ? why ? ⁶ iussit ; on this verb depends the entire passage preceding, from in summō iugō. There are four infinitives, with subject accusative, used as objects of this verb. ⁷ cōfertissimā aciē, in very close array ; why ablative ?

XIX.

THE BATTLE

Caesar primum equis¹ omnium ex cōspectū remōtis, ut aequātō omnium periculō² spem fugae³ tolleret,⁴ cohortātus⁵ suōs proelium commisit. Militēs ē locō superioriōre

pilis missis facile hostium phalangem perfrēgerunt. Eā disiectā, gladiis⁶ dēstrictis in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Plūribus⁷ Gallōrum scūtis unō ictū pilōrum trānsfixis et colligātis, cum ferrum sē inflexisset,⁸ neque ēvellere⁹ neque sinistrā impeditā satis commodē pugnāre poterant. Hōc Gallis¹⁰ magnō ad pugnam erat impedimentō,¹⁰ ut multi, diū iactātō bracciō, praeoptārent¹¹ scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore¹² pugnāre.

Tandem vulneribus dēfessī, ad montem, qui aberat circiter mille passūs¹³ sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostris, Bōii et Tulingī, qui hominum milibus¹⁴ circiter XV agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimis¹⁵ praesidiō¹⁵ erant, nostrōs ab latere apertō¹⁶ aggressi, circumvenire coepērunt; et id cōspiciātī, Helvētīi, qui in montem sēsē recēperant, rūsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt.

¹ *equis*, ablative absolute with *remōtis*. ² *aequātō omnium periculō*, by equalizing the danger of all. Be careful to render the numerous ablative absolutes in this section into good English. ³ Case? why? ⁴ Why subjunctive? ⁵ Perfect participle, deponent, active meaning. ⁶ *gladiis dēstrictis*, with drawn swords. ⁷ *plūribus . . . colligātis*, when many of the Gauls' shields had been pierced and fastened together, etc. The Gauls were so close together that the shields overlapped, so that several were pierced by one *pilum*. ⁸ *cum . . . inflexisset*, causal or temporal? The *ferrum* was the soft iron shank, easily bent. ⁹ to pull (them, i.e. the *pila*) out. ¹⁰ **242**; two datives. Note the translation of the example in **242**. ¹¹ Why subjunctive? ¹² **275**; with body unprotected. ¹³ Case? why? ¹⁴ Why ablative? ¹⁵ **242**. ¹⁶ *ab latere apertō*, on the open flank, i.e. on the right; why?

XX. DEFEAT AND FLIGHT OF THE HELVETIANS

Rōmānī signa convertērunt¹ et ita ancipiti proeliō² diū atque ācriter pugnāvērunt. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum³ impetūs nōn possent,⁴ alteri⁵ sē in montem recēperunt, alteri⁵ ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō,⁶ cum ab hōrā septimā⁷

ad vesperum pugnātum sit,⁸ āversum hostem⁹ vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem¹⁰ etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est.¹¹ Diū cum esset¹² pugnātum, impedimentis¹³ castrisque nostrī potitī sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est.

Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum milia CXXX superfuērunt. Hī fūgērunt et in finēs Lingonum diē¹⁴ quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepultūram occisōrum nostrī eōs sequī nōn potuissent.¹⁵ Caesar ad Lingonēs nūntiōs misit et imperāvit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent.¹⁶ Ipse triduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiis¹⁷ eōs sequī coepit.

¹ *signa convertērunt, turned the standards, i.e. faced about.* ² Case? why? ³ Case? why? ⁴ Mood? why? ⁵ *alteri . . . alteri, some . . . others.* ⁶ 282. ⁷ About one o'clock in the afternoon. ⁸ 322. ⁹ *āversum hostem, an enemy turned away, i.e. an enemy in flight.* ¹⁰ Cf. XVI, note 14. ¹¹ *pugnātum est, it was fought, i.e. the fight went on.* ¹² *esset pugnātum = pugnātum esset.* ¹³ 274. ¹⁴ Why ablative? ¹⁵ Mood? why? ¹⁶ *nē . . . iuvārent; kind of clause?* ¹⁷ Case? why?

XXI. THE SURRENDER. SIX THOUSAND ESCAPE

Helvētīi omnium rērum inopiā¹ adductī lēgātōs dē dēditionē ad eum misērunt. Quī,² cum³ eum in itinere convēnissent pācemque petissent atque eōs suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pārūerunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōsque fugitivōs poposcit. Noctē⁴ autem intermissā, circiter hominum milia VI ēius pāgī, quī Verbigenus⁵ appellātur, sive timōre⁶ perterritī, nē armis⁷ trāditīs supplicio afficerentur,⁸ sive spē salutis⁹ inductī, primā nocte¹⁰ ē castris¹¹ Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

¹ Case? why? ² Cf. XIII, note 15. ³ What verbs depend on this *cum*? ⁴ Why ablative? ⁵ Case? why? ⁶ Why ablative? ⁷ Translate: *after their arms had been handed over.* ⁸ *nē . . . supplicio afficerentur, lest they should be afflicted with punishment, i.e. put to death.* For kind of clause, see 333, 2, C. ⁹ Why genitive? ¹⁰ *primā nocte, in the first (part of the) night, early in the night.* ¹¹ Case? why?

XXII. CAESAR ORDERS THE HELVETIANS TO RETURN HOME

Quod¹ ubi Caesar resciiit, quōrum² per finēs ierant, his³ uti conquirerent et reducerent⁴ imperāvit; reductōs⁵ in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armis, perfugis trāditis, in dēditionem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profecti, reverti⁶ iussit; et quod omnibus frūgibus āmissis domi⁷ nihil erat quō⁸ famem tolerārent,⁹ Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut eis¹⁰ frūmenti cōpiam facerent;¹¹ ipsōs oppida vicōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit.

Id eā maximē ratiōne¹² fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum, unde Helvētīi discesserant, vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germāni, qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsirent¹³ et finitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent.¹³ Bōiōs¹⁴ petentibus Haeduīs,¹⁵ ut in finibus suis collocārent, concessit; quibus illi agrōs dedērunt, quōsque postea in parem iūris libertātisque condiciōnem, atque¹⁶ ipsi erant, recēperunt.

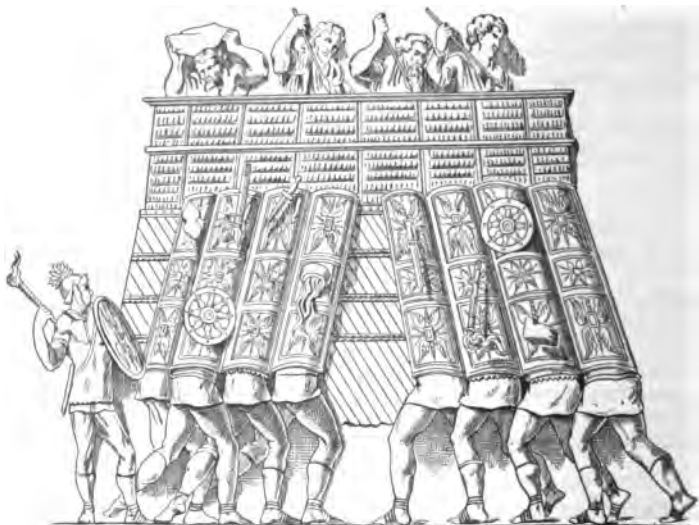
¹ See XIII, note 15. ² The antecedent is *his*; *quōrum* . . . *his*, *those through whose territory they had gone*. ³ Why dative? ⁴ *uti* . . . *reducerent*; what kind of clause? ⁵ *reductōs* agrees with *eōs* understood; *reductōs* . . . *habuit*, *he considered (them, when they had been) brought back among the number of the enemy, i.e. he put them to death*. ⁶ Object of *iussit*; 346, 2. ⁷ 297, 3. ⁸ Why ablative? ⁹ 315. ¹⁰ Indirect object of *facerent*, which means *furnish, provide*. ¹¹ Why subjunctive? ¹² 272. ¹³ *nō* . . . *trānsirent* . . . *essent*; kind of clause? ¹⁴ *Bōiōs* is object of *collocārent*; it stands first for emphasis. ¹⁵ *petentibus Haeduīs*, indirect object of *concessit*; *he granted to the asking Haedui, i.e. he granted the request of the Haedui*. What is the direct object of *concessit*? ¹⁶ *atque*, *as*.

XXIII. THE NUMBER OF THE HELVETIANS

In castris Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs¹ Graecis cōfectae et ad Caesarem relātae,² quibus in tabulīs

nōminātīm ratiō cōfecta erat, quī numerus domō⁸ exisset⁴ eōrum quī arma ferre possent,⁵ et item sēparātīm quot puerī, senēs, mulierēsque. Summa erat capitum⁶ Helvētiōrum milium CCLXIII, Tulingōrum milium XXXVI, Latobrigōrum XIV, Rauracōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex his, quī arma ferre possent,⁷ ad⁸ milia nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad milia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum, quī domum⁹ rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, repertus est numerus milium C et X.

¹ Why ablative? ² *relātæ* (sunt). ³ Case? why? ⁴ *quī . . . exisset*; this clause is object of some verb of "telling," implied in *ratiō*; *an account (stating) what number*, etc. **333**, 2, D. ⁵ **315**. ⁶ "head" of *Helvetians*. Cf. "head of sheep." Omit in translating. ⁷ Why subjunctive? ⁸ *about*. ⁹ *domum*; why accusative?



TESTUDO

WORD LIST FOR DRILL

LATIN WORD LIST¹

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. 1. <i>Ītalia, ae, f.</i> | 11. <i>sunt.</i> |
| 2. <i>longa.</i> | 12. <i>bona.</i> |
| 3. <i>incola, ae, m.</i> | 13. <i>dea, ae, f.</i> |
| 4. <i>magna.</i> | 14. <i>via, ae, f.</i> |
| 5. <i>filia, ae, f.</i> | 15. <i>tuba, ae, f.</i> |
| 6. <i>multa.</i> | 2. 16. <i>Britannia, ae, f.</i> |
| 7. <i>nōn.</i> | 17. <i>amō.</i> |
| 8. <i>agricola, ae, m.</i> | 18. <i>vocō.</i> |
| 9. <i>parva.</i> | 19. <i>sum.</i> |
| 10. <i>est.</i> | 20. <i>vexō.</i> |
| 21. <i>rosa, ae, f.</i> | 31. <i>patria, ae, f.</i> |
| 22. <i>puella, ae, f.</i> | 32. <i>pulchra.</i> |
| 23. <i>et.</i> | 3. 33. <i>pugnō.</i> |
| 24. <i>Gallia, ae, f.</i> | 34. <i>ager, agri, m.</i> |
| 25. <i>in.</i> | 35. <i>Gallus, ī, m.</i> |
| 26. <i>mēnsa, ae, f.</i> | 36. <i>vir, viri, m.</i> |
| 27. <i>rēgīna, ae, f.</i> | 37. <i>socer, eri, m.</i> |
| 28. <i>laudō.</i> | 38. <i>gener, eri, m.</i> |
| 29. <i>Galba, ae, m.</i> | 39. <i>filius, ī, m.</i> |
| 30. <i>īnsula, ae, f.</i> | 40. <i>ad.</i> |
| 41. <i>liberi, orum, m.</i> | 51. <i>dē.</i> |
| 42. <i>servus, ī, m.</i> | 52. <i>deus, ī, m.</i> |
| 43. <i>portō.</i> | 53. <i>comparō.</i> |
| 44. <i>Mārcus, ī, m.</i> | 54. <i>frūmentum, ī, n.</i> |
| 45. <i>puer, eri, m.</i> | 55. <i>-ne.</i> |
| 4. 46. <i>bellum, ī, n.</i> | 56. <i>ubi.</i> |
| 47. <i>liber.</i> | 57. <i>Rōmānī, ōrum, m.</i> |
| 48. <i>dōnum, ī, n.</i> | 58. <i>oppidum, ī, n.</i> |
| 49. <i>auxilium, ī, n.</i> | 59. <i>cōnsilium, ī, n.</i> |
| 50. <i>vāstō.</i> | 60. <i>proelium, ī, n.</i> |

¹ The heavy numbers refer to the lessons in which the words immediately following occur.

ENGLISH WORD LIST

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Italy. | 11. (they) are. |
| 2. long. | 12. good. |
| 3. inhabitant. | 13. goddess. |
| 4. great, large. | 14. way, road. |
| 5. daughter. | 15. trumpet. |
| 6. much, many. | 16. Britain. |
| 7. not. | 17. I love. |
| 8. farmer. | 18. I call, summon. |
| 9. small. | 19. I am. |
| 10. (he) is. | 20. I harass, annoy. |
| 21. rose. | 31. country, fatherland. |
| 22. girl. | 32. beautiful. |
| 23. and. | 33. I fight. |
| 24. Gaul. | 34. field. |
| 25. in, on. | 35. a Gaul. |
| 26. table. | 36. man. |
| 27. queen. | 37. father-in-law. |
| 28. I praise. | 38. son-in-law. |
| 29. Galba. | 39. son. |
| 30. island. | 40. to, toward, for, near. |
| 41. children. | 51. about, concerning. |
| 42. slave. | 52. god. |
| 43. I carry. | 53. provide, prepare. |
| 44. Marcus. | 54. grain. |
| 45. boy. | 55. interrogative particle. |
| 46. war. | 56. where? |
| 47. free. | 57. the Romans. |
| 48. gift. | 58. town, walled-town. |
| 49. aid, help. | 59. plan, advice. |
| 50. I lay waste. | 60. battle. |

LATIN WORD LIST—*Continued*

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 61. cōpia, ae, <i>f.</i> | 71. altus, a, um. |
| 62. cōpiae, ārum, <i>f.</i> | 72. asper, era, erum. |
| 63. cōsiliū, ī, <i>n.</i> | 73. lātus, a, um. |
| 5. 64. multus, a, um. | 74. hortus, ī, <i>m.</i> |
| 65. pulcher, chra, chrum. | 75. longus, a, um. |
| 66. superō. | 76. mūrus, ī, <i>m.</i> |
| 67. tener, era, erum. | 77. magnus, a, um. |
| 68. bonus, a, um. | 78. miser, era, erum. |
| 69. fossa, ae, <i>f.</i> | 79. liber, era, erum. |
| 70. arma, ōrum, <i>n.</i> | 80. parvus, a, um. |
| 6. 81. alius, a, ud. | 91. Rōmānus, a, um. |
| 82. alter, era, erum. | 92. castra, ōrum, <i>n.</i> |
| 83. uter, utra, utrum. | 93. nōnne. |
| 84. neuter, tra, trum. | 94. incitō. |
| 85. ūllus, a, um. | 95. populus, ī, <i>m.</i> |
| 86. nūllus, a, um. | 96. numerus, ī, <i>m.</i> |
| 87. ūnus, a, um. | 7. 97. habet. |
| 88. tōtus, a, um. | 98. habent. |
| 89. sōlus, a, um. | 99. legiō, ōnis, <i>f.</i> |
| 90. occupō. | 100. oppugnō. |
| 101. caput, itis, <i>n.</i> | 111. miles, itis, <i>m.</i> |
| 102. virtūs, ūtis, <i>f.</i> | 112. princeps, ipis, <i>m.</i> |
| 103. cōsul, ulis, <i>m.</i> | 113. num. |
| 104. trāns. | 114. periculum, ī, <i>n.</i> |
| 105. dux, ducis, <i>m.</i> | 115. virtūs, ūtis, <i>f.</i> |
| 106. tempus, oris, <i>n.</i> | 8. 116. vis, vis, <i>f.</i> |
| 107. exspectō. | 117. hostis, is, <i>m.</i> |
| 108. sine. | 118. turris, is, <i>f.</i> |
| 109. flūmen, inis, <i>n.</i> | 119. gēns, gentis, <i>f.</i> |
| 110. prōvincia, ae, <i>f.</i> | 120. silva, ae, <i>f.</i> |

ENGLISH WORD LIST—*Continued*

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 61. plenty. | 71. high, deep. |
| 62. troops. | 72. rough. |
| 63. wisdom. | 73. wide, broad. |
| 64. much ; <i>pl.</i> , many. | 74. garden. |
| 65. beautiful. | 75. long. |
| 66. I conquer, overcome. | 76. wall. |
| 67. tender. | 77. great, large. |
| 68. good. | 78. wretched. |
| 69. ditch, trench. | 79. free. |
| 70. arms. | 80. small, little. |
| 81. another, other. | 91. Roman. |
| 82. the other. | 92. camp. |
| 83. which (of two) ? | 93. inter. particle, affirmative. |
| 84. neither. | 94. I urge on, arouse. |
| 85. any. | 95. people. |
| 86. none. | 96. number. |
| 87. one, alone, only. | 97. (he) has. |
| 88. whole. | 98. (they) have. |
| 89. alone. | 99. legion. |
| 90. I seize, take possession of. | 100. I attack. |
| 101. head. | 111. soldier. |
| 102. valor, bravery. | 112. chief. |
| 103. consul. | 113. inter. particle, negative. |
| 104. across. | 114. risk, danger. |
| 105. leader. | 115. virtue. |
| 106. time. | 116. strength, force. |
| 107. await, expect. | 117. enemy. |
| 108. without. | 118. tower. |
| 109. river. | 119. tribe, race. |
| 110. province. | 120. forest. |

LATIN WORD LIST — *Continued*

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 121. eques, itis, <i>m.</i> | 131. nāvis longa, <i>f.</i> |
| 122. nōmen, inis, <i>n.</i> | 9. 132. ā, ab. |
| 123. coniūrō. | 133. tēlum, ī, <i>n.</i> |
| 124. nāvis, is, <i>f.</i> | 134. agmen, inis, <i>n.</i> |
| 125. collis, is, <i>m.</i> | 135. locus, ī, <i>m.</i> |
| 126. mare, is, <i>n.</i> | 136. collocō. |
| 127. cohors, ortis, <i>f.</i> | 137. ē, ex. |
| 128. idōneus, a, um. | 138. pars, partis, <i>f.</i> |
| 129. arx, arcis, <i>f.</i> | 139. mōns, montis, <i>m.</i> |
| 130. animal, ālis, <i>n.</i> | 140. ignis, is, <i>m.</i> |
| 141. cīvis, is, <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i> | 151. commūnis, e. |
| 142. corpus, oris, <i>n.</i> | 152. brevis, e. |
| 143. finis, is, <i>m.</i> | 153. celer, eris, ere. |
| 144. finēs, ium, <i>m. pl.</i> | 154. incredibilis, e. |
| 10. 145. ācer, cris, cre. | 155. ferāx, <i>gen.</i> ferācis. |
| 146. magnitūdō, inis, <i>f.</i> | 156. cum. |
| 147. dō. | 157. gravis, e. |
| 148. vetus, <i>gen.</i> veteris. | 158. cōfirmō. |
| 149. -que. | 159. pāx, pācis, <i>f.</i> |
| 150. omnis, e. | 160. cōfirmō. |
| 11. 161. aciēs, ēī, <i>f.</i> | 171. exercitus, ūs, <i>m.</i> |
| 162. cornū, ūs, <i>n.</i> | 172. fructus, ūs, <i>m.</i> |
| 163. diēs, ēī, <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i> | 173. in, <i>gov. acc.</i> |
| 164. ferus, a, um. | 174. in, <i>gov. abl.</i> |
| 165. terra, ae, <i>f.</i> | 175. portus, ūs, <i>m.</i> |
| 166. rēs, rei, <i>f.</i> | 176. speciēs, ēī, <i>f.</i> |
| 167. manus, ūs, <i>f.</i> | 177. terrā marique. |
| 168. Germānī, ōrum, <i>m.</i> | 12. 178. victōria, ae, <i>f.</i> |
| 169. commeātus, ūs, <i>m.</i> | 179. spērō. |
| 170. domus, ūs, <i>f.</i> | 180. audāx, <i>gen.</i> audācis. |

ENGLISH WORD LIST — *Continued*

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 121. horseman. | 131. warship. |
| 122. name. | 132. by, from. |
| 123. conspire. | 133. weapon. |
| 124. ship, boat. | 134. column, army (on march). |
| 125. hill. | 135. place. |
| 126. sea. | 136. I put, place, station. |
| 127. cohort. | 137. from, out of. |
| 128. suitable. | 138. part, side, direction. |
| 129. citadel. | 139. mountain. |
| 130. animal. | 140. fire. |
| 141. citizen. | 151. common, general. |
| 142. body. | 152. brief, short. |
| 143. end, boundary. | 153. swift. |
| 144. territory. | 154. incredible. |
| 145. sharp, fierce. | 155. fertile. |
| 146. size, greatness. | 156. with. |
| 147. I give. | 157. heavy, difficult, serious. |
| 148. old, ancient. | 158. I establish. |
| 149. and (enclitic). | 159. peace. |
| 150. all, every. | 160. I strengthen, encourage. |
| 161. line of battle. | 171. army. |
| 162. wing, horn. | 172. fruit, crop. |
| 163. day. | 173. into, toward, against. |
| 164. wild, savage. | 174. in, on. |
| 165. land, country. | 175. port, harbor. |
| 166. thing, affair, matter. | 176. sight, appearance. |
| 167. hand, band, force. | 177. by land and sea. |
| 168. the Germans. | 178. victory. |
| 169. provisions, supplies. | 179. I hope, hope for. |
| 170. house, home. | 180. bold, courageous. |

LATIN WORD LIST—*Continued*

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 181. <i>fēlix, gen. fēlicis.</i> | 191. <i>properō.</i> |
| 182. <i>imperium, ī, n.</i> | 192. <i>vāllum, ī, n.</i> |
| 183. <i>pācō.</i> | 193. <i>fidēs, eī, f.</i> |
| 184. <i>recūsō.</i> | 13. 194. <i>equitātus, ūs, m.</i> |
| 185. <i>lītus, oris, n.</i> | 195. <i>pedes, itis, m.</i> |
| 186. <i>parō.</i> | 196. <i>quam.</i> |
| 187. <i>subsidiūm, ī, n.</i> | 197. <i>mōs, mōris, m.</i> |
| 188. <i>hiemō.</i> | 198. <i>facilis, e.</i> |
| 189. <i>fidēs, eī, f.</i> | 199. <i>difficilis, e.</i> |
| 190. <i>paucī, ae, a.</i> | 200. <i>humilis, e.</i> |
| 201. <i>similis, e.</i> | 211. <i>dēditiō, ōnis, f.</i> |
| 202. <i>dissimilis, e.</i> | 212. <i>Helvētiī, ōrum, m.</i> |
| 203. <i>gracilis, e.</i> | 213. <i>iter, itineris, n.</i> |
| 204. <i>malus, a, um.</i> | 214. <i>longē.</i> |
| 205. <i>superus, a, um.</i> | 215. <i>nūntiō.</i> |
| 206. <i>īferus, a, um.</i> | 216. <i>vulnerō.</i> |
| 207. <i>prior, ius.</i> | 217. <i>socius, ī, m.</i> |
| 208. <i>propior, ius.</i> | 218. <i>vīcus, ī, m.</i> |
| 14. 209. <i>cārus, a, um.</i> | 219. <i>fortis, e.</i> |
| 210. <i>cārē.</i> | 220. <i>fortiter.</i> |
| 221. <i>carrus, ī, m.</i> | 231. <i>pīlum, ī, n.</i> |
| 222. <i>impetus, ūs, m.</i> | 232. <i>gladius, ī, m.</i> |
| 223. <i>prūdēns, gen. entis.</i> | 233. <i>propter.</i> |
| 224. <i>prūdentē.</i> | 234. <i>bene.</i> |
| 225. <i>condiciō, ōnis, f.</i> | 235. <i>male.</i> |
| 15. 226. <i>cīvitās, tātis, f.</i> | 236. <i>multum.</i> |
| 227. <i>armō.</i> | 237. <i>magnopere.</i> |
| 228. <i>per.</i> | 238. <i>parum.</i> |
| 229. <i>pāgus, ī, m.</i> | 239. <i>prope.</i> |
| 230. <i>quattuor.</i> | 240. <i>diū.</i> |

ENGLISH WORD LIST — *Continued*

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| 181. happy, fortunate. | 191. I hasten. |
| 182. order, command, rule. | 192. rampart, earthworks. |
| 183. I make peace, subdue. | 193. protection. |
| 184. I refuse. | 194. cavalry. |
| 185. beach, shore. | 195. foot-soldier. |
| 186. I prepare, provide. | 196. than. |
| 187. assistance. | 197. custom. |
| 188. I winter, pass the winter. | 198. easy. |
| 189. faith, loyalty. | 199. difficult. |
| 190. few. | 200. low. |
| 201. like. | 211. surrender. |
| 202. unlike. | 212. the Helvetians. |
| 203. slender. | 213. march, journey ; road. |
| 204. bad. | 214. far, far off. |
| 205. high. | 215. I report, announce. |
| 206. low. | 216. I wound. |
| 207. former. | 217. ally, companion. |
| 208. nearer. | 218. village. |
| 209. dear. | 219. strong, brave. |
| 210. dearly. | 220. strongly, bravely. |
| 221. cart, wagon. | 231. javelin. |
| 222. attack, assault. | 232. sword. |
| 223. wise, prudent. | 233. on account of. |
| 224. wisely. | 234. well. |
| 225. condition, terms. | 235. ill. |
| 226. state, citizenship. | 236. much. |
| 227. I arm. | 237. greatly. |
| 228. through, over, by means
of, on account of. | 238. little. |
| 229. division, district, canton. | 239. near. |
| 230. four. | 240. a long time. |

LATIN WORD LIST — *Continued*

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 241. facile. | 251. tū. |
| 242. audācter. | 252. appropinquō. |
| 243. saepe. | 253. egō. |
| 16. 244. Caesar, aris, <i>m</i> . | 254. impedimentum, ī, <i>n</i> . |
| 245. expugnō. | 255. is, ea, id. |
| 246. inter. | 256. obses, idis, <i>m</i> . |
| 247. negōtium, ī, <i>n</i> . | 257. post. |
| 248. Orgetorix, īgis, <i>m</i> . | 258. suī. |
| 249. praemium, ī, <i>n</i> . | 259. timor, ōris, <i>m</i> . |
| 250. tamen. | 260. negōtium, ī, <i>n</i> . |
| 17. 261. ipse, a, um. | 271. scūtum, ī, <i>n</i> . |
| 262. suus, a, um. | 272. liber, librī, <i>m</i> . |
| 263. tuus, a, um. | 273. officium, ī, <i>n</i> . |
| 264. vester, tra, trum. | 274. lēgātus, ī, <i>m</i> . |
| 265. noster, tra, trum. | 275. nātiō, ōnis, <i>f</i> . |
| 266. meus, a, um. | 18. 276. spēs, speī, <i>f</i> . |
| 267. tempestās, tātis, <i>f</i> . | 277. atque (ac). |
| 268. captīvus, ī, <i>m</i> . | 278. contrā. |
| 269. sed. | 279. quīnque. |
| 270. imperātor, ōris, <i>m</i> . | 280. cupidus, a, um. |
| 281. idem, eadem, idem. | 19. 291. ante. |
| 282. libertas, tātis, <i>f</i> . | 292. sōl, sōlis, <i>m</i> . |
| 283. is, ea, id. | 293. Belgae, ārum, <i>m</i> . |
| 284. rūsus. | 294. repentīnus, a, um. |
| 285. angustiae, ārum, <i>f</i> . | 295. finitimus, a, um. |
| 286. occāsio, ōnis, <i>f</i> . | 296. adventus, ūs, <i>m</i> . |
| 287. crēber, bra, brum. | 297. auxilia, ōrum, <i>n</i> . |
| 288. iste, a, ud. | 298. quī, quae, quod. |
| 289. hic, haec, hōc. | 299. hiberna, ōrum, <i>n</i> . |
| 290. ille, a, ud. | 300. quis, quid; |
| | quī, quae, quod. |

ENGLISH WORD LIST — *Continued*

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 241. easily. | 251. thou, you. |
| 242. boldly. | 252. I approach. |
| 243. often. | 253. I. |
| 244. Caesar. | 254. hindrance; <i>pl.</i> , baggage. |
| 245. I capture, take by storm. | 255. he, she, it; <i>pl.</i> , they. |
| 246. between, among. | 256. hostage. |
| 247. business, task. | 257. after, behind. |
| 248. Orgetorix. | 258. of himself, etc. |
| 249. reward. | 259. fear. |
| 250. nevertheless, however. | 260. difficulty. |
| 261. self, very. | 271. shield. |
| 262. his, her, its, their. | 272. book. |
| 263. thy, your. | 273. duty. |
| 264. your. | 274. lieutenant, envoy. |
| 265. our. | 275. nation. |
| 266. my. | 276. hope. |
| 267. weather; storm. | 277. and. |
| 268. captive. | 278. against, opposite. |
| 269. but. | 279. five. |
| 270. general, commander. | 280. eager, desirous. |
| 281. the same. | 291. before. |
| 282. liberty. | 292. sun. |
| 283. that, this. | 293. the Belgians. |
| 284. again. | 294. sudden. |
| 285. narrow pass. | 295. neighboring. |
| 286. opportunity. | 296. arrival, approach. |
| 287. frequent. | 297. auxiliary troops. |
| 288. that (of yours). | 298. who, which, what, that. |
| 289. this. | 299. winter quarters. |
| 290. that. | 300. who? which? what?
what? what kind of? |

LATIN WORD LIST — *Continued*

- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 301. occāsus, ūs, <i>m.</i> | 311. vadum, ī, <i>n.</i> |
| 302. senātus, ūs, <i>m.</i> | 312. citerior, ius. |
| 303. perturbō. | 313. ulterior, ius. |
| 304. paulātim. | 314. ōrātiō, ōnis, <i>f.</i> |
| 305. paene. | 315. iūs, iūris, <i>n.</i> |
| 20. 306. aliquis. | 316. equus, ī, <i>m.</i> |
| 307. quīdam. | 317. explōrātor, ōris, <i>m.</i> |
| 308. quisquam. | 318. concilium, ī, <i>n.</i> |
| 309. quisque. | 319. cōsuētūdō, inis, <i>f.</i> |
| 310. castellum, ī, <i>n.</i> | 21. 320. ūnus, a, um. |
| 321. duo. | 331. mille. |
| 322. trēs. | 332. primus, a, um. |
| 323. quattuor. | 333. secundus, a, um. |
| 324. quīnque. | 334. tertius, a, um. |
| 325. sex. | 335. quārtus, a, um. |
| 326. septem. | 336. quintus, a, um. |
| 327. octō. | 337. sextus, a, um. |
| 328. novem. | 338. septimus, a, um. |
| 329. decem. | 339. octāvus, a, um. |
| 330. centum. | 340. nōnus, a, um. |
| 341. decimus, a, um. | 351. praesidium, ī, <i>n.</i> |
| 22. 342. sum. | 352. multitudō, inis, <i>f.</i> |
| 343. incolumis, e. | 23. 353. aditus, ūs, <i>m.</i> |
| 344. amīcus, a, um. | 354. autem. |
| 345. amīcus, ī, <i>m.</i> | 355. dexter, tra, trum. |
| 346. signum, ī, <i>n.</i> | 356. sinister, tra, trum. |
| 347. reliquus, a, um. | 357. uterque, utraque, utrumque. |
| 348. mulier, eris, <i>f.</i> | 358. aedificium, ī, <i>n.</i> |
| 349. ferē. | 359. ripa, ae, <i>f.</i> |
| 350. cotidiānus, a, um. | 360. aequus, a, um. |

ENGLISH WORD LIST—*Continued*

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 301. setting. | 311. ford, shoal. |
| 302. senate. | 312. hither, nearer. |
| 303. I confuse, disturb. | 313. farther. |
| 304. gradually, little by little. | 314. speech. |
| 305. almost, nearly. | 315. justice, law, right. |
| 306. some one, some. | 316. horse. |
| 307. certain. | 317. scout. |
| 308. any one. | 318. assembly, council. |
| 309. each. | 319. custom. |
| 310. small fort, redoubt. | 320. one. |
| 321. two. | 331. thousand. |
| 322. three. | 332. first. |
| 323. four. | 333. second. |
| 324. five. | 334. third. |
| 325. six. | 335. fourth. |
| 326. seven. | 336. fifth. |
| 327. eight. | 337. sixth. |
| 328. nine. | 338. seventh. |
| 329. ten. | 339. eighth. |
| 330. hundred. | 340. ninth. |
| 341. tenth. | 351. guard, garrison, protection. |
| 342. be. | 352. multitude. |
| 343. unharmed, safe. | 353. approach. |
| 344. friendly. | 354. moreover, but, however. |
| 345. friend. | 355. right. |
| 346. standard, signal. | 356. left. |
| 347. remaining, rest of. | 357. each (of two), both. |
| 348. woman. | 358. building. |
| 349. almost, nearly. | 359. bank, shore. |
| 350. daily, every day. | 360. level; favorable. |

LATIN WORD LIST — *Continued*

- | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 361. calamitās, tātis, <i>f.</i> | 371. nūntius, ī, <i>m.</i> |
| 362. Rhēnus, ī, <i>m.</i> | 372. sententia, ae, <i>f.</i> |
| 363. inopia, ae, <i>f.</i> | 373. causa, ae, <i>f.</i> |
| 364. clāmor, ōris, <i>m.</i> | 374. clam. |
| 365. regiō, ōnis, <i>f.</i> | 375. dubitō. |
| 24. 366. vulgō. | 376. magistrātus, ūs, <i>m.</i> |
| 367. statim. | 377. frūmentārius, a, um. |
| 368. auctōritās, tātis, <i>f.</i> | 378. iugum, ī, <i>n.</i> |
| 369. convocō. | 379. Diviciācus, ī, <i>m.</i> |
| 370. Haeduī, ōrum, <i>m.</i> | 380. rēgnum, ī, <i>n.</i> |
| 25. 381. temptō. | 391. prōpugnō. |
| 382. fuga, ae, <i>f.</i> | 26. 392. apud. |
| 383. labor, ōris, <i>m.</i> | 393. equester, tris, tre. |
| 384. colloquium, ī, <i>n.</i> | 394. interim. |
| 385. potestās, tātis, <i>f.</i> | 395. latus, eris, <i>n.</i> |
| 386. primō. | 396. nōbilis, e. |
| 387. difficultās, tātis, <i>f.</i> | 397. trānsportō. |
| 388. studium, ī, <i>n.</i> | 398. tūtus, a, um. |
| 389. rēx, rēgis, <i>m.</i> | 399. salūs, ūtis, <i>f.</i> |
| 390. pugna, ae, <i>f.</i> | 400. angustus, a, um. |
| 401. celeritās, tātis, <i>f.</i> | 411. mūnitiō, ōnis, <i>f.</i> |
| 402. insidiae, ārum, <i>f.</i> | 412. postulō. |
| 403. lātitūdō, inis, <i>f.</i> | 413. explōrō. |
| 404. modus, ī, <i>m.</i> | 414. potēns, <i>gen.</i> potentis. |
| 27. 405. dēbet. | 415. Rēmī, ōrum, <i>m.</i> |
| 406. undique. | 416. probō. |
| 407. recēns, <i>gen.</i> recentis. | 28. 417. altitūdō, inis, <i>f.</i> |
| 408. prō. | 418. dēbeō. |
| 409. ob. | 419. ventus, ī, <i>m.</i> |
| 410. memoria, ae, <i>f.</i> | 420. onerārius, a, um. |

ENGLISH WORD LIST — *Continued*

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 361. calamity, disaster, defeat. | 371. messenger. |
| 362. The Rhine. | 372. opinion, decision. |
| 363. lack, want. | 373. cause, reason. |
| 364. shouting, cry. | 374. secretly. |
| 365. region, district. | 375. hesitate, doubt. |
| 366. commonly, generally. | 376. magistrate. |
| 367. at once, immediately. | 377. of grain. |
| 368. authority, influence. | 378. yoke ; ridge. |
| 369. call together, summon. | 379. Diviciacus. |
| 370. the Haedui. | 380. rule, throne ; kingdom. |
| 381. try, attempt. | 391. fight back, resist. |
| 382. flight. | 392. among, with. |
| 383. labor, task. | 393. equestrian. |
| 384. conference. | 394. meanwhile. |
| 385. power, authority. | 395. side, flank. |
| 386. at first. | 396. noble. |
| 387. difficulty. | 397. carry across, transport. |
| 388. desire, eagerness. | 398. safe. |
| 389. king. | 399. safety. |
| 390. fight, battle. | 400. narrow. |
| 401. speed. | 411. fortification. |
| 402. ambush. | 412. demand. |
| 403. width. | 413. find out, explore. |
| 404. manner, way ; kind. | 414. powerful. |
| 405. he ought, it ought. | 415. the Remi. |
| 406. from all directions. | 416. approve. |
| 407. recent. | 417. height, depth. |
| 408. for, in behalf of, instead
of, in front of. | 418. ought, be obliged to ;
owe. |
| 409. on account of, for. | 419. wind. |
| 410. memory. | 420. of burden. |

LATIN WORD LIST — *Continued*

- | | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| 421. obtineō. | 431. nāvēs onerāriae. |
| 422. augeō. | 432. habeō. |
| 423. fremitus, ūs, <i>m</i> . | 29. 433. Ariovistus, i, <i>m</i> . |
| 424. praebeō. | 434. videō. |
| 425. Morinī, ōrum, <i>m</i> . | 435. ubi. |
| 426. lateō. | 436. dō. |
| 427. iam. | 437. respondeō |
| 428. habeō. | 438. remaneō. |
| 429. moneō. | 439. Dumnorix, īgis, <i>m</i> . |
| 430. inermis, e. | 440. pūblicus, a, um. |
| 441. frāter, tris, <i>m</i> . | 451. mercātor, ōris, <i>m</i> . |
| 442. grātia, ae, <i>f</i> . | 452. regō. |
| 443. prohibeō. | 453. servitūs, tūtis, <i>f</i> . |
| 444. rēs pūblica, rei
pūblīcae, <i>f</i> . | 454. mittō. |
| 445. iniūria, ae, <i>f</i> . | 455. praemittō. |
| 446. moveō. | 456. mīlītāris, e. |
| 447. prōvideō. | 457. litterae, ārum, <i>f</i> . |
| 30. 448. agō. | 458. emō. |
| 449. dēserō. | 459. dūcō. |
| 450. gerō. | 460. cōgō. |
| 31. 461. arcessō. | 471. dēfendō. |
| 462. dēdō. | 472. redūcō. |
| 463. homō, inis, <i>c</i> . | 473. incendō. |
| 464. incolō. | 32. 474. amīcītia, ae, <i>f</i> . |
| 465. nātūra, ae, <i>f</i> . | 475. barbarus, i, <i>m</i> . |
| 466. neque. | 476. veniō. |
| 467. vincō. | 477. impediō. |
| 468. vīnea, ae, <i>f</i> . | 478. dēsiliō. |
| 469. classis, is, <i>f</i> . | 479. audiō. |
| 470. discēdō. | 480. nēmō. |

ENGLISH WORD LIST—*Continued*

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 421. hold, occupy; obtain. | 431. freight ships, transports. |
| 422. increase, make larger. | 432. maintain, consider. |
| 423. noise, uproar. | 433. Ariovistus. |
| 424. afford, furnish, show. | 434. see. |
| 425. the Morini. | 435. when. |
| 426. lie hid. | 436. give. |
| 427. now, already. | 437. answer, reply. |
| 428. have, possess, hold. | 438. remain. |
| 429. advise, warn. | 439. Dumnorix. |
| 430. unarmed. | 440. public. |
| 441. brother. | 451. trader, merchant. |
| 442. influence, favor. | 452. rule. |
| 443. keep from, prevent, prohibit, stop. | 453. slavery. |
| 444. the republic, state. | 454. send. |
| 445. injury, wrong. | 455. send ahead. |
| 446. move, influence, excite. | 456. military. |
| 447. foresee. | 457. letter, document. |
| 448. drive, lead, bring up. | 458. buy, purchase. |
| 449. desert, abandon. | 459. lead. |
| 450. carry, carry on; wage. | 460. force; gather, collect. |
| 461. send for, summon. | 471. ward off, defend. |
| 462. give up, surrender. | 472. lead back. |
| 463. man, human being. | 473. burn, set fire to. |
| 464. inhabit, dwell. | 474. friendship. |
| 465. nature, character. | 475. barbarian, foreigner. |
| 466. nor, and . . . not. | 476. come. |
| 467. conquer. | 477. hinder. |
| 468. shed. | 478. leap down. |
| 469. fleet. | 479. hear. |
| 470. leave, depart. | 480. no one, nobody. |

LATIN WORD LIST—Continued

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 481. callidus, a, um. | 491. circumveniō. |
| 482. mūniō. | 492. eō. |
| 483. dēligō. | 493. fortūna, ae, <i>f</i> . |
| 484. contendō. | 494. mors, mortis, <i>f</i> . |
| 485. centuriō, ōnis, <i>m</i> . | 495. opus, operis, <i>n</i> . |
| 33. 486. apertus, a, um. | 496. pecus, pecoris, <i>n</i> . |
| 487. conveniō. | 497. sentiō. |
| 488. vulnus, eris, <i>n</i> . | 498. nihil. |
| 489. suspīciō, ōnis, <i>f</i> . | 499. reperiō. |
| 490. sciō. | 35. 500. capiō. |
| 501. faciō. | 511. litus, oris, <i>n</i> . |
| 502. suscipiō. | 512. lēgātiō, ōnis, <i>f</i> . |
| 503. recipiō. | 513. catēna, ae, <i>f</i> . |
| 504. perficiō. | 36. 514. cōnor. |
| 505. incipiō. | 515. hortor. |
| 506. iaciō. | 516. potior. |
| 507. coniciō. | 517. sequor. |
| 508. quidem. | 518. ūtor. |
| 509. nē . . . quidem. | 519. vereor. |
| 510. obsidiō, ōnis, <i>f</i> . | 520. proficīscor. |
| 521. ēgredior. | 531. agger, eris, <i>m</i> . |
| 522. expellō. | 532. stipendium, ī, <i>n</i> . |
| 523. lapis, idis, <i>m</i> . | 533. relinquiō. |
| 524. mōtus, ūs, <i>m</i> . | 534. pendō. |
| 525. paulum. | 535. cognōscō. |
| 37. 526. aquila, ae, <i>f</i> . | 536. māter, tris, <i>f</i> . |
| 527. beneficium, ī, <i>n</i> . | 537. passus, ūs, <i>m</i> . |
| 528. concursus, ūs, <i>m</i> . | 538. pecūnia, ae, <i>f</i> . |
| 529. satis. | 539. quantus, a, um. |
| 530. repellō. | 38. 540. alacer, cris, cre. |

ENGLISH WORD LIST—*Continued*

- | | |
|---|---|
| 481. shrewd, cunning. | 491. surround. |
| 482. fortify. | 492. thither, there. |
| 483. choose, select. | 493. fortune, fate. |
| 484. strive, struggle, hasten. | 494. death. |
| 485. centurion. | 495. work ; <i>pl.</i> , fortification. |
| 486. open, unprotected. | 496. herd, flock, cattle. |
| 487. come together, assemble. | 497. perceive, learn. |
| 488. wound. | 498. nothing. |
| 489. suspicion. | 499. find, discover. |
| 490. know. | 500. take, capture ; adopt. |
| 501. make, do. | 511. shore. |
| 502. undertake. | 512. embassy. |
| 503. take back, receive. | 513. chain, bond. |
| 504. accomplish. | 514. try, attempt. |
| 505. begin. | 515. urge, encourage. |
| 506. throw. | 516. get possession of, obtain. |
| 507. throw together, hurl ; put. | 517. follow, pursue. |
| 508. even. | 518. use, employ. |
| 509. not . . . even. | 519. fear, be afraid of. |
| 510. siege. | 520. set out, depart. |
| 521. march out, go out. | 531. rampart, embankment. |
| 522. drive out, expel. | 532. tribute, tax. |
| 523. stone. | 533. leave, abandon. |
| 524. revolt. | 534. pay. |
| 525. a little. | 535. ascertain, learn, find out. |
| 526. eagle ; standard. | 536. mother. |
| 527. kindness, favor. | 537. pace. |
| 528. running together, charge,
attack. | 538. money. |
| 529. enough. | 539. how much. |
| 530. drive back, repulse. | 540. eager. |

LATIN WORD LIST—Continued

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 541. causā. | 551. insignis, e. |
| 542. deinde. | 552. lacus, ūs, <i>m</i> . |
| 543. ūsus, ūs, <i>m</i> . | 553. commūtātiō, ōnis, <i>f</i> . |
| 544. pēs, pedis, <i>m</i> . | 39. 554. absum. |
| 545. perītus, a, um. | 555. adsum. |
| 546. animus, ī, <i>m</i> . | 556. possum. |
| 547. grātiā. | 557. retineō. |
| 548. honor, ōris, <i>m</i> . | 558. fluō. |
| 549. contumēlia, ae, <i>f</i> . | 559. ascendō. |
| 550. imperītus, a, um. | 560. Labiēnus, ī, <i>m</i> . |
| 561. opīniō, ōnis, <i>f</i> . | 571. faveō. |
| 562. vōx, vōcis, <i>f</i> . | 572. noceō. |
| 563. plerīque, aequē,
aque. | 573. resistō. |
| 564. oppugnātiō, ōnis, <i>f</i> . | 574. persuādeō. |
| 565. verbum, ī, <i>n</i> . | 575. praeфициō. |
| 566. opportūnus, a, um. | 576. praesum. |
| 567. opera, ae, <i>f</i> . | 577. etiam. |
| 40. 568. cōnfidō. | 578. ōrdō, inis, <i>m</i> . |
| 569. supersum. | 579. novus, a, um. |
| 570. studeō. | 580. novissimum agmen. |
| 581. novae rēs. | 591. pār, <i>gen.</i> paris. |
| 41. 582. aestus, ūs, <i>m</i> . | 592. revocō. |
| 583. aptus, a, um. | 593. praesertim. |
| 584. trādō. | 594. quod. |
| 585. solum, ī, <i>n</i> . | 595. praeter. |
| 586. Ōceanus, ī, <i>m</i> . | 42. 596. annus, ī, <i>m</i> . |
| 587. nāvīgō. | 597. moror. |
| 588. āmittō. | 598. certus, a, um. |
| 589. conventus, ūs, <i>m</i> . | 599. cōnstituō. |
| 590. pōnō. | 600. maneō. |

ENGLISH WORD LIST—*Continued*

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 541. for the sake of. | 551. prominent, remarkable. |
| 542. then, thereupon. | 552. lake. |
| 543. experience ; advantage,
use. | 553. change. |
| 544. foot. | 554. be absent, distant. |
| 545. experienced, skilled. | 555. be present. |
| 546. mind, heart, courage. | 556. be able, can. |
| 547. for the sake of. | 557. retain, maintain. |
| 548. honor. | 558. flow. |
| 549. insult. | 559. ascend. |
| 550. inexperienced, ignorant. | 560. Labienus. |
| 561. opinion ; reputation. | 571. favor, be favorable to. |
| 562. voice. | 572. harm, injure. |
| 563. most (people <i>or</i> things). | 573. resist. |
| 564. assault. | 574. persuade. |
| 565. word. | 575. place in command. |
| 566. fit, suitable. | 576. be in command, in charge. |
| 567. assistance, aid. | 577. also, even. |
| 568. trust. | 578. rank, line, order. |
| 569. survive, remain. | 579. new. |
| 570. be eager for, desire, favor. | 580. rear guard. |
| 581. change of affairs, revolution. | 591. equal, a match for. |
| 582. tide. | 592. recall. |
| 583. fit, suitable, adapted. | 593. especially. |
| 584. deliver, hand over. | 594. because. |
| 585. soil, ground. | 595. besides, except. |
| 586. the ocean. | 596. year. |
| 587. sail, navigate. | 597. delay, linger. |
| 588. lose ; let go. | 598. certain, sure. |
| 589. meeting, assembly. | 599. resolve, decide. |
| 590. put, place, establish. | 600. stay, remain. |

LATIN WORD LIST — *Continued*

- | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 601. appellō. | 611. ante. |
| 602. creō. | 612. nox, noctis, <i>f</i> . |
| 603. hōra, ae, <i>f</i> . | 613. multō. |
| 604. teneō. | 614. Rōma, ae, <i>f</i> . |
| 605. vetō. | 615. dēfēnsor, ōris, <i>m</i> . |
| 606. mēnsis, is, <i>m</i> . | 616. expeditus, a, um. |
| 607. iubeō. | 617. nūdō. |
| 608. Genava, ae, <i>f</i> . | 618. temperō. |
| 43. 609. fiō. | 619. dēsistō. |
| 44. 610. aliquot. | 620. interclūdō. |
| 621. dividō. | 631. colloquor. |
| 622. interficiō. | 632. indūcō. |
| 623. malefīcium, ī, <i>n</i> . | 633. perterreō. |
| 45. 624. afficiō. | 634. supplicium, ī, <i>n</i> . |
| 625. cupiditās, tātis, <i>f</i> . | 635. revertō. |
| 626. discessus, ūs, <i>m</i> . | 46. 636. aestās, tātis, <i>f</i> . |
| 627. fugiō. | 637. bīdūm, ī, <i>n</i> . |
| 628. instruō. | 638. cōnficiō. |
| 629. iuvō. | 639. superō. |
| 630. aqua, ae, <i>f</i> . | 640. nōndum. |
| 641. auctus, a, um. | 651. cohortor. |
| 642. Bibrax, actis, <i>f</i> . | 652. removeō. |
| 643. extrēmus, a, um. | 653. petō. |
| 644. Bellovacī, ōrum, <i>m</i> . | 654. habeō. |
| 645. ingēns, <i>gen.</i> ingentis. | 655. prōgredior. |
| 646. medius, a, um. | 656. orior. |
| 647. valeō. | 657. Catilīna, ae, <i>m</i> . |
| 648. lūx, lūcis, <i>f</i> . | 658. nunc. |
| 649. plēbs, plēbis, <i>f</i> . | 659. Cicerō, ōnis, <i>m</i> . |
| 47. 650. accipiō. | 660. mora, ae, <i>f</i> . |

ENGLISH WORD LIST — *Continued*

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 601. call, name. | 611. before. |
| 602. elect, choose. | 612. night. |
| 603. hour. | 613. by much, much. |
| 604. hold, keep. | 614. Rome. |
| 605. forbid. | 615. defender. |
| 606. month. | 616. easy, practicable. |
| 607. order, command. | 617. make bare, strip, leave
unprotected. |
| 608. Geneva. | 618. refrain, keep from. |
| 609. be done, occur, be made. | 619. cease, stop, leave off. |
| 610. some, several. | 620. cut off, shut off. |
| 621. divide, separate. | 631. speak with, confer. |
| 622. kill. | 632. lead on, influence, induce. |
| 623. mischief, harm. | 633. frighten, terrify. |
| 624. affect, afflict. | 634. punishment, torture. |
| 625. desire. | 635. return, go back. |
| 626. departure. | 636. summer. |
| 627. flee. | 637. two days. |
| 628. draw up, arrange; equip. | 638. accomplish, finish. |
| 629. help, aid. | 639. surpass, excel. |
| 630. water. | 640. not yet. |
| 641. strong; rich. | 651. encourage. |
| 642. Bibrax. | 652. remove. |
| 643. end of, last (part of). | 653. seek. |
| 644. the Bellovaci. | 654. deliver. |
| 645. huge, enormous. | 655. advance. |
| 646. middle of, middle. | 656. arise. |
| 647. be strong, powerful. | 657. Catiline. |
| 648. light. | 658. now. |
| 649. common people, populace. | 659. Cicero. |
| 650. receive. | 660. delay. |

LATIN WORD LIST — *Continued*

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 661. dolor, ōris, <i>m</i> . | 671. rūs, rūris, <i>n</i> . |
| 662. coniūratiō, ōnis, <i>f</i> . | 672. domus, ūs, <i>or i, f</i> . |
| 48. 663. eō. | 673. perveniō. |
| 49. 664. Aquilēia, ae, <i>f</i> . | 674. ēdūcō. |
| 665. dē. | 675. exeō. |
| 666. vivō. | 676. redeō. |
| 667. tum. | 50. 677. aggredior. |
| 668. trānseō. | 678. cōnscendō. |
| 669. hiems, hiemis, <i>f</i> . | 679. reddō. |
| 670. cōnscribō. | 680. ulcīscor. |
| 681. utinam. | 691. iūdicō. |
| 682. vigilia, ae, <i>f</i> . | 692. nē. |
| 683. impeditus, a, um. | 693. cliēns, entis, <i>m. or f</i> . |
| 684. committō. | 694. ēvādō. |
| 685. ita. | 695. quaerō. |
| 686. ēruptiō, ōnis, <i>f</i> . | 696. rogō. |
| 687. singulī, ae, a. | 697. sī. |
| 688. proelium committere. | 698. impetrō. |
| 51. 689. circuitus, ūs, <i>m</i> . | 699. iūdicium, ī, <i>n</i> . |
| 690. doceō. | 700. rescindō. |
| 701. Sēquanī, ōrum, <i>m</i> . | 711. subitus, a, um. |
| 702. ut. | 712. inveniō. |
| 52. 703. audeō. | 713. tālis, e. |
| 704. contineō. | 714. tantus, a, um. |
| 705. tam. | 715. ut. |
| 706. vix. | 53. 716. cum. |
| 707. nōnnūllus, a, um. | 717. tergum, ī, <i>n</i> . |
| 708. intellegō. | 718. videor. |
| 709. dicō. | 719. comperiō. |
| 710. Rhodanus, ī, <i>m</i> . | 720. sub. |

ENGLISH WORD LIST—*Continued*

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 661. grief. | 671. the country. |
| 662. conspiracy. | 672. home, house. |
| 663. go. | 673. reach, come to, arrive. |
| 664. Aquileia. | 674. lead out. |
| 665. from, out of. | 675. go out, depart from. |
| 666. live. | 676. go back, return. |
| 667. then ; thereupon, next. | 677. attack. |
| 668. cross. | 678. embark, go on board. |
| 669. winter. | 679. give back, return. |
| 670. enroll. | 680. avenge, punish. |
| 681. would that. | 691. judge. |
| 682. watch. | 692. lest, that . . . not. |
| 683. hindered, burdened, under baggage. | 693. dependent, retainer. |
| 684. bring together. | 694. escape. |
| 685. thus, so. | 695. inquire. |
| 686. sortie, rushing forth. | 696. ask. |
| 687. one at a time, singly. | 697. whether. |
| 688. to join battle. | 698. obtain one's request. |
| 689. circuit, roundabout way. | 699. place of judgment, trial. |
| 690. show, tell. | 700. tear down. |
| 701. the Sequani. | 711. sudden. |
| 702. that, in order that. | 712. come upon, find. |
| 703. dare. | 713. such. |
| 704. confine, hem in. | 714. such, so great. |
| 705. so. | 715. that, so that. |
| 706. hardly, scarcely. | 716. when ; since ; although. |
| 707. some. | 717. back. |
| 708. understand, know. | 718. seem ; be seen. |
| 709. say, tell ; appoint. | 719. find out, discover. |
| 710. the Rhone. | 720. under, toward. |

LATIN WORD LIST — *Continued*

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 721. adior. | 731. nōlō. |
| 722. vesper, erī, <i>m.</i> | 732. mālō. |
| 723. sustineō. | 56. 733. accidit. |
| 724. cōspectus, ūs, <i>m.</i> | 734. cōnātus, ūs, <i>m.</i> |
| 725. succēdō. | 735. efficiō. |
| 726. mātūrus, a, um. | 736. imperō. |
| 727. vertō. | 737. Liscus, ī, <i>m.</i> |
| 728. proximē. | 738. optō. |
| 729. tergum vertere. | 739. plēnus, a, um. |
| 54. 730. volō. | 740. vitō. |
| 741. liberō. | 751. coniungō. |
| 742. ēveniō. | 752. mīrus, a, um. |
| 743. admoneō. | 753. cis. |
| 744. cōpiae, ārum <i>f.</i> | 754. cōsidō. |
| 745. Allobrogēs, um, <i>m.</i> | 755. dēspērō. |
| 746. lūna, ae, <i>f.</i> | 756. existimō. |
| 747. poscō. | 757. putō. |
| 748. praecipīō. | 758. praedicō. |
| 749. timeō. | 759. semper. |
| 56. 750. circum. | 57. 760. accēdō. |
| 761. Ubī, ōrum, <i>m.</i> | 771. hūmānus, a, um. |
| 762. licet. | 58. 772. aliēnus, a, um. |
| 763. morior. | 773. sī. |
| 764. sūmptus, ūs, <i>m.</i> | 774. cūra, ae, <i>f.</i> |
| 765. mētior. | 775. effugiō. |
| 766. cōnstat. | 776. finitimus, ī, <i>m.</i> |
| 767. alō. | 777. nisi. |
| 768. errō. | 778. victor, ōris, <i>m.</i> |
| 769. sinō. | 779. pāreō. |
| 770. oportet. | 780. persequor. |

ENGLISH WORD LIST — *Continued*

- | | |
|--|---|
| 721. attack. | 731. be unwilling. |
| 722. evening. | 732. prefer. |
| 723. withstand. | 733. it happens, occurs. |
| 724. sight, view. | 734. attempt, effort. |
| 725. approach, come up. | 735. make, cause, render,
bring about. |
| 726. early. | 736. command. |
| 727. turn. | 737. Liscus. |
| 728. last, recently. | 738. desire |
| 729. to turn one's back, flee. | 739. full |
| 730. wish, be willing. | 740. avoid. |
| 741. free, set free. | 751. join |
| 742. turn out, result. | 752. wonderful, surprising. |
| 743. warn, urge. | 753. on this side of. |
| 744. resources, possessions. | 754. camp, settle. |
| 745. the Allobroges. | 755. despair. |
| 746. moon. | 756. think, believe. |
| 747. demand, require. | 757. think, suppose, consider. |
| 748. command, direct. | 758. say, declare. |
| 749. fear. | 759. always. |
| 750. around, about, in the
vicinity of. | 760. approach. |
| 761. the Ubii. | 771. human; civilized, culti-
vated. |
| 762. it is permitted. | 772. foreign, strange. |
| 763. die. | 773. if. |
| 764. expense. | 774. care, attention. |
| 765. measure out, distribute. | 775. escape. |
| 766. it is evident. | 776. neighbor. |
| 767. support, maintain. | 777. unless, if . . . not. |
| 768. err, be mistaken. | 778. victor. |
| 769. permit, allow. | 779. obey. |
| 770. it behooves, is fitting. | 780. follow up, pursue. |

LATIN WORD LIST—*Continued*

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 781. numquam. | 791. Athēnae, ārum, <i>f</i> . |
| 782. bellicōsus, a, um. | 792. celebr, bris, bre. |
| 783. inimīcus, a, um. | 793. scribō. |
| 784. fidēlis, e. | 794. ars, artis, <i>f</i> . |
| 785. cūstōdiō. | 795. cōnsūmō. |
| 786. beātus, a, um. | 796. legō. |
| 59. 787. amor, ōris, <i>m</i> . | 797. trecentī, ae, a. |
| 788. discō. | 798. sūmō. |
| 789. ineō. | 60. 799. ferō. |
| 790. cōnsuēscō. | 800. inferō. |
| 801. afferō. | 803. auferō. |
| 802. perferō. | 804. referō. |

ENGLISH WORD LIST — *Continued*

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 781. never. | 791. Athens. |
| 782. warlike. | 792. celebrated, famous. |
| 783. unfriendly, hostile. | 793. write. |
| 784. faithful. | 794. art, science. |
| 785. guard. | 795. use up, consume. |
| 786. happy. | 796. read. |
| 787. love. | 797. three hundred. |
| 788. learn. | 798. take, get, gather. |
| 789. enter; form (a plan). | 799. bear, carry. |
| 790. be accustomed. | 800. bring upon, bring against. |
| 801. bring. | 803. take away. |
| 802. carry through, endure. | 804. bring back. |

SPECIAL VOCABULARIES ON THE READING LESSONS IN LESSONS XXV-XXXV

VOCABULARY OF 154

advena, ae, m., <i>stranger.</i>	mōnstrum, i, n., <i>monster.</i>
Albertus, i, m., <i>Albert.</i>	mox, <i>presently, soon.</i>
at, <i>but.</i>	oculus, i, m., <i>eye.</i>
corniger, era, erum, <i>horned.</i>	pererrō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>wander</i>
dēnique, <i>finally.</i>	<i>through.</i>
habitō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>inhabit,</i>	saevus, a, um, <i>savage.</i>
<i> dwell in.</i>	stō, stāre, steti, statūrus, <i>stand.</i>
ignāvus, a, um, <i>idle.</i>	taurus, i, m., <i>bull.</i>
instō, āre, stitī, <i>approach.</i>	tentō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>try, at-</i>
littera, ae, f., <i>letter.</i>	<i>tempt.</i>
lūstrō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>watch,</i>	tergum, i, n., <i>back.</i>
<i>look at.</i>	tum, <i>then.</i>
magister, trī, m., <i>master.</i>	vītō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>avoid.</i>

VOCABULARY OF 161

aqua, ae, f., <i>water.</i>	līmus, i, m., <i>mud.</i>
baculum, i, n., <i>stick.</i>	mandō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>commit,</i>
dēturbō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>drive</i>	<i>entrust.</i>
<i>away.</i>	membrum, i, n., <i>limb.</i>
forte, <i>by chance.</i>	plēnus, a, um, <i>full.</i>
intrō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>enter.</i>	profundus, a, um, <i>deep.</i>
ira, ae, f., <i>wrath.</i>	temere, <i>rashly.</i>
liberō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>free, set</i>	terminō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>bound.</i>
<i>free.</i>	vānus, a, um, <i>empty, vain.</i>

VOCABULARY OF 168

adversus , a, um, <i>adverse, unfavorable.</i>	impiger , gra, grum, <i>active.</i>
calathus , i, m., <i>basket.</i>	ita , thus, so.
Carolus , i, m., <i>Charles.</i>	maculō , āre, āvi, ātus, <i>spot, stain.</i>
certē , surely.	maestus , a, um, <i>sad, sorrowful.</i>
cūctus , a, um, <i>all, the whole.</i>	plōrō , āre, āvi, ātus, <i>bewail, lament.</i>
cūrō , āre, āvi, ātus, <i>care for.</i>	pōmum , i, n., <i>apple.</i>
diligenter , carefully.	putridus , a, um, <i>rotten.</i>
fortūna , ae, f., <i>fortune, fate.</i>	
igitur , therefore.	

VOCABULARY OF 174

aliquandō , once.	lacrima , ae, f., <i>tear.</i>
Augustus , i, m., <i>Augustus.</i>	nam , for.
Britannicus , a, um, <i>British.</i>	numquam , never.
Britannus , i, m., <i>a Briton.</i>	ōlim , formerly.
capillus , i, m., <i>hair.</i>	posthāc , after this, in future.
colōnus , i, m., <i>farmer.</i>	teneō , ēre, uī, tentus, <i>hold, restrain.</i>
Flōrus , i, m., <i>Florus.</i>	Titus , i, m., <i>Titus.</i>
itaque , therefore.	videō , ēre, vīdī, vīsus, <i>see.</i>
Iūlius , i, m., <i>Julius.</i>	

VOCABULARY OF 180

adsum , esse, fui, <i>be present.</i>	impleō , ēre, ēvi, ētus, <i>fill up.</i>
appareō , ēre, uī, itūrus, <i>appear.</i>	latebrae , ārum, f. pl., <i>hiding-place.</i>
argentum , i, n., <i>silver.</i>	Mercurius , i, m., <i>Mercury.</i>
arō , āre, āvi, ātus, <i>plow.</i>	nārrō , āre, āvi, ātus, <i>tell, relate.</i>
avārus , a, um, <i>greedy, covetous.</i>	nūdō , āre, āvi, ātus, <i>lay bare.</i>
avidus , a, um, <i>greedy.</i>	Plūtus , i, m., <i>Plutus.</i>
benignē , kindly.	querēla , ae, f., <i>complaint.</i>
caelum , i, n., <i>sky.</i>	spectō , āre, āvi, ātus, <i>look at, watch.</i>
cēlō , āre, āvi, ātus, <i>conceal.</i>	spoliō , āre, āvi, ātus, <i>rob, steal.</i>
dominus , i, m., <i>master.</i>	subitō , suddenly.
fidus , a, um, <i>faithful.</i>	thēsaurus , i, m., <i>treasure.</i>
fūrtum , i, n., <i>theft.</i>	
ibi , there.	

VOCABULARY OF 186

admoneō, ēre, uī, itus, <i>advise.</i>	nec, <i>nor, and not.</i>
animus, ī, m., <i>mind.</i>	nihil, <i>nothing.</i>
attrectō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>touch,</i> <i>handle.</i>	nunc, <i>now.</i>
cūra, ae, f., <i>care.</i>	pecūnia, ae, f., <i>money.</i>
divitiae, ārum, f. pl., <i>riches.</i>	quidem, <i>indeed.</i>
egēnus, a, um, <i>poor.</i>	saxum, ī, n., <i>rock.</i>
maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, <i>stay, remain.</i>	semper, <i>always.</i>
mulceō, ēre, mulsī, mulsus, <i>soothe.</i>	servō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>save, keep.</i>
	suppleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, <i>fill up,</i> <i>supply.</i>
	unquam, <i>ever.</i>

VOCABULARY OF 192

Cimbri, ōrum, m. pl., <i>the Cim-</i> <i>bri.</i>	mīrus, a, um, <i>wonderful,</i> <i>strange.</i>
claustra, ōrum, n. pl., <i>barrier,</i> <i>dike.</i>	ōceanus, ī, m., <i>the ocean.</i>
coërceō, ēre, uī, itus, <i>check,</i> <i>restrain.</i>	pateō, ēre, uī, <i>lie open.</i>
dēturbō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>tear</i> <i>down.</i>	rīma, ae, f., <i>crack.</i>
dextra, ae, f., <i>right hand.</i>	tēctum, ī, n., <i>house.</i>
inundō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>overflow,</i> <i>flood.</i>	tumulus, ī, m., <i>mound.</i>
	unda, ae, f., <i>wave.</i>
	validus, a, um, <i>strong.</i>
	violentia, ae, f., <i>violence.</i>

VOCABULARY OF 198

cibus, ī, m., <i>food.</i>	moribundus, a, um, <i>dying.</i>
commemorō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>relate, tell.</i>	recreō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>refresh.</i>
cōstanter, <i>steadily.</i>	rigeō, ēre, <i>stiffen, become stiff.</i>
cōstantia, ae, f., <i>firmness.</i>	sublevō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>raise,</i> <i>lift.</i>
factum, ī, n., <i>deed, act.</i>	tantus, a, um, <i>such, so great.</i>
frigidus, a, um, <i>cold.</i>	umerus, ī, m., <i>shoulder.</i>

- Aemilius**, i, m., (*Lucius*) *Aemilius*, a Gallic officer in Caesar's army.
- Aenēās**, ae, m., *Aeneas*, a Trojan hero.
- aequitās**, **aequitātis**, f., *fairness, evenness.*
- aequō**, āre, āvi, ātus, *equalize, make equal.*
- aequus**, a, um, *level; favorable.*
- aestās**, **aestātis**, f., *summer.*
- aestus**, ūs, m., *tide.*
- aetās**, **aetātis**, f., *age.*
- afferō**, ferre, attulī, allātus, *bring.*
- afficiō**, ere, fēcī, fectus, *affect, afflict, visit with.*
- ager**, agrī, m., *field.*
- agger**, **aggeris**, m., *rampart, dike, embankment.*
- aggredior**, i, gressus sum, *attack.*
- agmen**, **agminis**, n., *column, army on the march.*
- agō**, ere, ēgī, āctus, *drive, lead, bring up; grātiās agere, to return thanks.*
- agricola**, ae, m., *farmer.*
- alacer**, **alacris**, **alacre**, *cager.*
- Alba Longa**, **Albae Longae**, f., *Alba Longa*, leading city of early Latium.
- Albānī**, ōrum, m., *the Albans, people of Alba Longa.*
- Albānus**, a, um, *Alban.*
- Albertus**, i, m., *Albert.*
- aliēnus**, a, um, *foreign, strange, unfavorable.*
- aliquandō**, *once, at some time.*
- aliquis** (quī), quae, quid (quod), *some one, some.*
- aliquot**, *some, several.*
- alius**, a, ud, *another, other.*
- Allobrogēs**, **Allobrogum**, m., *the Allobroges*, a Gallic tribe.
- alloquor**, i, locūtus sum, *speak to, address.*
- alō**, ere, uī, altus (alitus), *nourish, support.*
- Alpēs**, **Alpium**, f. pl., *the Alps.*
- altē**, *high, on high, aloft.*
- alter**, era, erum, *other; alter . . . alter, one . . . the other; alterī . . . alterī, some . . . others.*
- altitūdō**, **altitudinis**, f., *height, depth.*
- altus**, a, um, *high, deep.*
- Ambarri**, ōrum, m., *the Ambarri*, a Gallic tribe.
- amicitia**, ae, f., *friendship.*
- amicus**, a, um, *friendly.*
- amicus**, i, m., *friend.*
- āmittō**, ere, misī, missus, *lose; let go.*
- amō**, āre, āvi, ātus, *love.*
- amor**, **amōris**, m., *love.*
- ampliō**, āre, āvi, ātus, *enlarge.*
- amplius**, *more.*
- Amūlius**, i, m., *Amulius.*
- anceps**, **anceps**, gen. **ancipitis**, *two-sided.*

- Ancus**, i, m., *Ancus*, forename of Ancus Marcius.
- angustiae**, ārum, f. pl., *narrow pass*.
- angustus**, a, um, *narrow*.
- animadvertō**, ere, verti, *versus*, notice.
- animal**, animālis, n., *animal*.
- animus**, i, m., *mind, heart, courage*.
- annus**, i, m., *year*.
- ante**, prep. gov. acc., *before*; as adverb, *before*.
- antiquus**, a, um, *ancient*.
- ānulus**, i, m., *ring*.
- apertus**, a, um, *open, unprotected*.
- appāreō**, ēre, uī, itūrus, *appear*.
- appellō**, āre, āvī, ātus, *call, name*.
- appropinquō**, āre, āvī, ātus, *approach*.
- aptus**, a, um, *fit, suitable, adapted*.
- apud**, prep. gov. acc., *among, with*.
- aqua**, ae, f., *water*.
- aquila**, ae, f., *eagle, standard*.
- Aquilēia**, ae, f., *Aquileia*, a Roman town.
- Aquitāni**, ōrum, m., *the Aquitani*, a Gallic people.
- Arar**, Araris, m., *the Saône*, a river, tributary to the Rhone.
- arbitror**, āri, ātus sum, *think, consider*.
- arcessō**, ere, ivī, itus, *send for, summon*.
- Ardea**, ae, f., *Ardea*, a town of Latium.
- ārdeō**, ēre, ārsī, ārsus, *burn*.
- argentum**, i, n., *silver*.
- Ariovistus**, i, m., *Ariovistus*, a German king.
- arma**, ōrum, n. pl., *arms*.
- armilla**, ae, f., *bracelet*.
- armō**, āre, āvī, ātus, *arm*.
- arō**, āre, āvī, ātus, *plow*.
- ars**, artis, f., *art, science*.
- arx**, arcis, f., *citadel*.
- Ascanius**, i, m., *Ascanius*, son of Aeneas.
- ascendō**, ere, scendī, scēnsus, *ascend*.
- ascēnsus**, ūs, m., *way up, ascent*.
- Asia**, ae, f., *Asia*.
- asper**, era, erum, *rough*.
- asylum**, i, n., *place of refuge, asylum*.
- at**, *but*.
- Athēnae**, ārum, f. pl., *Athens*.
- atque** (ac), *and; as*.
- attrectō**, āre, āvī, ātus, *touch, handle*.
- auctōritās**, auctōritātis, f., *authority, influence*.
- auctus**, a, um, *strong, rich*.
- audācter**, *boldly*; comparative, **audācius**; superlative, **audācissimē**.
- audāx**, audāx, gen. **audācis**, *bold, courageous*.

audeō, ēre, ausus sum, dare.
audiō, ire, ivi, itus, hear.
auferō, ferre, abstuli, ablātus, take away.
augeō, ēre, auxi, auctus, increase.
augurium, i, n., omen, augury.
Augustus, i, m., Augustus.
aureus, a, um, golden, of gold.
auriga, ae, m., driver, charioteer.
aut, or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or.
autem, moreover, but, however.
auxilia, ōrum, n. pl., auxiliary troops.
auxilium, i, n., aid, help.
avārus, a, um, greedy, covetous
Aventinus, i, m., the Aventine, one of the seven hills of Rome.
āvertō, ere, verti, versus, turn aside, turn away.
avidus, a, um, greedy.
avus, i, m., grandfather.

B

baculum, i, n., stick.
barbarus, a, um, barbarous, uncivilized.
barbarus, i, m., barbarian, foreigner.
beātus, a, um, happy.
Belgae, ārum, m. pl., the Belgians, a Gallic people.
bellicōsus, a, um, warlike.

Bellovacī, ōrum, m. pl., the Bellovacī, a Gallic tribe.
bellum, i, n., war.
bene, well.
beneficium, i, n., kindness.
benignē, kindly.
Bibracte, Bibractis, n., Bibracte, chief town of the Haedui.
Bibrax, Bibractis, f., Bibrax, a town of the Remi.
biduum, i, n., two days, two days' time.
Bōii, ōrum, m. pl., the Boii, a tribe living near the Helvetians.
bona, ōrum, n. pl., goods, possessions.
bonitās, bonitātis, f., fertility.
bonus, a, um, good.
bracchium, i, n., arm, forearm.
brevis, breve, short, brief.
breviter, briefly, shortly.
Britannia, ae, f., Britain.
Britannicus, a, um, British.
Britannus, i, m., a Briton.
Brūtus, i, m., (Lucius) Brutus, liberator of Rome.

C

C, for centum, hundred.
cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsūrus, fall, be killed.
caedēs, caedis, f., slaughter, massacre.
caelum, i, n., sky.
Caesar, Caesaris, m., Caesar.

- calamitās, calamitātis, f., calamity, disaster, defeat.**
calathus, ī, m., basket.
callidus, a, um, shrewd, cunning.
canōrus, a, um, musical, melodious.
cantō, āre, āvi, ātus, play, sing.
capillus, ī, m., hair.
capiō, ere, cēpi, captus, take, capture; adopt.
Capitōlium, ī, n., the Capitoline, one of the seven hills of Rome; the Capitol, a temple on the Capitoline.
captiva, ae, f., captive.
captivus, ī, m., captive.
caput, capitis, n., head.
carcer, carceris, m., prison.
cārē, dearly.
Carolus, ī, m., Charles.
carpentum, ī, n., carriage.
carrus, ī, m., wagon, cart.
cārus, a, um, dear.
cāseus, ī, m., cheese.
Cassius, ī, m., (Lucius) Cassius, consul at Rome in 107 B.C.
castellum, ī, n., small fort, redoubt.
Casticus, ī, m., Casticus, a chief of the Sequani.
castra, ōrum, n. pl., camp.
cāsus, ūs, m., chance, accident.
catēna, ae, f., chain, bond.
Catilina, ae, m., Catiline.
causa, ae, f., cause, reason; case.
causā, abl., for the sake of.
celeber, celebris, celebre, celebrated, famous.
celebrō, āre, āvi, ātus, celebrate.
celer, celeris, celere, swift, quick.
celeritās, celeritātis, f., speed.
celeriter, quickly, swiftly.
cēlō, āre, āvi, ātus, conceal.
Celtae, ārum, m. pl., the Celts or Gauls.
cēna, ae, f., dinner.
cēnō, āre, āvi, ātus, dine.
cēnsus, ūs, m., registration, enumeration.
centum, hundred.
centuriō, centuriōnis, m., centurion, commander of a century, or company of one hundred.
certāmen, certāminis, n., contest, battle.
certē, surely.
certus, a, um, certain, sure.
cibus, ī, m., food.
Cicerō, Cicerōnis, m., Cicero.
Cimbri, ōrum, m. pl., the Cimbri.
circiter, about.
circuitus, ūs, m., roundabout way, circuit.
circum, prep. gov. acc., around, about, in the vicinity of.

- circumdō, are, dedī, datus, *surround.*
 circumveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus, *surround.*
 cis, prep. gov. acc., *on this side of.*
 citerior, citerius, *nearer, hither*;
 Gallia citerior, *hither Gaul*;
 superlative, citimus, a, um.
 citrā, prep. gov. acc., *on this side of.*
 cīvis, cīvis, m. or f., *citizen.*
 cīvītās, cīvītātis, f., *state*; *citizenship.*
 clam, *secretly.*
 clāmōr, clāmōris, m., *shouting, outcry.*
 classis, classis, f., *fleet.*
 claudō, ere, clausī, clausus, *shut, close*; agmen claudere, *to bring up the rear.*
 claustra, ōrum, n. pl., *barrier, dike.*
 cliēns, clientis, m. or f., *dependent, retainer.*
 cloāca, ae, f., *sewer.*
 Clōdīus, ī, m., *Clodius.*
 coēmō, ere, ēmī, ēemptus, *buy, purchase.*
 coepiō, ere, coepī, coeptus, *begin* (only the perfect tenses in common use).
 coërceō, ēre, uī, itus, *check, restrain.*
 cognōmen, cognōminis, n., *name, surname.*
 cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus, *learn, find out, ascertain.*
 cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus, *force*; *gather, collect.*
 cohors, cohortis, f., *cohort.*
 cohortor, āri, ātus sum, *encourage.*
 Collātīnus, ī, m., *Collatinus, husband of Lucretia.*
 colligō, āre, āvī, ātus, *fasten together.*
 collis, collis, m., *hill.*
 collocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *put, place, station.*
 colloquium, ī, n., *conference.*
 colloquor, ī, locūtus sum, *speak with, confer.*
 colōnus, ī, m., *farmer.*
 commeātus, ūs, m., *provisions, supplies.*
 commemorō, āre, āvī, ātus, *re-late, tell.*
 committō, ere, misi, missus, *bring together*; proelium committere, *to join battle.*
 commodē, *easily, conveniently.*
 commoror, āri, ātus sum, *stay, remain, stop.*
 commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move, disturb, alarm.*
 commūniō, ire, īvī, itus, *fortify strongly, intrench.*
 commūnis, commūne, *common, general.*
 commūtātiō, commūtātiōnis, f., *change.*

- commūtō, āre, āvi, ātus, *alter, change.*
- comparō, āre, āvi, ātus, *provide, get ready, prepare.*
- comperiō, ire, perī, pertus, *find out, discover.*
- complector, ī, plexus sum, *embrace.*
- compleō, ēre, plēvi, plētus, *fill up, cover.*
- cōnātus, ūs, m., *attempt, effort.*
- concēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, *grant, permit.*
- concidō, ere, cīdī, cīsus, *kill, slay, cut down.*
- concilium, ī, n., *assembly, council.*
- concursum, ūs, m., *running together, charge, attack.*
- condiciō, condiciōnis, f., *condition, terms.*
- condō, ere, didī, ditus, *found, establish.*
- condūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *bring together, collect.*
- cōnferō, ferre, tulī, collātus, *gather, collect; sē cōnferre, to betake one's self, go.*
- cōnferthus, a, um, *crowded, close, in close array.*
- cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *accomplish, finish, complete; make, prepare, write.*
- cōnfidō, ere, fisus sum, *trust (semi-deponent).*
- cōnfirmō, āre, āvi, ātus, *establish; strengthen, encourage; declare, assert.*
- coniciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, *throw together, hurl; put.*
- coniungō, ere, iūnxī, iūctus, *join.*
- coniūnx, coniugis, c., *husband; wife.*
- coniūratiō, coniūratiōnis, f., *conspiracy.*
- coniūrō, āre, āvi, ātus, *conspire, plot.*
- cōnor, āri, ātus sum, *try, attempt.*
- conquirō, ere, quīsivī, quīsitus, *seek out, hunt.*
- cōnsanguineus, ī, m., *relative, kinsman.*
- cōnscendō, ere, scendī, scēnsus, *embark, go on board.*
- cōnsciscō, ere, scivī, scītus, *decree, resolve.*
- cōnscrībō, ere, scripsī, scriptus, *enroll.*
- cōnsequor, ī, secūtus sum, *follow, pursue; gain, acquire.*
- cōnserō, ere, serui, sertus, *join; pugnam cōnserere, to join battle.*
- Cōnsidius, ī, m., (*Publius*) *Cōnsidius, an officer in Caesar's army.*
- cōnsidō, ere, sēdī, sessus, *camp, settle.*
- cōnsilium, ī, n., *plan, advice; wisdom.*

- cōsistō**, ere, stitī, *stop, take a position.*
cōspectus, ūs, m., *sight, view.*
cōspicor, ārī, ātus sum, *behold, see, view.*
cōstanter, *steadily.*
cōstantia, ae, f., *firmness.*
cōstat, *it is evident.*
cōstituō, ere, uī, ūtus, *resolve, decide; appoint, determine.*
cōsuēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus, *be accustomed.*
cōsuētūdō, cōsuētūdinis, f., *custom.*
cōsul, cōsulis, m., *consul.*
cōsūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmp-tus, *consume, use up.*
contendō, ere, tendī, tentus, *strive, struggle, contend; hasten.*
continenter, constantly, *continually.*
contineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *confine, hem in; restrain, hold back.*
contrā, prep. gov. acc., *against, opposite.*
contumēlia, ae, f., *insult.*
convalescō, ere, valuī, *recover, grow strong.*
conveniō, ire, vēnī, ventum, *come together, meet, assemble.*
conventus, ūs, m., *meeting, assembly.*
convertō, ere, vertī, versus, *turn, change, turn about.*
convīva, ae, c., *guest.*
convocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call together, summon.*
cōpia, ae, f., *plenty, supply; pl., troops; resources, possessions.*
cōpiōsus, a, um, *abundant, wealthy.*
Corinthus, ī, m., *Corinth.*
corniger, era, erum, *horned.*
cornū, ūs, n., *horn; wing (of an army).*
corpus, corporis, n., *body.*
cotidiānus, a, um, *daily, every-day.*
crēber, bra, brum, *frequent.*
creō, āre, āvī, ātus, *elect, choose, appoint.*
cultūra, ae, f., *cultivation.*
cultus, ūs, m., *civilization.*
cum, prep. gov. abl., *with.*
cum, *when; since; although (conj.).*
cum . . . tum, both . . . and; *not only . . . but also.*
cūctus, a, um, *all, the whole.*
cupidē, *eagerly.*
cupiditās, cupiditātis, f., *desire.*
cupidus, a, um, *eager, desirous.*
cupiō, ere, ivī, itus, *wish, desire.*
cūra, ae, f., *care.*
Curēs, Curium, f. pl., *Cures, a Sabine town.*
cūria, ae, f., (1) *one of the ten divisions of a Roman tribe, a curia*, (2) *the senate house.*
Cūriatīi, ōrum, m., *the Curiatii, three Alban brothers.*

cūrō, āre, āvi, ātus, care for.
cūstōdiō, ire, ivi, itus, guard.
cūstōs, cūstōdis, c., guard,
watchman.

D

dē, prep. gov. abl., about, con-
cerning; about, during;
from, out of.

dea, ae, f., goddess.

dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus, ought, be
obliged to; owe.

dēcēdō, ere, cessi, cessurus,
withdraw, go away; die.

decem, ten.

decimus, a, um, tenth.

docuriō, decuriōnis, m., a decu-
riō, commander of ten
horsemen.

dēditō, dēditōnis, f., surrender.

dēdō, ere, dēdidī, dēditus, give
up, surrender.

dēfendō, ere, fendī, fēnsus,
ward off, defend.

dēfēnsor, dēfēnsōris, m., de-
fender.

dēfessus, a, um, weary, ex-
hausted.

dēiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, throw
down, cast down; disappoint.

deinde, then, thereupon.

dēlectō, āre, āvi, ātus, delight.

dēliberō, āre, āvi, ātus, con-
sider, ponder, deliberate.

dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, choose,
select.

Dēmarātus, i, m., Demaratus,
father of Tarquinius Priscus.

dēnique, finally, at last.

dēscribō, ere, scripsi, scriptus,
mark off, divide.

dēserō, ere, uī, sertus, desert,
abandon.

dēsiliō, ire, silui, sultus, leap
down.

dēsistō, ere, stiti, cease, stop,
leave off.

dēspērō, āre, āvi, ātus, despair.

dēstringō, ere, strinxi, strictus,
draw, unsheathe.

dēsum, esse, fui, futurus, be
wanting, be lacking, fail.

dēterreō, ēre, uī, itus, hinder,
deter.

dēturbō, āre, āvi, ātus, drive
away; tear down.

deus, i, m., god.

dexter, tra, trum, right.

dextra, ae, f., right hand.

dicō, ere, dixi, dictus, say, tell;
appoint.

dictiō, dictiōnis, f., speaking,
pleading.

diēs, diēi, m. or f., day.

differō, ferre, distuli, dilātus,
differ.

difficilis, difficile, difficult.

difficultās, difficultātis, f., diffi-
culty.

dignitās, dignitātis, f., rank,
honor, eminence.

diligenter, carefully.

dīruō, ere, uī, utus, destroy, overthrow.

discēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, leave, depart.

discessus, ūs, m., departure.

discō, ere, didicī, learn, acquire.

disiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, drive apart, drive asunder, rout.

dispōnō, ere, posuī, positus, distribute, post, station.

dissimilis, dissimile, unlike.

distribuō, ere, uī, ūtus, divide, distribute.

dītissimus, a, um, richest (superlative of dives, rich).

diū, long, a long time.

Dīviciācus, ī, m., Diviciacus, a leader of the Haedui.

dividō, ere, visi, vīsus, divide, separate.

divitiae, ārum, f. pl., riches.

dō, dare, dedī, datus, give.

doceō, ēre, uī, doctus, show, tell.

dolor, dolōris, m., grief.

dominus, ī, m., master.

domō, āre, uī, itus, subdue.

domus, ūs or ī, f., house, home.

dōnum, ī, n., gift.

dubitō, āre, āvī, ātus, hesitate, doubt.

ducentī, ae, a, two hundred.

dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, lead, conduct, draw.

dum, until.

Dumnorix, Dumnorigis, m., Dumnorix, a leader of the Haedui.

duo, duae, duo, two.

duodecim, twelve.

dux, ducis, m., leader, guide.

E

ē, ex, prep. gov. abl., from, out of; ūna ex parte, on one side.

ēducō, āre, āvī, ātus, educate, train, bring up.

ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, lead out.

effēminō, āre, āvī, ātus, weaken, enfeeble, make womanish.

efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, make, cause, render, bring about.

effugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, escape.

effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus, pour forth, spread.

egēnus, a, um, poor.

Ēgeria, ae, f., Egeria, a nymph.

ego, mei, I.

egredior, ī, gressus sum, march out, go out.

emō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus, buy, purchase.

ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus, report, make known.

eō, ire, ivī (īī), itūrus, go.

eō, thither, to that place, there.

eōdem, to the same place.

epulae, ārum, f. pl., feast.

eques, equitis, m., *horseman*;
pl., *cavalry*.

equester, equestris, equestre,
*pertaining to cavalry, eques-
trian*.

equitatus, ūs, m., *cavalry*.

equus, i, m., *horse*.

ēripiō, ere, ripui, reptus, *snatch
away, rescue, save*.

errō, āre, āvi, ātus, *be mistaken*.

ēruptiō, ēruptionis, f., *sortie,
rushing forth*.

et, and; et . . . et, both . . .
and.

etiam, also, even.

Etrūria, ae, f., *Etruria*, a coun-
try of Italy, north of Rome.

ēvādō, ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsūrus,
escape.

ēvellō, ere, vellī, vulsus, *pull
out*.

ēveniō, ire, vēnī, ventūrus,
turn out, result.

ēvertō, ere, vertī, versus, *over-
throw*.

ēvolō, āre, āvi, ātus, *fly away,
fly up*.

exeō, ire, ii, itus, *go out, depart
from*.

exercitus, ūs, m., *army*.

exigō, ere, ēgi, āctus, *finish*.

existimō, āre, āvi, ātus, *think,
believe*.

exitium, i, n., *destruction, ruin*.

expeditus, a, um, *easy, practi-
cable*.

expellō, ere, puli, pulsus, *drive
out, expel*.

explōrātor, explōrātōris, m.,
scout.

explōrō, āre, āvi, ātus, *find out,
explore*.

expugnō, āre, āvi, ātus, *capture,
take by storm*.

exsequor, i, secūtus sum, *fol-
low out, enforce*.

exspectō, āre, āvi, ātus, *await,
wait for, expect*.

extrā, prep. gov. acc., *outside
of, beyond*.

extrēmus, a, um, *end of, last, last
part of*.

F

facile, *easily*.

facilis, facile, *easy*.

faciō, ere, fēcī, factus, *make, do;
give, furnish*.

factum, i, n., *act, deed*.

facultās, facultātis, f., *opportu-
nity*.

famēs, famis, f., *hunger*.

familia, ae, f., *retinue, retainers,
household*.

familiāritās, familiāritātis, f.,
friendship, intimacy.

famula, ae, f., *maid, servant*.

Faustulus, i, m., *Faustulus*.

faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautūrus, *favor,
be favorable to*.

fēliciter, *fortunately, happily*.

fēlix, fēlix, gen. fēlicis, *fortu-
nate, happy*.

fēmina, ae, f., *woman*.
 ferāx, ferāx, gen. ferācis, *fertile*.
 ferē, *almost, nearly*.
 ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bear, carry*.
 ferrum, ī, n., *iron, iron point (of a spear)*.
 ferus, a, um, *wild, savage*.
 fēstum, ī, n., *festival*.
 fidēlis, fidēle, *faithful*.
 fidēs, ei, f., *faith, loyalty; protection; pledge, promise*.
 fidus, a, um, *faithful*.
 filia, ae, f., *daughter*.
 filius, ī, m., *son*.
 finiō, ire, ivī, itus, *end, finish*.
 finis, finis, m., *end, boundary; pl., territory*.
 finitimus, a, um, *neighboring, adjoining*.
 finitimus, ī, m., *neighbor*.
 fiō, fierī, factus sum, *be made, be done; happen, occur*.
 firmissimē, *most strongly (superlative of firmē)*.
 fistula, ae, f., *pipe*.
 flamma, ae, f., *blaze, flame*.
 Flōrus, ī, m., *Florus*.
 flūmen, flūminis, n., *river*.
 fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxus, *flow*.
 foedus, foederis, n., *treaty, agreement*.
 forte, *by chance*.
 fortis, forte, *strong, brave*.
 fortiter, *bravely*.
 fortūna, ae, f., *fortune, fate*.

forum, ī, n., *market place; the Roman forum*.
 fossa, ae, f., *ditch, trench*.
 frāter, frātris, m., *brother*.
 fremitus, ūs, m., *noise, uproar*.
 frigidus, a, um, *cold*.
 frūctus, ūs, m., *fruit, crop*.
 frūmentārius, a, um, *of grain; rēs frūmentāria, grain supplies, provisions*.
 frūmentum, ī, n., *grain*.
 frūstrā, *in vain*.
 frūx, frūgis, f., *fruit, produce, crop*.
 Fufetius, ī, m., (*Marcus*) *Fufetius, an Alban leader*.
 fuga, ae, f., *flight*.
 fugiō, ere, fugī, fugitūrus, *flee, flee from, escape*.
 fugitīvus, a, um, *runaway, fugitive*.
 fugitīvus, ī, m., *runaway slave, fugitive*.
 fulmen, fulminis, n., *thunderbolt*.
 fūrtum, ī, n., *theft*.

G

Galba, ae, m., *Galba*.
 Gallia, ae, f., *Gaul*.
 Gallicus, a, um, *Gallic, of the Gauls*.
 Gallus, ī, m., *a Gaul*.
 Garumna, ae, m. or f., *the Garonne River*.
 geminus, a, um, *twin*.

Genava, ae, f., *Geneva*.
gener, eri, m., *son-in-law*.
gēns, gentis, f., *tribe, race*.
Germānī, ōrum, m., *the Germans*.
gerō, ere, gessi, gestus, *carry, wear; carry on, do, perform; wage (war)*.
gignō, ere, genui, genitus, *produce, give birth to; passive, be born*.
gladius, ī, m., *sword*.
gracilis, gracile, *slender*.
gradus, ūs, m., *step, stair*.
Graecus, a, um, *Greek*.
grātia, ae, f., *influence, favor*.
grātiā, abl., *for the sake of*.
gravis, grave, heavy, difficult, *serious*.
graviter, *heavily, seriously*.

H

habeō, ēre, uī, itus, *have, possess, hold; maintain, consider; deliver (a speech); make (an enumeration)*.
habitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *inhabit, dwell in*.
Haeduus, ī, m., *a Haeduan, one of the Haedui*.

haud, *not*.
Helvētīi, ōrum, m. pl., *the Helvetians*.
Helvētius, a, um, *Helvetian*.
hiberna, ōrum, n. pl., *winter quarters*.

hic, haec, hōc, *this; pl., these*.
hic, *here, in this place, on this side (adv.)*.
hiemō, āre, āvī, ātus, *winter, pass the winter*.
hiems, hiemis, f., *winter*.
hinc, *from here, hence; hinc . . . hinc, on the one side . . . on the other*.
homō, hominis, c., *man, human being*.
honestus, a, um, *honest*.
honor, honōris, m., *honor*.
hōra, ae, f., *hour*.
Horātīi, ōrum, m. pl., *the Horatii*, the Roman brothers who fought the Curiatii.
hortor, āri, ātus sum, *urge, encourage*.
hortus, ī, m., *garden*.
Hostīlius, ī, m., *(Tullus) Hostilius*, third king of Rome.
hostis, hostis, m., *enemy*.
hūmānitās, hūmānitātis, f., *culture, refinement*.
hūmānus, a, um, *human; civilized, cultivated*.
humilis, humile, *low*.

I

I, for ūnus, a, um, *one*.
iaceō, ēre, uī, lie, *lie prostrate*.
iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus, *throw*.
iactō, āre, āvī, ātus, *throw, toss about*.
iam, *now, already, at length*.

Iāniculum, **I**, **n.**, *the Janiculum*,
a hill near Rome.

ibi, *there*.

icō, **ere**, **icī**, **ictus**, *strike*.

ictus, **ūs**, **m.**, *stroke, blow*.

idem, **eadem**, **idem**, *the same*.

idōneus, **a**, **um**, *suitable*.

iēiūnus, **a**, **um**, *hungry*.

igitur, *therefore*.

ignāvus, **a**, **um**, *idle*.

ignis, **Ignis**, **m.**, *fire*.

ille, **illa**, **illud**, *that*; **pl.**, *those*.

illic, *there, on that side*.

immortālis, **immortāle**, *undying, immortal*.

impedimentum, **I**, **n.**, *hindrance*;
pl., *baggage*.

impediō, **ire**, **ivī**, **itus**, *hinder, impede*.

impeditus, **a**, **um**, *hindered, under baggage*.

impendeō, **ēre**, *overhang*.

imperātor; **imperātōris**, **m.**, *general, commander*.

imperītus, **a**, **um**, *unskilled, inexperienced, ignorant*.

imperium, **I**, **n.**, *order, command, rule*.

imperō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *rule, command, order*.

impetrō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *obtain one's request*.

impetus, **ūs**, **m.**, *attack*.

impiger, **gra**, **grum**, *active*.

impleō, **ēre**, **ēvī**, **ētus**, *fill up*.

importō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *bring in, import*.

in, **prep.** **gov. acc.**, *into, toward, against*; **gov. abl.**, *in, on*.

incendō, **ere**, **cendī**, **cēnsus**,
burn, set fire to.

incipiō, **ere**, **cēpī**, **ceptus**, *begin*.

incitō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *urge on, arouse*.

incohō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *begin, commence*.

incola, **ae**, **m.**, *inhabitant*.

incolō, **ere**, **coluī**, *inhabit, dwell*.

incolumis, **incolume**, *unharmed, safe*.

incrēdibilis, **incrēdibile**, *not to be believed, incredible*.

inde, *thereupon, then*.

indiciūm, **I**, **n.**, *information, evidence*.

indicō, **ere**, **dixī**, **dictus**, *declare, announce*.

inducō, **ere**, **dūxī**, **ductus**, *lead on, influence, induce*.

ineō, **ire**, **ii**, **itus**, *enter; form (a plan)*.

inermis, **inermis**, *unarmed*.

inferior, **inferius**, *lower, inferior*.

inferō, **ferre**, **intulī**, **illātus**,
bring upon, bring against.

inferus, **a**, **um**, *low*.

infimus, **a**, **um**, *lowest*.

inflectō, **ere**, **flexī**, **flexus**, *bend*.

influo, **ere**, **flūxī**, **flūxūrus**, *flow into*.

- ingēns, ingēns, gen. ingentis, *huge, enormous.*
 inhonestus, a, um, *dishonest.*
 inimicus, a, um, *unfriendly, hostile.*
 inimicus, i, m., *enemy.*
 iniūria, ae, f., *injury, wrong.*
 inopia, ae, f., *lack, want.*
 inopināns, inopināns, gen. inopinantis, *unsuspecting, un-
 awares.*
 insequor, i, secutus sum, *follow up, pursue.*
 insidiae, arum, f. pl., *ambush, plot.*
 insigne, insignis, n., *sign, mark, decoration.*
 insignis, insigne, *prominent, remarkable, unusual.*
 instituō, ere, ui, utus, *arrange, begin, undertake.*
 institutum, i, n., *custom, institution.*
 instō, āre, stitī, *approach, press on.*
 instruō, ere, struxī, structus, *draw up, arrange; equip, fit out.*
 insula, ae, f., *island.*
 intellegō, ere, lēxi, lēctus, *understand, know.*
 inter, prep. gov. acc., *between, among; inter sē, with or from each other.*
 intercipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus, *seize, usurp.*
 interclūdō, ere, clūsi, clūsus, *cut off, shut off.*
 intereā, *meanwhile.*
 interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *kill.*
 interim, *meanwhile.*
 interimō, ere, ēmi, ēmptus, *kill.*
 intermittō, ere, misi, missus, *let pass, leave an interval.*
 interrēgnum, i, n., *interval between reigns, interregnum.*
 intersum, esse, fui, *be between.*
 intervallum, i, n., *space, distance apart, interval.*
 intrō, āre, āvi, ātus, *enter.*
 inundō, āre, āvi, ātus, *overflow, flood.*
 inveniō, ire, vēni, ventus, *come upon, find.*
 invitus, a, um, *unwilling.*
 ipse, a, um, *self, very.*
 ira, ae, f., *wrath.*
 irrideō, ēre, risi, risus, *laugh at, ridicule.*
 is, ea, id, *he, she, it; pl., they (pers.); this, that; pl., these, those (demon.).*
 iste, a, ud, *that, that of yours.*
 ita, *thus, so.*
 Itali, ōrum, m. pl., *the Italians.*
 Italia, ae, f., *Italy.*
 itaque, *therefore.*
 item, *also, likewise.*
 iter, itineris, n., *march, journey, road.*

iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus, *order, command.*
iūdicium, ī, n., *place of judgment, trial.*
iūdicō, āre, āvī, ātus, *judge.*
iugum, ī, n., *yoke; ridge (of a hill).*
Iūlius, ī, m., *Julius.*
iumentum, ī, n., *beast of burden, pack mule.*
iungō, ere, iūnxī, iunctus, *join.*
Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter.*
Iūra, ae, m., *the Jura, a range of mountains near Lake Geneva.*
iūs, iūris, n., *justice, law, right, authority.*
iūs iurandum, iūris iurandī, n., *oath.*
iussū, abl., *by order.*
iuvō, āre, iūvī, iūtus, *aid, help.*

L

L., abbreviation for Lūcius, ī, m., *Lucius.*
L, for quīnquāgintā, *fifty.*
Labiēnus, ī, m., *Labiēnus, a lieutenant of Caesar.*
labor, labōris, m., *labor, task.*
laccessō, ere, ivī, itus, *harass, attack.*
lacrima, ae, f., *tear.*
lacus, ūs, m., *lake.*
lapis, lapidis, m., *stone.*
lātē, *widely, far.*

latebrae, ārum, f. pl., *hiding-place.*
lateō, ēre, uī, *lie hid.*
Latīnī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Latins.*
Latinus, ī, m., *Latinus, mythical king of Latium.*
lātītūdō, lātītūdinis, f., *width, breadth.*
Latium, ī, n., *Latium, a country of Italy, in which Rome was situated.*
Latobrigī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Latobrigi, a German tribe near the Helvetians.*
lātus, a, um, *wide, broad.*
latus, lateris, n., *side, flank.*
laudō, āre, āvī, ātus, *praise.*
Lāvīnia, ae, f., *Lavinia, daughter of Latinus.*
Lāvīnium, ī, n., *Lavinium, a town of Latium.*
lēgātiō, lēgātiōnis, f., *embassy.*
lēgātus, ī, m., *lieutenant; envoy.*
legiō, legiōnis, f., *legion.*
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, *choose, appoint; read.*
Lemannus, ī, m., *Lake Geneva.*
lēnitās, lēnitātis, f., *gentleness, smoothness.*
lētālis, lētāle, *fatal.*
lēx, lēgis, f., *law.*
liber, era, erum, *free.*
liber, brī, m., *book.*
liberē, *freely.*
liberī, ōrum, m. pl., *children.*
liberō, āre, āvī, ātus, *free, set free.*

libertās, libertātis, f., *liberty*.
 licet, ēre, licuit, *it is permitted*.
 limus, ī, m., *mud*.
 Lingonēs, Lingonum, m., *the Lingones, a Gallic tribe, north of the Sequani*.
 lingua, ae, f., *language*.
 linter, lintris, f., *small boat, skiff*.
 Liscus, ī, m., *Liscus, an Haeduan magistrate*.
 littera, ae, f., *letter (of the alphabet); pl., letter, document*.
 litus, litoris, n., *beach, shore*.
 locus, ī, m., *place; pl., loca, ōrum, n.*
 longē, *far, far off, by far*.
 longitūdō, longitūdinis, f., *length*.
 longus, a, um, *long*.
 Lūcius, ī, m., *Lucius, a Roman name*.
 Lucrētia, ae, f., *Lucretia, wife of Collatinus*.
 lūdus, ī, m., *game, public game*.
 lūna, ae, f., *moon*.
 lupa, ae, f., *she-wolf*.
 lūstrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *watch, observe*.
 lūx, lūcis, f., *light*.

M

M., abbreviation for Mārcus, ī, m., *Marcus*.
 maculō, āre, āvī, ātus, *spot, stain*.

maestus, a, um, *sad, sorrowful*.
 magis, more, *rather*.
 magister, trī, m., *master*.
 magistrātus, ūs, m., *magistrate*.
 magnitūdō, magnitūdinis, f., *size, greatness*.
 magnopere, *greatly*.
 magnus, a, um, *great, large*.
 māior, māius, *greater, larger*.
 male, *ill, badly*.
 maleficium, ī, n., *mischievous, harm*.
 mālō, mälle, mālui, *prefer*.
 malus, a, um, *bad*.
 mandō, āre, āvī, ātus, *commit, entrust*.
 maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *stay, remain*.
 manus, ūs, f., *hand; band, force*.
 Mārcius, ī, m., (*Ancus*) *Marcus, fourth king of Rome*.
 Mārcus, ī, m., *Marcus, a Roman name*.
 mare, maris, n., *sea*.
 maritus, ī, m., *husband*.
 Mārs, Mārtis, m., *Mars, god of war*.
 māter, mātris, f., *mother*.
 mātīmōnium, ī, n., *marriage; in mātīmōnium dūcere, to marry*.
 Matrona, ae, f., *the Marne River*.
 mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *hasten*.
 mātūrus, a, um, *early*.

- maximē**, *most, especially.*
maximus, a, um, *greatest.*
medius, a, um, *middle, middle of.*
melior, **melius**, *better.*
melius, *better* (adv.).
membrum, i, n., *limb.*
memoria, ae, f., *memory.*
mēns, **mentis**, f., *mind.*
mēnsa, ae, f., *table.*
mēnsis, **mēnsis**, m., *month.*
mercātor, **mercātoris**, m., *merchant, trader.*
Mercurius, i, m., *Mercury, messenger of the gods.*
mereō, ēre, uī, itus, *deserve, be worthy of.*
Messāla, ae, m., (*Marcus*) *Messala*, consul in 61 B.C.
mētiōr, irī, **mēnsus sum**, *measure out, distribute.*
Mettius, i, m., *forename of Mettius Fufetius, an Alban leader.*
meus, a, um, *my, mine.*
mīles, **mīlitis**, m., *soldier.*
mīlītāris, **mīlītāre**, *military;*
rēs mīlītāris, *military affairs, warfare.*
mīlle, *thousand.*
minimē, *least* (adv.).
minimus, a, um, *smallest, least.*
minor, **minus**, *smaller, less.*
minus, *less* (adv.).
mīrus, a, um, *wonderful, strange, surprising.*
miser, **era**, **erum**, *wretched.*
miserē, *wretchedly.*
mittō, ere, **mīsī**, **missus**, *send.*
modus, i, m., *manner, way; kind.*
moenia, **moenium**, n. pl., *walls, ramparts.*
molestus, a, um, *troublesome.*
molliō, ire, ivī, itus, *soften, make milder, civilize.*
moneō, ēre, uī, itus, *advise, warn.*
mōns, **montis**, m., *mountain.*
mōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *show, point out.*
mōnstrum, i, n., *monster.*
mora, ae, f., *delay.*
morbus, i, m., *sickness.*
moribundus, a, um, *dying.*
Morini, ōrum, m., *the Morini, a Belgian tribe.*
moriōr, i, **mortuus sum**, *die.*
moror, āri, **morātus sum**, *delay, linger.*
mors, **mortis**, f., *death.*
mōs, **mōris**, m., *custom, manner.*
mōtus, ūs, m., *revolt.*
moveō, ēre, **mōvī**, **mōtus**, *move; influence, excite.*
mox, *presently, soon.*
mulceō, ēre, **mulsi**, **mulsus**, *soothe.*
mulier, **mulieris**, f., *woman.*
multitūdō, **multitūdinis**, f., *multitude.*
multō, *much, by much* (adv. or abl.).

multum, *much* (adv.).
multus, a, um, *much*; pl., *many*.
mūniō, īre, īvī, ītus, *fortify*.
mūnitiō, mūnitiōnis, f., *fortification*.
mūnus, mūneris, n., *gift*.
mūrus, ī, m., *wall*.

N

nam, *for*.
Nammēius, ī, m., *Nammeius*,
 an envoy of the Helvetians.
nārrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tell, relate*.
nātiō, nātiōnis, f., *nation*.
nātūra, ae, f., *nature, character*.
nātus, a, um, *born*.
nāvigō, āre, āvī, ātus, *sail, navigate*.
nāvis, nāvis, f., *ship*; **nāvis**
longa, *warship*.
-ne, interrogative particle.
nē, *lest, that . . . not* (conj.);
not (adv).
nec, see **neque**.
necessārius, ī, m., *kinsman*.
negō, āre, āvī, ātus, *say . . . not, refuse, deny*.
negōtium, ī, n., *business, task, difficulty*.
nēmō, m., *no one*; no genitive;
 dative, **nēmīnī**; accusative,
nēminem; other cases lacking.
nepōs, nepōtis, m., *grandson, descendant*.

Neptūnus, ī, m., *Neptune*, god
 of the sea.
neque (nec), *nor, and not, not*;
neque . . . **neque**, *neither*
 . . . *nor*.
neuter, tra, trum, *neither* (of
 two).
nēve, *or not, nor*.
nihil, *nothing*.
nihilō, abl., *by nothing*.
nisi, *unless, if . . . not*.
nōbilis, nōbile, *noble*.
nōbilitās, nōbilitātis, f., *nobility*.
noceō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *harm, injure*.
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling, wish . . . not*.
nōmen, nōminis, n., *name*.
nōminātim, *by name, individually*.
nōn, *not*.
nōnāgintā, *ninety*.
nōndum, *not yet*.
nōnne, interrogative particle
 (affirmative).
nōnnūllus, a, um, *some*.
nōnus, a, um, *ninth*.
noster, tra, trum, *our, ours*.
novem, *nine*.
novus, a, um, *new*; **novissimum**
agmen, *the rear guard*;
novae rēs, *change of affairs, revolution*.
nox, noctis, f., *night*.
nūbō, ere, nūpsī, nūptus, *marry*.

nūdō, āre, āvī, ātus, *lay bare, strip, leave unprotected.*

nūllus, a, um, *none.*

num, interrogative particle (negative).

Numa, ae, Numa, forename of Numa Pompilius.

numerus, i, m., *number.*

Numitor, Numitōris, m., Numitor.

numquā (nunquam), *never.*

nunc, *now.*

nūncupō, āre, āvī, ātus, *name, call.*

nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus, *report, announce.*

nūntius, i, m., *messenger.*

nūper, *recently.*

nūptiae, ārum, f., *wedding.*

nympha, ae, f., *nymph.*

O

ob, prep. gov. acc., *on account of, for.*

obaerātus, i, m., *debtor.*

obeō, ire, ii, itus, *die, perish.*

oboediō, ire, ivi, itus, *obey.*

obruō, ere, rui, rutus, *destroy, overwhelm.*

obses, obsidis, m., *hostage.*

obsidiō, obsidiōnis, f., *siege.*

obtestor, āri, ātus sum, *implore, call to witness.*

obteneō, ēre, ui, tentus, *hold, occupy; obtain.*

occāsiō, occāsiōnis, f., *opportunity.*

occāsus, ūs, m., *setting (of the sun).*

occidō, ere, cidi, cīsus, *kill, slay.*

occupō, āre, āvī, ātus, *seize, take possession of.*

Oceanus, i, m., *the ocean, the Atlantic.*

octāvus, a, um, *eighth.*

octō, *eight.*

octōgintā, *eighty.*

oculus, i, m., *eye.*

officiū, i, n., *duty.*

ōlim, *formerly.*

omninō, *in all, altogether.*

omnis, omne, *all, every.*

onerārius, a, um, *of burden; nāvēs onerāriae*, *freight ships, transports.*

opera, ae, f., *assistance, aid.*

opiniō, opiniōnis, f., *opinion, reputation.*

oportet, ēre, uit, *it behooves, is fitting (impersonal).*

oppidum, i, n., *town, walled town.*

opportūnus, a, um, *fit, suitable.*

oppugnātiō, oppugnātiōnis, f., *assault.*

oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *attack.*

optimē, *best (adv.).*

optimus, a, um, *best.*

optō, āre, āvī, ātus, *desire.*

opus, operis, n., *work; pl., works, fortifications.*

ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, f., *speech*.
 ordinō, āre, āvi, ātus, *record, arrange*.
 ōrdō, ōrdinis, m., *rank, line, order*.
 Orgetorix, Orgetorigis, m., *Orgetorix, a leader of the Helvetians*.
 orior, iri, ortus sum, *arise*.
 ostendō, ere, tendi, tentus, *show, point out, tell*.
 Ōstia, ae, f., *Ostia, the seaport of Rome*.
 ōstium, i, n., *mouth, entrance*.
 ōvum, i, n., *egg*.

P

P., abbreviation for Publius, i, m., *Publius, a Roman name*.
 pācō, āre, āvi, ātus, *make peace, pacify, subdue*.
 paene, *almost, nearly*.
 pāgus, i, m., *division, district, canton*.
 pār, pār, gen. paris, *equal, like, a match for*.
 parātus, a, um, *ready, prepared*.
 pārēō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *obey*.
 pariō, ere, peperī, partus, *bring forth, give birth to*.
 parō, āre, āvi, ātus, *provide, prepare*.
 pars, partis, f., *part, side, direction; ūnā ex parte, on one side*.
 parum, *little (adv.)*.
 parvus, a, um, *small, little*.
 passus, ūs, m., *pace (about five feet)*.
 pāstor, pāstōris, m., *shepherd*.
 patefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus, *open*.
 pateō, ēre, uī, *lie open; extend, stretch*.
 pater, patris, m., *father*.
 paternus, a, um, *paternal*.
 patior, i, passus sum, *permit, allow, suffer*.
 patria, ae, f., *country, fatherland*.
 pauci, ae, a, *few*.
 paulātim, *gradually, little by little*.
 paulum, *a little*.
 pāx, pācis, f., *peace*.
 pecūnia, ae, f., *money*.
 pecus, pecoris, n., *herd, flock, cattle*.
 pedes, peditis, m., *foot soldier; pl., infantry*.
 pēior, pēius, *worse*.
 pēius, *worse (adv.)*.
 pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus, *drive, drive out, drive away*.
 pendō, ere, pependī, pēnsus, *pay*.
 per, prep. gov. acc., *through, over, by means of, on account of*.
 perdō, ere, perdidī, ditus, *lose*.
 perdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead through, conduct; construct, make*.

pererrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *wander through.*

perfacilis, perfacile, *very easy.*

perferō, ferre, tullī, lātus, *carry through, endure.*

perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *accomplish, finish.*

perfidia, ae, f., *treachery.*

perfringō, ere, frēgī, frāctus, *break through.*

perfuga, ae, m., *deserter.*

periculum, i, n., *danger, risk.*

perītus, a, um, *skillful, skilled, experienced.*

permovēō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move deeply, excite, influence.*

perpauci, ae, a, *very few.*

perrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus, *break through, force a passage.*

persequor, ī, secūtus sum, *follow up, pursue.*

persolvō, ere, solvī, solūtus, *pay, suffer (punishment).*

persuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsus, *persuade.*

perterreō, ēre, uī, itus, *frighten, terrify.*

pertineō, ēre, uī, tend, *pertain to.*

perturbō, āre, āvī, ātus, *confuse, disturb.*

pervenio, ire, vēnī, ventus, *reach, come to, arrive.*

pēs, pedis, m., *foot.*

pessimē, *worst (adv.).*

pessimus, a, um, *worst.*

petō, ere, ivi (if), itus, *ask, beg; seek.*

phalanx, phalangis, f., *phalanx.*

pilleus, i, m., *cap.*

pilum, i, n., *javelin.*

Pisō, Pisonis, m., (Marcus) *Piso*, consul at Rome in 61 B.C.

plēbs, plēbis, f., *common people, populace.*

plēnus, a, um, *full.*

plerique, aequē, aequē, *most, most people, most things.*

plōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *bewail, lament.*

plūrimum, *most (adv.).*

plūrimus, a, um, *most.*

plūs, plūris, *more; pl., plūrēs, several, many.*

plūs, *more (adv.).*

Plūtus, i, m., *Plutus.*

poena, ae, f., *penalty.*

polliceor, ēri, itus sum, *promise.*

Pompilius, i, m., (Numa) *Pompilius*, second king of Rome.

pōmum, i, n., *apple.*

pōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *put, place, establish.*

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*

populātiō, populātiōnis, f., *plundering, ravaging.*

populor, āri, ātus sum, *ravage, lay waste.*

populus, i, m., *people.*

porculus, i, m., *little pig.*

porta, ae, f., *gate.*

portendō, ere, tendī, tentus,
foretell, predict.

portō, āre, āvī, ātus, *carry, bring.*

portus, ūs, m., *harbor, port.*

poscō, ere, poposci, *demand, require.*

possessiō, possessiōnis, f., *possession, lands.*

possideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus, *possess, hold.*

possum, posse, potui, *be able, can; plurimum posse, to be very powerful, most powerful.*

post, prep. gov. acc., *after, behind; as adverb, after, afterwards.*

posteā, *afterwards.*

posterī, ōrum, m., *descendants, posterity.*

posterus, a, um, *following, next.*

posthāc, *after this, in future.*

postquam, *after (conj.).*

postridiē, *on the next day.*

postulō, āre, āvī, ātus, *demand.*

potēns, potēns, gen. potentis, *powerful.*

potestās, potestātis, f., *power, authority.*

potior, iri, itus sum, *get possession of, obtain.*

praebeō, ēre, uī, itus, *afford, show, furnish, provide.*

praeecēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *excel, surpass.*

praecipio, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *command, direct.*

praecipuē, *chiefly, especially.*

praeda, ae, f., *booty.*

praedicō, āre, āvī, ātus, *say, declare.*

praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *place in command.*

praemittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *send ahead.*

praemium, ī, n., *reward.*

praeoptō, āre, āvī, ātus, *prefer.*

praesertim, *especially.*

praesidium, ī, n., *guard, garri-son, protection.*

praestō, āre, stitī, stitus, *show, exhibit.*

praesum, esse, fui, *be in com-mand.*

praeter, prep. gov. acc., *besides, except.*

praetor, praetōris, m., *com-mander, general.*

primō, *at first, first (adv.).*

primum, *first (adv.).*

primus, a, um, *first; primum agmen, the first (of) the col-umn, the van.*

princeps, princeps, gen. prin-cipis, *chief, principal.*

princeps, principis, m., *chief.*

prior, prius, *former.*

Priscus, ī, m., *Priscus.*

prō, prep. gov. abl., *for, in be-half of; instead of; before, in front of; in comparison with, in proportion to.*

probō, āre, āvi, ātus, approve ;
prove, test.
prōcēdō, ere, cessi, cessurus,
advance, go forward.
procul, far.
prōdigium, i, n., omen, portent,
prodigy.
proelium, i, n., battle.
profectiō, profectiōnis, f., de-
parture, start.
proficiscor, i, fectus sum, set
out, depart.
profundus, a, um, deep.
prōgredior, i, gressus sum,
advance.
prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus, keep
from, prevent, prohibit, stop.
prope, nearly, almost.
prōpellō, ere, puli, pulsus, rout,
drive away, put to flight.
properō, āre, āvi, ātus, hasten.
propior, propius, nearer.
propius, nearer (adv.).
propter, prep. gov. acc., on
account of.
propterea, on this account ;
propterea quod, because.
prōpugnō, āre, āvi, ātus, fight
back, resist.
prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, bene-
fit, be useful to.
prōvideō, ēre, vidī, visus, pro-
vide, provide for, foresee.
prōvincia, ae, f., province.
proximē, next, nearest, last,
recently (adv.).

proximus, a, um, nearest, next.
prūdēns, prūdēns, gen. prū-
dentis, wise, prudent.
prūdentē, wisely.
pūblicus, a, um, public.
puella, ae, f., girl.
puer, eri, m., boy.
pueritia, ae, f., childhood, youth.
pugna, ae, f., fight.
pugnō, āre, āvi, ātus, fight.
pulcher, chra, chrum, beautiful.
pulchrē, beautifully.
putō, āre, āvi, ātus, think, sup-
pose, consider.
putridus, a, um, rotten.

Q

quā, where.
quadrāgēsīmus, a, um, fortieth.
quadrāgintā, forty.
quadringenti, ae, a, four hun-
dred.
quaerō, ere, quaesivī, quae-
situs, inquire, ask.
quālis, quāle, of what kind ? of
what sort ?
quam, than.
quantus, a, um, how much ?
quārtus, a, um, fourth.
quattuor, four.
-que, and (enclitic).
querēla, ae, f., complaint.
queror, queri, questus sum,
complain.
quī, quae, quod, who, which,
what, that (rel. pron.).

quī, quae, quod, what? what
kind of? (interrog. adj.).

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam
(*quoddam*), *certain, a certain*
(person or thing).

quidem, indeed, even; nē . . .
quidem, not . . . even.

quīngentī, ae, a, five hundred.

quīnī, ae, a, five, five at a time.

quīnque, five.

quīntus, a, um, fifth.

quis, quid, who? which?
what?

quisquam, quidquam, any one
(at all).

quisque, quaeque, quidque
(*quodque*), *each, every.*

quod, because.

quoque, also, too.

quot, how many?

R

rapīna, ae, f., plunder, pillage.

rapiō, ere, rapuī, raptus, seize
and carry off.

raptim, hurriedly, hastily.

raptor, raptōris, m., captor, rav-
isher.

ratio, ratiōnis, f., reason; ac-
count, reckoning.

ratis, ratis, f., raft.

Rauracī, ōrum, m. pl., the Rau-
racī, a nation on the upper
Rhine.

recēns, recēns, gen. recentis,
recent.

recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, take
back, receive; sē recipere, to
retreat.

recreō, āre, āvī, ātus, refresh.

recuperō, āre, āvī, ātus, get
back, recover.

recūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, refuse.

reddō, ere, didī, ditus, return,
give back.

redeō, ire, ii, itūrus, return, go
back.

redintegrō, āre, āvī, ātus, re-
new, revive.

reditiō, reditiōnis, f., going back,
return.

redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, lead
back.

referō, ferre, rettulī, relātus,
bring back.

refluō, ere, flow back.

rēgina, ae, f., queen.

regiō, regiōnis, f., region, district.

rēgnō, āre, āvī, ātus, rule.

rēgnum, ī, n., rule, throne,
kingdom.

regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus, rule.

rēiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, drive
back, repel.

religiō, religiōnis, f., moral obli-
gation, sense of duty, religion.

relinquō, ere, liquī, lictus, leave,
leave behind, abandon.

reliquus, a, um, remaining,
rest of.

remaneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsū-
rus, remain.

Rēmī, ōrum, m., *the Remī, a Gallic tribe.*
removeō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *remove.*
Remus, i, m., *Remus.*
renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus, *report.*
repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus, *drive back, repulse.*
repente, *suddenly, unexpectedly.*
repentinus, a, um, *sudden.*
reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus, *find, discover.*
repōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *replace, restore.*
rēs, rei, f., *thing, affair, matter.*
rescindō, ere, scidi, scissus, *tear down.*
resciscō, ere, scivī, scitus, *discover, learn.*
resistō, ere, stitī, resist.
respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsus, *answer, reply.*
restituō, ere, uī, ūtus, *restore, replace.*
retineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *retain, maintain.*
reverentia, ae, f., *respect, regard.*
revertō, ere, vertī, versus, *go back, return; (usually deponent in pres., imperf., and future).*
revocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *recall.*
rēx, rēgis, m., *king.*
Rhea Silvia, Rheae Silviae, f., *Rhea Silvia.*
Rhēnus, i, m., *the Rhine.*

Rhodanus, i, m., *the Rhone.*
rideō, ēre, risī, risus, *laugh at.*
rigeō, ēre, *stiffen, become stiff.*
rima, ae, f., *crack.*
ripa, ae, f., *bank, shore.*
rogō, āre, āvī, ātus, *ask.*
Rōma, ae, f., *Rome.*
Rōmānī, ōrum, m., *the Romans.*
Rōmānus, a, um, *Roman.*
Rōmulus, i, m., *Romulus.*
rosa, ae, f., *rose.*
rūrsus, *again.*
rūs, rūris, n., *the country.*

S

Sabīnī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Sabines, a tribe north of Rome.*
sacerdōs, sacerdotis, c., *priest, priestess.*
sacrum, i, n., *sacred rite, religious rite.*
saepe, *often.*
saevus, a, um, *savage.*
saltō, āre, āvī, ātus, *dance.*
salūs, salūtis, f., *safety.*
salūtō, āre, āvī, ātus, *greet, hail.*
Santonēs, Santonum, m., *the Santones, a people of western Gaul.*
sarcina, ae, f., *pack, baggage pack (of an individual soldier).*
satis, *enough, sufficiently (adv.); enough (noun).*
Sāturnia, ae, f., *Saturnia.*
Sāturnus, i, m., *Saturnus.*

saxum, i, n., *rock*.

scelus, sceleris, n., *crime, wicked deed*.

sciō, scire, scivī, scītus, *know*.

scribō, ere, scripsī, scriptus, *write*.

scūtum, i, n., *shield*.

secundus, a, um, *second*.

sed, *but*.

sēdecim, *sixteen*.

sēdēs, sēdis, f., *seat, throne*.

Segusiāvī, ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic tribe, south of the Haedui.

sēmentis, sēmentis, f., *sowing*.

semper, *always*.

senātor, senātoris, m., *senator*.

senātus, ūs, m., *senate*.

senex, senis, m., *old man*.

sēnī, ae, a, *six, six at a time*.

sententia, ae, f., *opinion, decision*.

sentiō, ire, sēnsī, sēnsus, *perceive, learn*.

sēparātīm, *separately*.

septem, *seven*.

septimus, a, um, *seventh*.

sepultūra, ae, f., *burial*.

Sēquana, ae, f., *the Seine*.

Sēquani, ōrum, m., *the Sequani*, a Gallic tribe.

sequor, i, secūtus sum, *follow, pursue*.

servitūs, servitūtis, f., *slavery*.

Servius, i, m., *Servius*, forename of Servius Tullius.

servō, āre, āvī, ātus, *save, keep*.

servus, i, m., *slave*.

sex, *six*.

sextus, a, um, *sixth*.

sī, *whether, if*.

sīc, *so, thus*.

siccum, i, n., *dry land*.

sīcutī, *just as, as*.

significō, āre, āvī, ātus, *mean, signify*.

signum, i, n., *standard, signal*.

silva, ae, f., *forest, woods*.

Silvius, i, m., *Silvius*.

Silvius Proca, Silvīi Procae, m., *Silvius Proca*.

similis, simile, *like*.

sine, prep. gov. abl., *without*.

singulī, ae, a, *one at a time, singly*.

sinister, tra, trum, *left*.

sinistra, ae, f., *left hand*.

sinō, ere, sīvī, situs, *permit, allow*.

sive, *or if*; sive . . . sive, *either . . . or*.

socer, erī, m., *father-in-law*.

socius, i, m., *ally, companion*.

sōl, sōlis, m., *sun*.

solum, i, n., *soil, ground*.

sōlus, a, um, *alone*.

sonus, i, m., *sound*.

speciēs, ēī, f., *sight, appearance*.

spectō, āre, āvī, ātus, *look at, watch*.

spērō, āre, āvī, ātus, *hope, hope for*.

spēs, speī, f., *hope*.

splendidē, *magnificently.*

spoliō, āre, āvī, ātus, *rob, steal.*

statim, *at once, immediately.*

statuō, ere, uī, ūtus, *decide, resolve.*

stipendium, i, n., *tribute, tax.*

stō, stāre, steti, statūrus, *stand.*

strēnuus, a, um, *vigorous, active.*

studeō, ēre, uī, *be eager for, desire, favor.*

studium, i, *desire, eagerness.*

sub, prep. gov. acc., *under, toward*; gov. abl., *under, at the foot of.*

subdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *withdraw, carry off.*

subeō, ire, iī, itus, *undergo, endure; approach.*

subitō, *suddenly.*

subitus, a, um, *sudden.*

sublātus, a, um, *elated.*

sublevō, āre, āvī, ātus, *raise, lift.*

subsidiū, i, n., *assistance.*

subsistō, ere, stitī, *halt, make a stand.*

succēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *follow, succeed; approach, come up.*

sui, *of himself, herself, itself; pl., of themselves.*

Sulla, ae, m., (*Lucius*) Sulla, a famous Roman commander.

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be, am.*

summa, ae, f., *total, sum.*

summus, a, um, *highest, top of; greatest.*

sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *take, get, gather.*

sūmptus, ūs, m., *expense.*

super, prep. gov. acc., *over, above.*

Superbus, i, m., (*Tarquinius*) Superbus, seventh king of Rome.

superior, superius, *higher, upper; former.*

superō, āre, āvī, ātus, *conquer, overcome; surpass, excel.*

supersum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *survive, remain.*

superus, a, um, *high.*

suppetō, ere, ivī, itūrus, *be on hand.*

suppleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, *fill up, supply.*

supplicium, i, n., *punishment, torture.*

suprēmus, a, um, *last.*

suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *undertake, begin; assume, take up.*

suspiciō, suspiciōnis, f., *suspicion.*

sustineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *endure, withstand, check.*

suus, a, um, *his, her, its, their.*

T

T., abbreviation for Titus, i, m., Titus.

tabula, ae, f., *tablet, list, record.*

- tālis, tāle, *such*.
 tam, *so*.
 tamen, *nevertheless, however*.
 Tanaquil, Tanaquilis, f., *Tanaquil*, wife of Tarquinius Priscus.
 tandem, *at length, finally*.
 tantus, a, um, *such, so great*.
 Tarpēia, ae, f., *Tarpeia*, a Roman maiden.
 Tarpēius, a, um, *Tarpeian, of Tarpeia*.
 Tarquinii, ōrum, m., *Tarquinii*, a town of Etruria.
 Tarquinius, i, m., *Tarquinius*, family name of the fifth and seventh kings of Rome.
 taurus, i, m., *bull*.
 tēctum, i, n., *house, roof*.
 tēlum, i, n., *weapon*.
 temere, *rashly*.
 temperō, āre, āvi, ātus, *refrain, keep from*.
 tempestās, tempestātis, f., *weather; storm, tempest*.
 templum, i, n., *temple*.
 temptō, āre, āvi, ātus, *try, attempt*.
 tempus, temporis, n., *time; occasion*.
 teneō, ēre, uī, tentus, *keep, hold; restrain*.
 tener, era, erum, *tender*.
 tentō, āre, āvi, ātus, *try, attempt*.
 tergum, i, n., *back*.
 terminō, āre, āvi, ātus, *bound*.
 terra, ae, f., *land, country*;
 terrā marique, *by land and sea*.
 territōrium, i, n., *territory*.
 tertius, a, um, *third*.
 thēsaurus, i, m., *treasure*.
 Tiberis, Tiberis, m., *the Tiber River*.
 Tigurinus, i, m., *Tigurinus*, one of the cantons of the Helvetians; pl., the people of the canton, *the Tigurini*.
 timeō, ēre, uī, *fear*.
 timor, timōris, m., *fear*.
 Titus, i, m., *Titus*.
 tolerō, āre, āvi, ātus, *endure, bear*.
 tollō, ere, sustuli, sublātus, *lift, raise; remove, destroy*.
 Tolōsātēs, Tolōsātium, m. pl., *the Tolosates*, a Gallic tribe.
 tōtus, a, um, *whole*.
 trādō, ere, didī, ditus, *deliver, give up, hand over; hand down, relate*.
 trādūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead across, lead through*.
 trāns, prep. gov. acc., *across*.
 trānseō, ire, iī, itus, *cross, go across*.
 trānsfigō, ere, fixī, fixus, *pierce, transfix*.
 trānsigō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *pass, spend*.
 trānsiliō, ire, uī, *jump over*.

trānsportō, āre, āvi, ātus, carry
across, transport.

trecenti, ae, a, three hundred.

trēs, tria, three.

tricēsimus, a, um, thirtieth.

trīduum, i, n., three days' time.

trigeminī, ōrum, m. pl., triplets.

trīgintā, thirty.

triplex, triplex, gen. triplicis,
triple, three deep.

triumphō, āre, āvi, ātus,
triumph, celebrate a triumph.

Trōia, ae, f., Troy.

Trōiānus, a, um, Trojan.

tū, tuī, thou, you.

tuba, ae, f., trumpet.

Tulingī, ōrum, m. pl., the Tu-
lingi, a German tribe, north
of the Helvetians.

Tullia, ae, f., Tullia, daughter
of Servius Tullius.

Tullius, i, m., (Servius) Tullius,
sixth king of Rome.

Tullus, i, m., Tullus, forename
of Tullus Hostilius.

tum, then.

tumulus, i, m., mound.

turris, turris, f., tower.

tūtōr, tūtōris, m., guardian, tutor.

tūtus, a, um, safe.

tuus, a, um, thy, thine, your.

tyrannus, i, m., despot, tyrant.

U

ūber, ūberis, n., udder, breast.

ubi, where, when; where?

Ubiī, ōrum, m., the Ubii, a Ger-
man tribe.

ulciscor, i, ultus sum, avenge,
punish.

ūllus, a, um, any.

ulterior, ulterius, farther; Gal-
lia ulterior, farther Gaul; su-
perlative, ultimus, a, um, last.

ultrā, prep. gov. acc., beyond.

umerus, i, m., shoulder.

umquam (unquam), ever.

unda, ae, f., wave.

unde, whence, from which.

undique, from all directions, on
all sides.

ūnus, a, um, one, alone, only.

urbs, urbis, f., city.

ūsq̄ue, until, up to.

ūsus, ūs, m., experience; advan-
tage, use.

ut (utī), that, in order that, so
that; (with verbs of fearing),
that . . . not.

uter, utra, utrum, which (of two).
uterque, traque, trumque, each
(of two), both.

utī, see ut.

utinam, would that.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, use, employ.

uxor, uxōris, f., wife.

V

V, abbreviation for quinque,
five.

vacō, āre, āvi, ātus, be vacant,
be unoccupied.

- vadum**, *i*, *n.*, *ford, shoal.*
vāgītus, *ūs*, *m.*, *crying.*
valeō, *ēre*, *ui*, *itūrus*, *be strong, powerful.*
validus, *a*, *um*, *strong.*
vāllum, *i*, *n.*, *rampart, earth-works.*
vānus, *a*, *um*, *empty, vain.*
vāstō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, *lay waste.*
veniō, *ire*, *vēnī*, *ventūrus*, *come.*
ventus, *i*, *m.*, *wind.*
verberō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, *beat.*
Verbigenus, *i*, *m.*, *Verbigenus*, one of the cantons of the Helvetians.
verbum, *i*, *n.*, *word.*
vereor, *ērī*, *itus sum*, *fear, be afraid of.*
vertō, *ere*, *vertī*, *versus*, *turn; tergum vertere, to turn one's back, to flee.*
Verucloetius, *i*, *m.*, *Verucloetius*, an envoy of the Helvetians.
vesper, *erī*, *m.*, *evening.*
Vesta, *ae*, *f.*, *Vesta*, goddess of the hearth.
Vestālis, *Vestāle*, *Vestal*, of *Vesta.*
vester, *tra*, *trum*, *your, yours.*
veterānus, *a*, *um*, *veteran.*
veterrimus, *a*, *um*, *oldest.*
vetō, *āre*, *vetuī*, *vetitus*, *forbid.*
vetus, *vetus*, *gen. veteris*, *old, ancient.*
vetustior, *vetustius*, *older.*
vexō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, *harass, annoy.*
via, *ae*, *f.*, *way, road.*
vicēsimus, *a*, *um*, *twentieth.*
vicīnus, *i*, *m.*, *neighbor.*
victor, *victōris*, *m.*, *victor.*
victōria, *ae*, *f.*, *victory.*
vicus, *i*, *m.*, *village.*
videō, *ēre*, *vidī*, *visus*, *see.*
videor, *ērī*, *visus sum*, *be seen, seem* (passive of *videō*).
vigilia, *ae*, *f.*, *watch* (of the night).
vincō, *ere*, *vici*, *victus* *conquer.*
vinculum, *i*, *n.*, *chain, fetter, bond.*
vīnea, *ae*, *f.*, *shed* (a shelter to protect a besieging force).
violentia, *ae*, *f.*, *violence.*
vir, *virī*, *m.*, *man.*
virgō, *virginis*, *f.*, *maiden, girl, virgin.*
virtūs, *virtūtis*, *f.*, *valor, bravery; virtue.*
vis, *vis*, *f.*, *strength, force, violence; vim facere, to do violence, use force.*
vītō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, *avoid.*
vivō, *ere*, *vixī*, *victus*, *live.*
vix, *hardly, scarcely.*
vocō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, *call, summon.*

volō, velle, voluī, wish, be willing.

voluntās, voluntātis, f., wish, willingness, approval.

vōx, vōcis, f., voice.

vulgō, commonly, generally.

vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātus, wound.
vulnus, vulneris, n., wound.

X

X, abbreviation for decem, ten.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

absent, absēns, absēns, gen. absēntis.

accomplish, perficiō, ere, fēcī, factus.

across, trāns, prep. gov. acc.

adapted, aptus, a, um.

adopt, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus.

advance, prōgredior, ī, gressus sum.

advise, moneō, ēre, uī, itus.

affair, rēs, rei, f.

afford, praebeō, ēre, uī, itus.

after, post, prep. gov. acc.

again, rūsus.

against, contrā, prep. gov. acc.

aid, auxilium, ī, n.

all, omnis, omne.

Allobroges, Allobrogēs, Allobrogum, m.

ally, socius, ī, m.

almost, ferē.

alone, sōlus, a, um.

already, iam.

although, cum.

ambush, insidiae, ārum, f. pl.

ancient, vetus, vetus, gen. veteris.

and, et; atque (ac); -que.

animal, animal, animālis, n.

annoy, vexō, āre, āvī, ātus.

another, alius, a, ud.

any, ūllus, a, um.

anyone, anything, quisquam, quidquam.

appearance, speciēs, ēī, f.

approach (noun), aditus, ūs, m.

approach (verb), appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātus.

approve, probō, āre, āvī, ātus.

Aquileia, Aquilēia, ae, f.

Ariovistus, Ariovistus, ī, m.

arm, armō, āre, āvī, ātus.

arms, arma, ōrum, n. pl.

army, exercitus, ūs, m.

arouse, incitō, āre, āvī, ātus.

arrival, adventus, ūs, m.

ask, rogō, āre, āvī, ātus.

assemble, conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum.

assistance, subsidium, ī, n.; opera, ae, f.

at once, statim.

attack (*noun*), impetus, ūs, *m*.
attack (*verb*), oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus; aggredior, ī, gressus sum.
attempt (*noun*), cōnātus, ūs, *m*.
attempt (*verb*), temptō, āre, āvī, ātus; cōnor, ārī, ātus sum.
authority, auctōritās, auctōritātis, *f*.
auxiliaries, auxilia, ōrum, *n. pl*.
avoid, vitō, āre, āvī, ātus.
await, expectō, āre, āvī, ātus.

B

bad, malus, a, um.
baggage, impedimenta, ōrum, *n. pl*.
bank, ripa, ae, *f*.
barbarian, barbarus, ī, *m*.
battle, proelium, ī, *n*.
be, sum, esse, fui, futūrus.
be able, possum, posse, potuī.
be absent, absum, abesse, āfui, āfutūrus.
be away, *see* **be absent**.
be distant, *see* **be absent**.
be done, fiō, fierī, factus sum.
be in charge, praesum, esse, fui.
be informed, certior fiō, fierī, factus sum.
be mistaken, errō, āre, āvī, ātus.
be present, adsum, esse, fui, futūrus.
be strong, valeō, ēre, uī, itūrus.

be unwilling, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
be willing, volō, velle, voluī.
bear, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus.
beautiful, pulcher, chra, chrum.
beautifully, pulchrē.
because, quod.
before (*adv.*), ante.
before, ante, *prep. gov. acc.*
begin, incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus.
behind, post, *prep. gov. acc.*
Belgians, Belgae, ārum, *m. pl*.
believe, existimō, āre, āvī, ātus.
better, melior, melius.
boat, nāvis, nāvis, *f*.
body, corpus, corporis, *n*.
bold, audāx, audāx, *gen. audācis*.
book, liber, brī, *m*.
boy, puer, erī, *m*.
brave, fortis, forte.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, virtūs, virtūtis, *f*.
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m*.
brief, brevis, breve.
briefly, breviter.
bring, afferō, ferre, attuli, alātus.
bring about, efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus.
Britain, Britannia, ae, *f*.
broad, lātus, a, um.
brother, frāter, frātris, *m*.
building, aedificium, ī, *n*.
burn, incendō, ere, cendī, cēnsus.
but, sed; autem.

buy, emō, ere, ēmī, ēemptus.
by, ā, ab, *prep. gov. abl.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris, *m.*
calamity, calamitās, calamitātis, *f.*
call, vocō, āre, āvī, ātus; ap-
pellō, āre, āvī, ātus.
camp, castra, ōrum, *n. pl.*
can, *see be able.*
captive, captivus, ī, *m.*
capture, expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus;
capīō, ere, cēpī, captus.
carry, portō, āre, āvī, ātus;
ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus.
carry across, trānsportō, āre,
āvī, ātus.
cart, carrus, ī, *m.*
Catiline, Catilina, ae, *m.*
cause, causa, ae, *f.*
cavalry, equitātus, ūs, *m.*;
equitēs, *m. pl.*
cavalry, equestrian (*adj.*),
equester, equestris, equestre.
cease, dēsistō, ere, stitī.
centurion, centuriō, centuri-
ōnis, *m.*
certain, certus, a, um.
chain, catēna, ae, *f.*
change, commūtātiō, commūtā-
tiōnis, *f.*
chief, princeps, principis, *m.*
children, liberi, ōrum, *m.*
choose, dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus;
creō, āre, āvī, ātus.

Cicero, Cicerō, Cicerōnis, *m.*
citadel, arx, arcis, *f.*
citizen, cīvis, cīvis, *m. or f.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
cohort, cohors, cohortis, *f.*
collect, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāc-
tus.
column, agmen, agminis, *n.*
come, veniō, ire, vēnī, ventūrus.
command (*noun*), imperium,
ī, *n.*
command (*verb*), imperō, āre,
āvī, ātus; praeciپی, ere,
cēpī, ceptus.
commander, imperātor, imperā-
tōris, *m.*
commence (*battle*), committō,
ere, mīsi, missus.
common, commūnis, commūne.
compel, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāc-
tus.
concerning, dē, *prep. gov. abl.*
condition, condiciō, condi-
ciōnis, *f.*
confer, colloquor, ī, locūtus sum.
conference, colloquium, ī, *n.*
confine, contineō, ēre, uī, ten-
tus.
confuse, perturbō, āre, āvī, ātus.
conquer, vincō, ere, vīci, victus.
consider, habeō, ēre, uī, itus.
conspiracy, coniūrātiō, coniūrā-
tiōnis, *f.*
conspire, coniūrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
consul, cōsul, cōsulis, *m.*
could, *see be able.*

council, concilium, *i, n.*
country, rūs, rūris, *n.*; patria,
 ae, *f.* (*fatherland*).
courageously, audācter.
cross, trānseō, īre, īi, itus.
cry, clāmor, clāmōris, *m.*
custom, mōs, mōris, *m.*
cut off, interclūdō, ere, clusī,
 clūsus.

D

daily, cotidiānus, *a, um.*
danger, periculum, *i, n.*
dare, audeō, ēre, ausus sum.
daughter, filia, ae, *f.*
day, diēs, diēi, *m. or f.*
daybreak, at **daybreak**, primā
 lūce; ortā lūce.
dear, cārus, *a, um.*
dearly, cārē.
death, mors, mortis, *f.*
decide, cōstituō, ere, uī, ūtus.
deep, altus, *a, um.*
defend, dēfendō, ere, fendī,
 fēnsus.
defender, dēfēnsor, dēfēnsōris,
m.
definite, certus, *a, um.*
delay, moror, āri, ātus sum.
deliver, trādō, ere, didī, ditus;
 (*of a speech*), habeō, ēre, uī,
 itus.
demand, postulō, āre, āvī, ātus.
depart, proficiscor, *i, fectus*
 sum; exeō, īre, īi, itus.
dependent, cliēns, clientis, *m.*
or f.
depth, altitūdō, altitūdinis, *f.*
desert, deserō, ere, uī, sertus.
desire (*noun*), cupiditās, cupi-
 ditātis *f.*
desire (*verb*), optō, āre, āvī,
 ātus; cupiō, ere, ivī, itus.
desirous, cupidus, *a, um.*
destroy, diruō, ere, ruī, rutus.
die, morior, *i, mortuus sum.*
difficult, difficilis, difficile.
difficulty, difficultās, difficultā-
 tis, *f.*; negōtium, *i, n.*
direction, pars, partis, *f.*
disaster, calamitās, calamitātis
f.
discover, reperiō, īre, repperī,
 repertus; comperiō, īre,
 comperī, compertus.
distribute, mētior, irī, mēnsus
 sum.
disturb, perturbō, āre, āvī, ātus.
Diviciacus, Diviciācus, *i, m.*
divide, dividō, ere, vīsī, vīsus.
division, pāgus, *i, m.*
do, faciō, ere, fēcī, factus; agō,
 ere, ēgī, āctus.
draw, dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.
draw up, īnstruō, ere, strūxī,
 strūctus.
drive, agō, ere, ēgī, āctus.
drive out, expellō, ere, pulī,
 pulsus.
Dumnorix, Dumnorīx, Dumno-
 rīgis, *m.*
duty, officium, *i, n.*
dwel, incolō, ere, coluī.

E

each, quisque, quaeque, quid-
que (quodque).
each other, with *or to each*
other, inter sē.
eager, alacer, alacris, alacre.
eagerness, studium, ī, *n*.
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, facile.
eight, octō.
elect, creō, āre, āvī, ātus.
embankment, agger, aggeris,
m.
embassy, lēgatiō, lēgatiōnis, *f*.
encourage, hortor, ārī, ātus
sum; cohortor, ārī, ātus
sum.
end, **end of**, extrēmus, a, um.
endure, perferō, ferre, tulī,
lātus.
enemy, hostis, hostis, *m*.
enroll, cōscribō, ere, scripsī,
scriptus.
envoy, lēgātus, ī, *m*.
escape, fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitū-
rus; ēvādō, ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsū-
rus.
establish, cōfirmō, āre, āvī,
ātus.
evening, vesper, erī, *m*.
every, omnis, omne.
excite, moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus.
expect, exspectō, āre, āvī, ātus.
expel, expellō, ere, pulī, pulsus.
expense, sūmptus, ūs, *m*.
experience, ūsus, ūs, *m*.

F

far, longē.
far and wide, longē lātēque.
farmer, agricola, ae, *m*.
farther, ulterior, ulterius.
fatherland, patria, ae, *f*.
favor, faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautūrus;
studeō, ēre, uī.
fear (*noun*), timor, timōris, *m*.
fear (*verb*), vereor, erī, itus
sum; timeō, ēre, uī.
fellow citizen, cīvis, cīvis, *c*.
fertile, ferāx, ferāx, *gen.* ferācis.
few, paucī, ae, a.
field, ager, agrī, *m*.
fierce, ācer, ācris, ācre.
fifth, quīntus, a, um.
fight, pugnō, āre, āvī, ātus.
find, **find out**, reperiō, īre, rep-
erī, repertus; comperiō,
īre, perī, pertus.
fire, ignis, ignis, *m*.
first, primus, a, um.
five, quīnque.
flee, fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus.
fleet, classis, classis, *f*.
flight, fuga, ae, *f*.
flock, pecus, pecoris, *n*.
flow, fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxus.
follow, sequor, ī, secūtus sum.
foot, pēs, pedis, *m*.
for, ad, *prep. gov. acc.*
for, **in behalf of**, prō, *prep. gov.*
abl.
for, **on account of**, ob, *prep.*
gov. acc.

for the purpose of, ad, *prep.*

gov. acc.

for the sake of, causā; grātiā.

forbid, vetō, āre, vetuī, vetitus.

force (*noun*), vīs, vīs, *f.*

force (*verb*), cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus.

ford, vadum, ī, *n.*

foreign, aliēnus, a, um.

foresee, prōvideō, ēre, vidī, visus.

forest, silva, ae, *f.*

form (*a plan*), ineō, īre, iī, itus.

former, prior, prius; *as distinguished from the latter*, hīc, haec, hōc.

fort, castellum, ī, *n.*

fortification, mūnitiō, mūnitiōnis, *f.*

fortify, mūniō, īre, īvi, itus.

fortunate, fēlix, fēlix, *gen.* fēlicis.

fortunately, fēliciter.

four, quattuor.

fourth, quārtus, a, um.

free, liber, era, erum.

freely, liberē.

frequent, crēber, bra, brum.

friend, amīcus, ī, *m.*

friendly, amīcus, a, um.

friendship, amicitia, ae, *f.*

from, ē, ex, *prep. gov. abl.*; ā, ab, *prep. gov. abl.*

fruit, fructus, ūs, *m.*

furnish, praebeō, ēre, uī, itus.

G

Galba, Galba, ae, *m.*

garden, hortus, ī, *m.*

garrison, praesidium, ī, *n.*

gather, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus.

Gaul, Gallia, ae, *f.*

Gaul, a Gaul, Gallus, ī, *m.*

Geneva, Genava, ae, *f.*

Germans, Germānī, ōrum, *m. pl.*

Germany, Germānia, ae, *f.*

get possession of, potior, īri, itus sum.

gift, dōnum, ī, *n.*

girl, puella, ae, *f.*

give, dō, dare, dedi, datus.

go, eō, īre, īvi (iī), itūrus.

go out, ēgredior, ī, gressus sum; exeō, īre, iī, itus.

goddess, dea, ae, *f.*

good, bonus, a, um.

gradually, paulātim.

grain, frūmentum, ī, *n.*

great, magnus, a, um.

greatest, maximus, a, um; (*of qualities*), summus, a, um.

greatly, magnopere.

greatness, magnitūdō, magnitudinis, *f.*

guard, cūstōdiō, īre, īvi, itus.

guide, dux, ducis, *m.*

H

Haedui, Haedui, ōrum, *m. pl.*

hand over, trādō, ere, didi, ditus.

happen, *fiō*, *fieri*, *factus sum*.
happens, it happens, *accidit*,
ere, accidit.
happy, *fēlix*, *fēlix*, *gen. fēlicis*;
beātus, *a*, *um*.
harass, *vexō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.
harbor, *portus*, *ūs*, *m*.
hasten, *properō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*;
mātūrō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*; *con-*
tendō, *ere*, *tendī*, *tentus*.
have, *habeō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itus*.
he, *is*, (*ea*), (*id*).
head, *caput*, *capitis*, *n*.
hear, *audiō*, *īre*, *īvī*, *ītus*.
heavily, *graviter*.
heavy, *gravis*, *grave*.
height, *altitūdō*, *altitūdinis*, *f*.
help (*noun*), *opera*, *ae*, *f*.; *aux-*
ilium, *i*, *n*.
help (*verb*), *iuvō*, *āre*, *iūvī*, *iūtus*.
Helvetians, *Helvētīi*, *ōrum*, *m*.
pl.
her, hers, *suus*, *a*, *um* (*reflex-*
ive); *ēius* (*non-reflexive*).
hesitate, *dubitō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.
high (*adj.*), *altus*, *a*, *um*; *su-*
perus, *a*, *um*.
high (*adv.*), *altē*.
highest, *altissimus*, *a*, *um*; (*of*
qualities), *summus*, *a*, *um*.
hill, *collis*, *collis*, *m*.
himself, *suī*, *sibi*, *etc.* (*reflexive*).
hinder, *impediō*, *īre*, *īvī*, *ītus*.
hindrance, *impedimentum*, *i*, *n*.
his, *suus*, *a*, *um* (*reflexive*); *ēius*
(non-reflexive).

hither (*adj.*), *citerior*, *citerius*.
hold, *teneō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *tentus*; *ob-*
tineō, *ēre*, *uī*, *tentus*.
home, *domus*, *ūs* *or* *i*, *f*.
honor, *honor*, *honōris*, *m*.
hope (*noun*), *spēs*, *eī*, *f*.
hope, hope for (*verb*), *spērō*,
āre, *āvī*, *ātus*.
horse, *equus*, *i*, *m*.
horseman, *eques*, *equitis*, *m*.
hostage, *obses*, *obsidis*, *m*.
hostile, *inimicus*, *a*, *um*.
hour, *hōra*, *ae*, *f*.
house, *domus*, *ūs* *or* *i*, *f*.
how much, *quantus*, *a*, *um*.
humble, *humilis*, *humile*.
hundred, *centum*.

I

I, *ego*, *meī*.
if, *si*.
ignorant, *imperitus*, *a*, *um*.
immediately, *statim*.
in, *in*, *prep. gov. abl.*
in order that, in order to, *ut*,
(utī).
in order that . . . not, lest, *nē*.
in the vicinity of, *circum*, *prep.*
gov. acc.
increase, *augeō*, *ēre*, *auxī*,
auctus.
incredible, *incrēdibilis*, *incrē-*
dibile.
infantry, *peditēs*, *peditum*, *m*.
(pl. of pedes).
influence (*noun*), *grātia*, *ae*, *f*.

influence (*verb*), *inducō, ere, dūxī, ductus; moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus.*

inform, to inform, *certiōrem facere.*

inhabitant, *incola, ae, m.*

injury, *iniūria, ae, f.*

inquire, *quaerō, ere, quaesivī, quaesitus.*

into, *in, prep. gov. acc.*

is fitting, it is fitting, *oportet, ēre, uit (impersonal).*

island, *insula, ae, f.*

it, is, ea, id (*gender depending on antecedent*).

Italy, *Italia, ae, f.*

its, *suus, a, um (reflexive); eius (non-reflexive).*

J

javelin, *pilum, i, n.*

join (*battle*), *committō, ere, mīsī, missus.*

justice, *iūs, iūris, n.*

K

keep from, *prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus.*

kill, *interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus.*

kind, *modus, i, m.*

king, *rēx, rēgis, m.*

know, *sciō, ire, ivī, itus.*

L

Labienus, *Labiēnus, i, m.*

lack, *inopia, ae, f.*

lake, *lacus, lacūs, m.*

land, *terra, ae, f.*

large, *magnus, a, um.*

latter, *hic, haec, hōc (distinguished from the former, ille).*

lay waste, *vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus.*

lead, *dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.*

lead back, *redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.*

lead on, *indūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.*

lead out, *ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.*

leader, *dux, ducis, m.*

leap down, *dēsiliō, ire, uī, sultus.*

learn, *cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus.*

least (*adj.*), *minimus, a, um.*

least (*adv.*), *minimē.*

leave behind, *relinquō, ere, liquī, lictus.*

legion, *legiō, legiōnis, f.*

less (*adj.*), *minor, minus.*

less (*adv.*), *minus.*

lest, *nē.*

letter, *litterae, ārum, f. pl.*

liberty, *libertās, libertātis, f.*

lie hid, *lateō, ēre, uī.*

lieutenant, *lēgātus, i, m.*

line, line of battle, *aciēs, ēī, f.*

little (*adj.*), *parvus, a, um.*

little (*adv.*), *parum.*

little, a little (*adv.*), *paulum.*

live, *vīvō, ere, vīxī, victus; incolō, ere, uī.*

long (*adj.*), longus, a, um.
long, a long time (*adv.*), diū.
lose, amittō, ere, misī, missus.
love, amō, āre, āvī, ātus.
lower, inferior, inferius.
loyalty, fidēs, fideī, *f.*

M

magistrate, magistrātus, ūs, *m.*
maintain, retineō, ēre, uī, tentus.
make, faciō, ere, fēcī, factus; efficiō, ere, fēcī, factus (*in the sense of render*).
man, vir, virī, *m.*; homō, hominis, *m.*
many, multi, ae, a.
march, iter, itineris, *n.*
march out, ēgredior, ī, gressus sum.
Marcus, Mārcus, ī, *m.*
matter, affair, rēs, rei, *f.*
meanwhile, interim; intereā.
memory, memoria, ae, *f.*
merchant, mercātor, mercātōris, *m.*
messenger, nūntius, ī, *m.*
middle, middle of, medius, a, um.
mile, mille passūs; *pl.*, milia passuum.
military, militāris, militāre.
mind, animus, ī, *m.*
more (*adj.*), plūs, plūris.
more (*adv.*), plūs; magis.
moreover, autem.

most (*adj.*), plūrimus, a, um.
most (*adv.*), plūrimum; maximē.
most, most people, most things, plerique, aequae, aequae.
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
move, moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus.
much (*adj.*), multus, a, um.
much (*adv.*), multum.
much (*adv. or abl.*), multō.
multitude, multitudō, multitudinis, *f.*
my, meus, a, um.
myself (*reflexive*), *oblique cases of ego*.

N

name (*noun*), nōmen, nōminis, *n.*
name (*verb*), appellō, āre, āvī, ātus.
narrow, angustus, a, um.
narrow pass, angustiae, ārum, *f. pl.*
nation, nātiō, nātiōnis, *f.*
near, ad, *prep. gov. acc.*
near (*adv.*), prope.
nearer (*adj.*), propior, propius.
nearer (*adv.*), propius.
nearest, proximus, a, um.
neighbor, finitimus, ī, *m.*
neighboring, finitimus, a, um.
neither (*adj.*), neuter, tra, trum.
neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque.
never, numquam.
nevertheless, tamen.
new, novus, a, um.

night, nox, noctis, *f.*
nine, novem.
no, nullus, a, um.
no one, nēmō; *no genitive*;
dat. nēminī; *acc.* nēminem;
other cases lacking.
not, nōn, nē.
not . . . even, nē . . . quidem.
nothing, nihil.
now, nunc.
number, numerus, ī, *m.*

O

obey, pāreō, ēre, uī, itūrus.
obtain, obtineō, ēre, uī, tentus;
potior, īrī, itus sum.
occur, fiō, fierī, factus sum.
often, saepe.
old, vetus, vetus, *gen. veteris.*
on, in, *prep. gov. abl.*
on account of, ob, *prep. gov.*
acc. ; propter, prep. gov. acc.
on this side of, cis, *prep. gov. acc.*
one, ūnus, a, um.
one by one, singulī, ae, a.
only, sōlus, a, um.
opportunity, occāsiō, occā-
siōnis, f.
oration, ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, *f.*
order, iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus;
praecipio, ere, cēpī, ceptus.
order, rank, ōrdō, ordinis, *m.*
Orgetorix, Orgetorix, Orge-
torigis, m.
other, alter, era, erum; alius,
a, ud.

ought, dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus.
our, ours, noster, tra, trum.
ourselves, *oblique cases of nōs,*
plural of ego.
out of, ē, ex, *prep. gov. abl. ; dē,*
prep. gov. abl.
over, trāns, *prep. gov. acc. ; in,*
prep. gov. abl.
overcome, superō, āre, āvī,
ātus.
owe, dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus.

P

pace, passus, ūs, *m.*
part, pars, partis, *f.*
pass the winter, hiemō, āre,
āvī, ātus.
pay, pendō, ere, pependī, pēn-
sus.
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
people, nation, populus, ī, *m.*
perceive, sentiō, īre, sēnsī,
sēnsus.
persuade, persuādeō, ēre,
suāsī, suāsus.
place (noun), locus, ī, *m. ; pl.,*
loci, ōrum, n.
place (verb), collocō, āre, āvī,
ātus.
place in command, praeficiō,
ere, fēcī, fectus.
plan, cōnsilium, ī, *n.*
plenty, cōpia, ae, *f.*
possess, habeō, ēre, uī, itus.
possessions, cōpiae, ārum, *f.*
pl.

power, potestās, potestātis, *f.*
powerful, potēns, potēns, *gen.*
 potentis.
praise, laudō, āre, āvī, ātus.
prefer, mālō, mälle, māluī.
prepare, comparō, āre, āvī,
 ātus; parō, āre, āvī, ātus.
present, dōnum, ī, *n.*
prevent, prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus.
prohibit, prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus.
provide for, prōvideō, ēre, vidī,
 vīsus.
province, prōvincia, ae, *f.*
provisions, rēs frūmentāria, rei
 frūmentāriae, *f.*
punish, to punish, supplicio
 afficere.
punishment, supplicium, ī, *n.*
purchase, emō, ere, ēmī, ēmp-
 tus.
pursue, sequor, ī, secūtus sum.

Q

queen, rēgīna, ae, *f.*
quick, celer, celeris, celere.
quickly, celeriter.

R

rampart, vāllum, ī, *n.*; agger,
 aggeris, *m.*
read, legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus.
rear, rear line, novissimum
 agmen, novissimī agminis, *n.*
reason, causa, ae, *f.*
receive, recipiō, ere, cēpī,
 ceptus.

recent, recēns, recēns, *gen.*
 recentis.
redoubt, castellum, ī, *n.*
refuse, recūsō, āre, āvī, ātus.
region, regiō, regiōnis, *f.*
remain, remaneō, ēre, mānsī,
 mānsūrus.
remaining, reliquus, a, um.
Remi, Rēmī, ōrum, *m. pl.*
render, efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus.
reply, respondeō, ēre, spondī,
 spōnsus.
report, nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus.
republic, rēs pública, rei pū-
 blicae, *f.*
resist, prōpugnō, āre, āvī,
 ātus; resistō, ere, stitī.
retain, retineō, ēre, uī, tentus.
retreat, to retreat, sē recipere.
return, give back, reddō, ere,
 didī, ditus.
return, go back, revertō, ere,
 vertī, versus (*usually depo-*
nent in the present, imperfect,
and future); redeō, īre, īī,
 itūrus.
return thanks, to return thanks,
 grātiās agere.
revolt, mōtus, ūs, *m.*
revolution, change of govern-
ment, novae rēs, *f. pl.*
reward, praemium, ī, *n.*
Rhine, Rhēnus, ī, *m.*
Rhone, Rhodanus, ī, *m.*
right, dexter, tra, trum.
risk, periculum, ī, *n.*

river, flūmen, flūminis, *n.*
road, via, ae, *f.*; iter, itineris, *n.*
Roman (*noun*), Rōmānus, ī, *m.*
Roman (*adj.*), Rōmānus, a, um.
Rome, Rōma, ae, *f.*
rose, rosa, ae, *f.*
rough, asper, era, erum.
roundabout way, circuitus, ūs, *m.*
rule (*noun*), imperium, ī, *n.*; rēgnum, ī, *n.*
rule (*verb*), regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus.

S

safe, tūtus, a, um.
safety, salūs, salūtis, *f.*
sail, nāvīgō, āre, āvī, ātus.
same, idem, eadem, idem.
savage, ferus, a, um.
say, dicō, ere, dixī, dictus.
scout, explōrātor, explōrātōris, *m.*
sea, mare, maris, *n.*
second, secundus, a, um.
see, videō, ere, vīdī, vīsus.
seek, petō, ere, īvī (ii), itus.
seem, videor, ērī, vīsus sum.
seize, occupō, āre, āvī, ātus.
self, very, ipse, a, um.
senate, senātus, ūs, *m.*
send, mittō, ere, mīsī, missus.
send ahead, praemittō, ere, mīsī, missus.
Sequani, Sēquanī, ōrum, *m. pl.*
serious, gravis, grave.

set out, proficīscor, ī, fectus sum.
seven, septem.
seventh, septimus, a, um.
several, aliquot.
sharp, ācer, ācris, ācre.
sharply, ācriter.
she, (is), ea, (id).
shield, scūtum, ī, *n.*
ship, nāvis, nāvis, *f.*
shore, litus, litoris, *n.*
short, brevis, breve.
shouting, clāmōr, clāmōris, *m.*
show, praebeō, ēre, uī, itus; doceō, ēre, uī, doctus.
side, pars, partis, *f.*; **on one side**, ūnā ex parte.
siege, obsidiō, obsidiōnis, *f.*
since, cum.
six, sex.
size, magnitūdō, magnitūdinis, *f.*
skilled, peritus, a, um.
slave, servus, ī, *m.*
small, parvus, a, um.
so (*of degree*), tam; (*of manner*), ita.
so great, tantus, a, um.
so that, ut.
soldier, miles, militis, *m.*
some, nōnnūllus, a, um.
some one, **some**, aliquis (quī), qua, quid (quod).
son, filius, ī, *m.*
son-in-law, gener, erī, *m.*
sortie, ēruptiō, ēruptiōnis, *f.*

speech, *orātiō, orātiōnis, f.*
speed, *celeritās, celeritātis, f.*
standard, *signum, ī, n.*
state, *civitās, civitātis, f.*
station, *collocō, āre, āvi, ātus.*
stone, *lapis, lapidis, m.*
storm, *tempestās, tempestātis, f.*
strengthen, *cōfirmō, āre, āvi, ātus.*
strip, *nūdō, āre, āvi, ātus.*
subdue, *pācō, āre, āvi, ātus.*
such, *tālis, tāle.*
sudden, *repentīnus, a, um; subitus, a, um.*
sufficient, *satis.*
suitable, *idōneus, a, um.*
summer, *aestās, aestātis, f.*
summon, *vocō, āre, āvi, ātus; convocō, āre, āvi, ātus; arcessō, ere, īvi, itus.*
supplies, *commeātus, ūs, m.*
supply, *cōpia, ae, f.*
support, *alō, ere, uī, altus (alitus).*
surpass, *superō, āre, āvi, ātus.*
surrender (noun), *dēditio, dēditiois, f.*
surrender (verb), *dēdō, ere, dēdidi, dēditus.*
surround, *circumveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus.*
suspicion, *suspiciō, suspiciōis, f.*
swift, *celer, celeris, celere.*
swiftly, *celeriter.*
sword, *glādius, ī, m.*

T

table, *mēnsa, ae, f.*
take, *capiō, ere, cēpi, captus.*
take away, *auferō, ferre, abstulī, ablātus.*
take place, *fiō, fieri, factus sum.*
task, *labor, labōris, m.; negōtium, ī, n.*
tear down, *rescindō, ere, scidi, scissus.*
tell, *doceō, ēre, uī, doctus; dicō, ere, dixi, dictus.*
ten, *decem.*
tender, *tener, era, erum.*
tenth, *decimus, a, um.*
terrify, *perterreō, ēre, uī, itus.*
territory, *finēs, finium, m. pl.*
than, *quam.*
thanks, to return thanks, *grātiās agere.*
that (demonstr. pron.), *is, ea, id; ille, a, ud.*
that (conj.), *ut; after verbs of fearing, nē.*
that . . . not, *with purpose clauses, nē; with result clauses, ut . . . nōn; after verbs of fearing, ut.*
that famous, *ille, a, ud.*
that of yours, *iste, a, ud.*
their, theirs, *suus, a, um (reflexive); eōrum, eārū (non-reflexive).*
themselves, *suī, sibi, etc. (reflexive).*
they, plural of is, *ea, id.*

thing, rēs, rei, *f.*
think, putō, āre, āvī, ātus.
third, tertius, a, um.
this, hīc, haec, hōc.
thou, tū, tuī.
thousand, mille; *pl.*, milia, mīlium.
three, trēs, tria.
throne, rēgnū, ī, *n.*
through, per, *prep. gov. acc.*
throw, iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus.
throw, to throw into chains, in catēnās conicere.
thy, tuus, a, um.
time, tempus, temporis, *n.*
to, ad, *prep. gov. acc.*
toward, ad, *prep. gov. acc.*; sub, *prep. gov. acc.*
tower, turris, turris, *f.*
towrd, oppidum, ī, *n.*
transport, trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātus.
transports, freight ships, nāvēs onerāriae, *f. pl.*
trench, fossa, ae, *f.*
trial, iūdicium, ī, *n.*
tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*
tribute, stipendium, ī, *n.*
troops, cōpia, arum, *f. pl.*
trumpet, tuba, ae, *f.*
trust, cōfidō, ere, fīsus sum (*semi-deponent*).
try, cōnor, ārī, ātus sum.
turn out, ēveniō, ire, vēnī, ventūrus.

two, duo, duae, duo.
two days, bīduum, ī, *n.*

U

Ubii, Ubii, ōrum, *m. pl.*
under baggage, encumbered, impeditus, a, um.
understand, intellegō, ere, lēxī, lēctus.
undertake, suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus.
unfriendly, inimicus, a, um.
unharmed, incolumis, incolume.
unless, nisi.
unusual, īsignis, īsigne.
uproar, fremitus, ūs, *m.*
urge, hortor, ārī, ātus sum.
use, ūtor, ī, ūsus sum.

V

valor, virtūs, virtūtis, *f.*
very (*pron.*), ipse, a, um.
victor, victor, victōris, *m.*
victory, victōria, victōriae, *f.*
village, vīcus, ī, *m.*
voice, vōx, vōcis, *f.*

W

wage (*war*), gerō, ere, gessi, gestus.
wagon, carrus, ī, *m.*
wall, mūrus, ī, *m.*
walled town, oppidum, ī, *n.*
war, bellum, ī, *n.*
warlike, bellicōsus, a, um.

warn, moneō, ēre, uī, itus; ad-
moneō, ēre, uī, itus.

warship, nāvis longa, nāvis
longae, *f*.

watch, vigilia, ae, *f*.

water, aqua, ae, *f*.

way, via, ae, *f*.

we, nōs (*plural of ego*).

weapon, tēlum, ī, *n*.

weather, tempestās, tempestatis, *f*.

well, bene.

what? what kind of? quī, quae,
quod (*interrog. adj.*).

when, ubi.

where; where? ubi.

whether, sī.

which, *see who*.

which? see who?

which (of two)? uter, tra, trum.

who, which, what, that (*rel. pron.*), quī, quae, quod.

who? which? what? quis, quid.

whole, tōtus, a, um.

wide, lātus, a, um.

width, lātitudō, lātitudinis, *f*.

wild, ferus, a, um.

wing, cornū, ūs, *n*.

winter, hiemō, āre, āvī, ātus.

winter quarters, hiberna, ōrum,
n. pl.

wise, prūdēns, prūdēns, *gen.*
prudentis.

wisely, prūdentē.

wish, volō, velle, voluī.

wish . . . not, be unwilling,
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.

with, cum, *prep. gov. abl.*

without, sine, *prep. gov. abl.*

withstand, sustineō, ēre, uī,
tentus.

woman, mulier, mulieris, *f*.

wonderful, mīrus, a, um.

word, verbum, ī, *n*.

work, opus, operis, *n*.

worse, pēior, pēius.

would that, utinam.

wound (noun), vulnus, vulneris, *n*.

wound (verb), vulnerō, āre, āvī,
ātus.

wretched, miser, era, erum.

wretchedly, miserē.

Y

year, annus, ī, *m*.

you, tū, tuī; *pl.*, vōs.

your, yours, tuus, a, um; vester,
tra, trum.

yourself, yourselves (reflexive),
oblique cases of tū, tuī.

INDEX

References are to sections unless otherwise stated.

Ablative, INTROD. X, 1.

- absolute, 287.
- accompaniment, 276.
- agent, 266.
- cause, 272.
- comparison, 267.
- degree of difference, 268.
- with deponent verbs, 274.
- manner, 275.
- means, 273.
- place from which, 296, 2; 297, 2.
- place where, 296, 3; 297, 3.
- quality, 281.
- separation, 265.
- specification, 280.
- time, 282.

Accent, INTROD. VII.

- of nouns in -ius, -ium, 14, 2; 21, 2.

Accusative, INTROD. X, 1.

- direct object, 10, 1.
- predicate, 254.
- subject of infinitive, 256.
- time and space, 255.

Ad, with accusative and gerundive, 356, 2, c.

Adjectives,

- first and second declension, 27.
- third declension, 52.
- agreement of, 4, 2.
- as nouns, 111, III, footnote.
- attributive, 4, 2, note.
- comparison of, 67, 73, 74.
- declension of comparative, 68, 1, 2.
- declension of superlative, 68, 3.
- irregular, the nine, 32.

- position of, 4, 2, footnote.
- predicate, 4, 2, note.
- review chart of, 129.

Adverbs,

- comparison of, 86.
- formation of, 81, 88.
- irregular, 88.

Agreement,

- of adjectives, 4, 2.
- of appositives, 17, 2.
- of participles, 286, 2, a.
- of predicate nouns, 10, 3.
- of relative pronoun, 113, 2.
- of verb, 10, 2.

Alphabet, INTROD. I.

Appositive, 17, 2.

Attributive Adjective, 4, 2, note.

Autem, 142, III, footnote.

Base, 2, 2.

By, 50, footnote.

Cases, INTROD. X.

Causal Clauses, 321.

Commands, 329.

Comparative,

- declension of, 68, 1.
- special meaning of, 77, 1.

Comparison,

- of adjectives, 67, 73, 74.
- of adverbs, 86, 88.

Compound Words, division of, INTROD. IV, 1, d.

Conditional Sentences, 351.

Conjugation, INTROD. XI.

- I*, *amō*, 8, 143, 148, 155, 162.
- II*, *moneō*, 169, 175.
- III*, *regō*, 181, 187; *capiō*, 209.

Conjugation (*continued*)*IV, audiō*, 193, 199.

of deponent verbs, 214, 3, 4.

of *eō*, 292.of *ferō*, 363.of *fiō*, 261.of *possum*, 235.

periphrastic, 246, 247.

of *sum*, 132, 136.of *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, 327.**Consonants**,

Classification of, INTROD. III.

Pronunciation of, INTROD. II, 3.

Consonant Stems, 36.*Cum*,

causal, 321.

concessive, 322.

temporal, 320.

Dative, INTROD. X, 1.

agency, 248.

indirect object, 55, 239, 240, 241.

possession, 249.

purpose, 242.

with adjectives, 250.

with compound verbs, 241.

with special verbs, 240.

deā, 2, 5; 14, 3.**Declension**, INTROD. IX, 2; X, 1.

I, 1.

II, 13, 20.

III, 36, 42, 44.

IV, 58.

V, 60.

of adjectives, 3, 15, 22, 27, 32, 52, 68, 75.

of participles, 136, footnote; 148, footnote; 162, footnote.

of pronouns: demonstrative, 106; indefinite, 118; intensive, 101; interrogative, 114; personal, 91; possessive, 99; reflexive, 94; relative, 112.

Deponent Verbs, 214.*dō*, 56, footnote 2; 178, footnote.*domus*, 59, 1; 298.*ēius*, *eōrum*, 100, 3.**Enclitica**, INTROD. VII, 3.*eō*, 292.**Fearing**, construction with verbs of,

333, 2, C.

ferō, 363.*filia*, 2, 5; 14, 3.*fiō*, 261.**Gender**,

general rules, INTROD. X, 3.

of first declension, 2, 4.

of second declension, 13, 20.

of third declension, 48.

of fourth declension, 58; 59, 1.

of fifth declension, 61, 1.

review of, 63.

Genitive, INTROD. X, 1.

objective, 228.

partitive, 223.

possession, 221.

predicate, 222.

quality, 227.

with adjectives, 229.

with *causā*, *grātiā*, 230.**Gerund**, 355.**Gerundive**, 356.**Helvetian War**, page 255.**Hortatory Subjunctive**, 302.*i*-consonant, INTROD. I.*i*-stems,

nouns, 42, 45.

adjectives, 53, 1, 2.

Imperative, 140, 3; 329.**Indirect Discourse**, 337.

infinitive in, 338.

subjunctive in, 340.

Indirect Questions, 308; 333, 2, D.**Infinitive**,

in indirect discourse, 338.

- Infinitive** (*continued*)
 tenses of, 339.
 uses of, 344, 345, 346.
- Infinitive Endings**, 206.
 of deponent verbs, 214, 3.
- Inflection**, INTROD. IX.
inform, 263.
- Irregular Adjectives**, the nine, 32.
- Irregular Verbs**, see **Conjugation**.
- is*, *ea*, *id*, 91, footnote; 95; 108, 4.
-ius, *-ium*, nouns in, 14, 2; 21, 2.
- Legendary Rome**—Stories of, Lessons XXXVI ff.
- Liquids**, INTROD. III.
- Locative**, 297, 3.
mālō, 327.
mille, 125, 2; 126.
- Mixed Stems**, 44, 45.
- Mutes**, INTROD. III.
- Nasals**, INTROD. III.
nē . . . *quidem*, order with, 212, III, footnote 1.
-ne, enclitic, 23.
nōlō, 327.
- Nominative**, INTROD. X, 1; 4, 1.
- Nōnne*, 33.
- Num*, 39.
- Number**, INTROD. X, 2.
- Numerals**, 124, 125, 126.
- Object**,
 direct, 10, 1.
 indirect, 55; 239, 240, 241.
- Oblique Cases**, 94, 1.
- Optative Subjunctive**, 303.
- Participles**,
 declension, 136, footnote; 148, footnote; 162, footnote.
 defined, 286, 2.
 tenses of, 286, 3.
 use of, 286, 4.
 with ablative absolute, 287, 2.
- Periphrastic Conjugations**, 246, 247.
- Personal Endings**, 9.
- Place**, expressions of, 296, 297.
plus, 75.
- Possessives**, 98, 99, 100.
possum, 235.
- Predicate Adjectives**, 4, 2, Note.
- Predicate Noun**, 10, 3, and footnote.
- Principal Parts**, 131, 1, 2.
- Prohibitions**, 330.
- Pronouns**, see **Declension**.
- Pronunciation**, INTROD. II.
- Purpose**, 310; 316; 333, 2, A.
quam with the Superlative, 77, 2, b.
quam, than, 77, 2, a; 267, note.
- Quantity**, INTROD. V, VI.
- Questions**, 23, 33, 39.
 indirect, 308; 333, 2, D.
- Relative Clauses**,
 of characteristic, 315.
 of purpose, 316.
- Result**, 314; 333, 2, B.
- Review Charts**, 128, 129, 130.
- Semi-deponent Verbs**, 243, footnote.
- Sequence of Tenses**, 309.
- Spirant**, the, INTROD. III.
- Subject**, 4, 1.
- Subjunctive**,
 of characteristic, 315.
 hortatory, 302.
 in conditional sentences, 351, II, III.
 in indirect discourse, 340.
 in indirect questions, 308.
 in substantive clauses, 333.
 optative, 303.
 purpose, 310; 316; 333, 2, A.
 result, 314.
 translation of, 304.
 with *cum*, 320, 321, 322.
- Substantive Clauses**, 333.
ut, 94, 95.
sum, 132, 136.

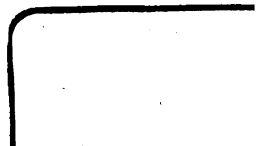
Superlative,

declension of, 68, 3.

special meaning of, 77, 1.

Supine, 358.*suns*, 98, 99, 100.**Syllables, INTROD. IV.****Synopses of Verbs, 138; 150; 214.****Syntax — Meanings of Cases, 220.****Temporal Clauses, 320.****Tenses, see Sequence.****Terminations, 2, 1.****Vocative, INTROD. X, 1; 2, 3; 14, 1.***volō*, 327.**Vowels, INTROD. II, 1.****Wishes, 303.****Word Order, 4, 2, footnote; 24.**

ADVERTISEMENTS





L A T I N

LATIN GRAMMAR

Gildersleeve-Lodge Latin Grammar. School edition. 340 pages. 80 cents.

Gildersleeve-Lodge Latin Grammar. Complete. 560 pages. \$1.20.

BEGINNERS' BOOKS

Bain's First Latin Book. 343 pages. 75 cents.

Barss's Beginning Latin. 331 pages. \$1.00.

Moulton's Introductory Latin. 278 pages. \$1.00.

CAESAR

Dotey's Latin Exercise Books on Caesar's Gallic War, Book I, 25 cents; Books II, III and IV, each, 20 cents.

Perrin's Caesar's Civil War, with Vocabulary. 340 pages. \$1.00.

Towle & Jenks's Caesar's Gallic War, Books I, II, III and IV. Contains Text, Notes, Grammatical Appendix and Vocabulary. 479 pages. \$1.00.

Towle & Jenks's Caesar's Gallic War. Complete. 604 pages. \$1.25.

CICERO

Tunstall's Six Orations of Cicero. Four Catilines, Manilian Law, Archias. 435 pages. \$1.00.

Tunstall's Cicero's Orations. Same as above, with Verres, Milo, Marcellus, Ligarius and Ninth Philippic. 616 pages. \$1.25.

LATIN COMPOSITION

Barss's Writing Latin, Book I. Based on Caesar. 94 pages. 50 cents.

Barss's Writing Latin, Book II. Based on Caesar and Cicero. 175 pages. 75 cents.

OVID

Anderson's Selections from Ovid, with Vocabulary. 264 pages. \$1.00.

FOR COLLEGE WORK

Carter's Roman Elegiac Poets. 330 pages. \$1.25.

Bowen's Cicero's De Amicitia. 151 pages. 75 cents.

Bowen's Cicero's De Senectute. 164 pages. 75 cents.

Gildersleeve-Lodge Latin Grammar. Complete. 560 pages. \$1.20.

Gildersleeve-Lodge Latin Composition. 201 pages. 75 cents.

Lease's Livy, Books I, XXI and XXII. 510 pages. \$1.25.

Moore's Prose Exercises. Revised. 80 pages. 50 cents.

Penick's Sallust's Catiline. With vocabulary. 191 pages. \$1.00.

Rockwood's Cicero's De Officiis. 183 pages. 90 cents.

Sihler's Cicero's Second Philippic. 157 pages. 80 cents.

Wilson's Juvenal. 372 pages. \$1.25.

D. C. HEATH & CO., Publishers

BOSTON

NEW YORK

CHICAGO

Heath's English Classics.

- Addison's Sir Roger de Coverley Papers.** Edited by W. H. HUDSON. Cloth. 232 pages. Nine full-page illustrations and two maps. 35 cents.
- Burke's Speech on Conciliation with America.** Edited by A. J. GEORGE, Master in the Newton (Mass.) High School. Cloth. 119 pages. 20 cents.
- Carlyle's Essay on Burns.** Edited, with introduction and notes, by ANDREW J. GEORGE. Cloth. 159 pages. Illustrated. 25 cents.
- Coleridge's Rime of the Ancient Mariner.** Edited by ANDREW J. GEORGE. Cloth. 96 pages. Illustrated. 20 cents.
- Cooper's Last of the Mohicans.** Edited by J. G. WIGHT, Principal Girls' High School, New York City. Cloth. Illustrated. 659 pages. 50 cents.
- De Quincey's Flight of a Tartar Tribe.** Edited by G. A. WAUCHOPE, Professor in the University of South Carolina. Cloth. 112 pages. 25 cents.
- Dryden's Palamon and Arcite.** Edited by WILLIAM H. CRAWSHAW, Professor in Colgate University. Cloth. 158 pages. Illustrated. 25 cents.
- George Eliot's Silas Marner.** Edited by G. A. WAUCHOPE, Professor in the University of South Carolina. Cloth. 288 pages. Illustrated. 35 cents.
- Goldsmith's Vicar of Wakefield.** With introduction and notes by W. H. HUDSON. Cloth. 300 pages. Seventeen illustrations by C. E. Brock. 50 cents.
- Irving's Life of Goldsmith.** Edited by H. E. COBLENTZ, South Division High School, Milwaukee. Cloth. 328 pages. Maps and illustrations. 35 cents.
- Macaulay's Essay on Milton.** Edited by ALBERT PERRY WALKER, Master in the English High School, Boston. Cloth. 146 pages. Illustrated. 25 cents.
- Macaulay's Essay on Addison.** Edited by ALBERT PERRY WALKER. Cloth. 192 pages. Illustrated. 25 cents.
- Macaulay's Life of Johnson.** Edited by ALBERT PERRY WALKER. Cloth. 122 pages. Illustrated. 25 cents.
- Milton's Paradise Lost.** Books i and ii. Edited by ALBERT PERRY WALKER. Cloth. 188 pages. Illustrated. 25 cents.
- Milton's Minor Poems.** Edited by ALBERT PERRY WALKER. Cloth. 190 pages. Illustrated. 25 cents.
- Pope's Translation of the Iliad.** Books i, vi, xxii, and xxiv. Edited by PAUL SHOREY, Professor in the Univ. of Chicago. Cloth. 174 pages. Illus. 25 cents.
- Scott's Ivanhoe.** Edited by PORTER LANDER MACCLINTOCK. Cloth. 556 pages. Seventeen full-page illustrations by C. E. Brock. 50 cents.
- Scott's Lady of the Lake.** Edited by L. DUPONT SYLE, Professor in the University of California. Cloth. 216 pages. Illus. and map. 35 cents.
- Shakespeare.** See the *Arden Shakespeare*. Per vol., 25 cents.
- Tennyson's Enoch Arden, and the two Locksley Halls.** Edited by CALVIN S. BROWN, University of Colorado. Cloth. 168 pages. 25 cents.
- Tennyson's Idylls of the King.** Four idylls, edited by ARTHUR BEATTY, University of Wisconsin. Cloth. 190 pages. Illus. and map. 25 cents.
- Tennyson's The Princess.** With introduction and notes by ANDREW J. GEORGE. Cloth. 148 pages. Illustrated. 25 cents.
- Webster's First Bunker Hill Oration.** With introduction and notes by ANDREW J. GEORGE. Cloth. 55 pages. 20 cents.
-

D. C. HEATH & CO., Boston, New York, Chicago



